



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

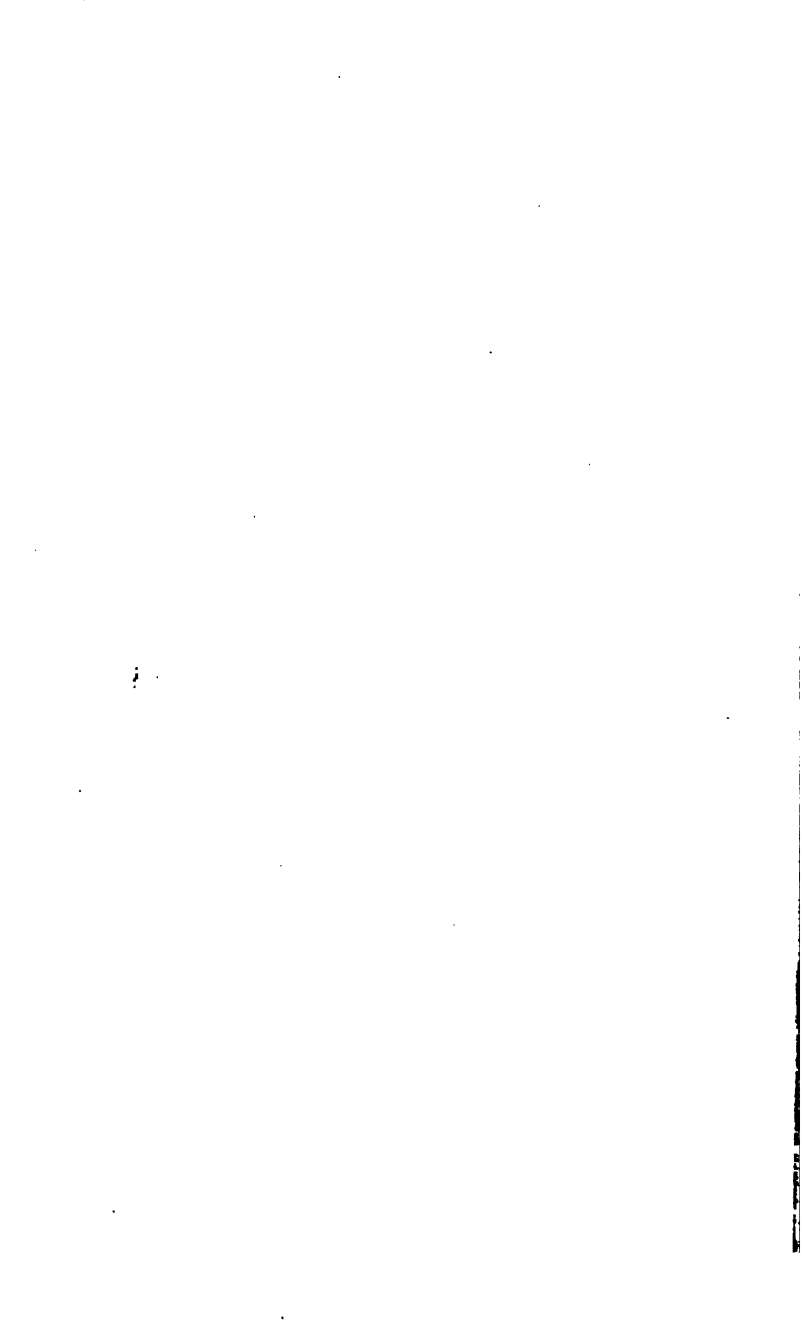
### About Google Book Search

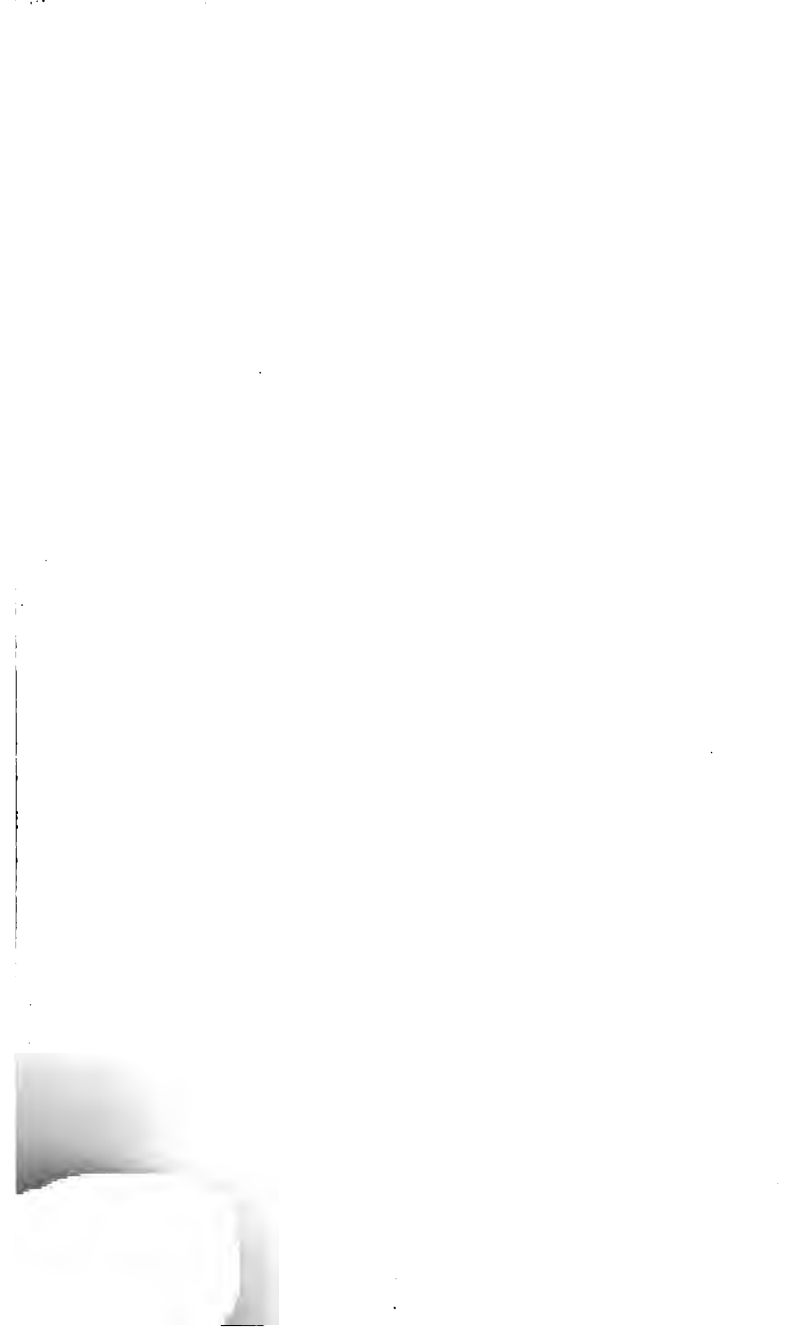
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



47. 1147.







AN  
ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
LATIN LANGUAGE.

**LONDON :**  
**SPOTTISWOODE and SHAW,**  
**New-street-Square.**

AN  
ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
LATIN LANGUAGE,  
FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY  
BENJAMIN HALL KENNEDY, D.D.  
PREBENDARY OF LICHFIELD.

LONDON:  
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS,  
PATERNOSTER-ROW.  
1847.





## P R E F A C E.

---

At the instance of several friends, and of other persons whose opinions carried weight\*, the Author has consented to publish the "Progressive Latin Grammar" in a new form.

Accordingly, the present publication comprises "An Elementary Grammar for the Use of Schools," and is to be followed by a "Higher Latin Grammar," for the instruction of advanced students, founded upon this volume, and supplementary to it.

The present Grammar contains, with merely verbal alterations, all that appeared in the first portion of the second edition of the "Progressive Grammar," excepting the *English* Syntactical Rules, and the English translation of the Syntax. These are replaced by a Smaller Latin Syntax, with translation, for the use of beginners. The former Syntax is, however, retained, and the rules and examples of the smaller one are, with little exception, verbally identical with those of the larger, so that a boy advancing in school may step from one to the other without the slightest inconvenience.

The distinctive features of the present Grammar may be stated nearly as in the Preface to the second edition of the "Progressive Grammar."

*Accidence.* — Quantity is briefly noticed in the first chapter, and the quantities of Latin words are marked throughout: thus the learner is impressed with the importance of pronunciation, and

\* The Author is anxious to record his great obligations to the Rev. Gilbert Ainslie, D.D., Master of Pembroke Hall, Cambridge, for many learned and acute criticisms, communicated from time to time in the most kind and liberal manner.

prepared for the study of Prosody. The Adjective is set down as a distinct part of speech, instead of the Participle. The use of the Pronoun *hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*, in the declension of Nouns is dispensed with : — all that it is intended to teach will be supplied by a Praxis, which is now in the course of preparation. The term *Conjunctive Mood* is adopted from the best modern writers, its special uses (Potential, Subjunctive, &c.) being reserved for explanation in the Syntax. The Participle, or Gerundive, in *dus* has been deprived of the name of *Future*, to which it certainly has no claim. The Future Perfect in *ro* has been removed from the Conjunctive to its proper place in the Indicative Mood. The Tenses are translated by one sign only, the other English signs being afterwards specially noticed. In like manner, the varying forms, *ere* for *erunt*, *re* for *ris*, *fui* for *sum*, &c., are omitted in the paradigms, and specially noticed in a subsequent place. It is hoped that the paradigms will be made easier to the learner by these changes, and also by the synoptical form in which they are printed. The old memorial hexameters for genders of Nouns, flexion of Verbs, &c., are replaced by rhyming Latin lines in octosyllabic rhythm, which are learnt (as the Author has found) with infinitely greater ease, remembered quite as well, and applied with at least equal readiness. In adopting this alteration, the Author has followed not only the clear dictates of his own judgment, but also the universal practice of Continental Latin grammars.

*Smaller Syntax and First Rules of Construing.* — These rules are intended to introduce the beginner to the practice of construing simple sentences, before he enters upon the further study of Syntax.

In the *larger Syntax*, the compiler has applied the improved principles of modern philology to the memorial system of instruction. He has chosen Latin rules on account of their superior conciseness ; and, while he has made the individual rules short and clear enough for memorial citation, he has also adhered as nearly as he might to philosophical accuracy in their arrangement ; following the growth of the sentence from its simplest to its complex forms, and carefully explaining the distinction between the simple and compound sentence, as also between the several kinds of compound sentences. It is only by an accurate understanding of these dis-

tinctions that a learner can thoroughly master the doctrine of the Subjunctive mood, so eminently important in Latin ; and, how easily and perfectly it can be mastered by the method here adopted, the compiler knows from experience.

The elementary rules of *Prosody* are thrown into the form of memorial Latin verses. This plan is appropriate to the subject itself, and suited to learners who have already made some progress in the language. Although it has been impossible in these verses to avoid occasional deviations from approved rhythm, yet it will be found that the objectionable lines do not form so much as one tenth part of the whole number ; while of verses decidedly inharmonious there are only 5 or 6 out of 225 ; and even these may be turned to advantage, as examples of what should be avoided in rhythm.

This Grammar is supposed to be used in schools nearly as follows :— A class of beginners learn the *Accidence* by rote, to § 69., and are carried through it twice, omitting only § 17. and § 31., which are useful rather for reference than for memorial repetition. They then begin the *Rules of Gender*, &c., and are exercised in declining Substantives with Adjectives, and in conjugating Verbs from a vocabulary or from the master's dictation. Having twice or thrice gone through the *Rules of Gender*, &c., they commence the *Smaller Latin Syntax*, and at the same time begin to be exercised in construing and writing the simplest sentences. Having construed and learnt this *Syntax* once, they go through it again, at the same time beginning *Prosody*, and construing and writing longer sentences, with application and repetition of the *Syntax* rules. *Prosody* being learnt once throughout, they go over it again, at the same time beginning to construe and scan (with continual reference to *Prosody* rules) *Heroic and Elegiac Extracts* from *Ovid*. These too they will now repeat by rote ; and also commence versification. As they advance in their course of reading, their foundation must be kept secure by reference to their Grammar rules, and by several weekly lessons in the Grammar itself. When they are high enough to study the elegancies of Latin style in *Cicero* and *Livy*, and to write Latin themes, they will be required to construe and repeat the larger *Latin Syntax*, and, when familiar with this, the higher Grammar will

be placed in their hands, and applied both in general reading, and also by means of illustrative Exercises and Catechetical Lectures.

In the publication of his Latin Grammar, the Author has had in view one only object—the promotion of sound learning and good instruction; and he is thankful in finding, both from his own experience and from that of other persons, that his labour has not been void of fruit.

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

## ACCIDENCE, OR WORD-FORMATION.

---

### SIGNS OF SPEECH.

- § 1. **GRAMMAR** teaches the rules of speech. Latin Grammar teaches the rules of the Latin speech, which was spoken by the ancient Romans.
- § 2. The Parts of Speech are Words : and the elements of Words are Letters.
- § 3. The Latin **LETTERS** are twenty-five, being the same as the English without W.
- Capitals : A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.
- Small : a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.
- § 4. Six of the Letters are **VOCAL**ES, Vowels, self-sounding, a, e, i, o, u, y : the rest are **CONSONANT**ES, Consonants, which cannot be sounded without a vowel.
- § 5. **CONSONANT**S are divided into **Liquids**, Double Consonants, and Mutes.

The Liquids are l, m, n, r ; Double Consonants, x, z ; the rest are Mutes.

§ 6. A SYLLABLE consists of one or more letters pronounced in one breath ; as *ī-lēx*.

A DIPHTHONG is the sound of two vowels meeting in one syllable,

There are three usual diphthongs, *ae*, *oe*, *au* ; and three seldom used, *ai*, *ei*, *eu*.

§ 7. Every Syllable is considered SHORT (˘) or LONG (¯) in quantity, according as its vowel is short or long.

A Vowel may be	{	Short by nature, . . .	as <i>āmōr</i> .
		Long by nature, . . .	as <i>ēsū</i> .
		Short by position before another vowel, . . .	as <i>pīōs</i> .
		Long by position before two con- sonants or a double consonant, as <i>pērnōx</i> .	

*Obs.* All diphthongs are long ; as *caūdā*.

§ 8. PUNCTA, the Signs of Punctuation, or Stops, are the same in Latin as in English : Comma (,) ; Semicolon (;) ; Colon (:) ; Full Stop (.) ; Note of Interrogation (?) ; Note of Admiration (!).

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. THE PARTS OF SPEECH, or Words, are of three kinds :

I. NOMINA, Nouns ; which are threefold :

(1) NOMINA SUBSTANTIVA, Nouns Substantive, or names of persons and things : as, *Cāsār*, *Cæsar* ; *ōvum*, *an egg* ; *virtūs*, *virtue*.

(2) NOMINA ADJECTIVA, Nouns Adjective ; which express the qualities of persons and things : as, *clārūs*, *illustrious* ; *grāndis*, *large* ; *libēr*, *free*.

(3) PRONOMINA, Pronouns ; which are used to avoid

the frequent repetition of Substantives : as, *ěgŏ, I; tŭ, thou; illě, he; quī, who.*

*Note.* Names of persons and places are called Proper Names : other Substantives are called Common Nouns, or Appellatives.

II. VERBA, Verbs ; which express what persons and things do, suffer, or are : as, *Cæsār vĕnĭt, Cæsar comes; virtŭs laŭdātŭr, virtue is praised; ōvum ěst grāndě, the egg is large.*

III. PARTICULÆ, Particles ; which are four-fold :

- (1.) ADVERBIA, Adverbs ; which express the qualities of verbs or adjectives : as, *bĕnĕ, well; cĕlĕrĭtĕr, quickly; nŭnc, now.*
- (2.) PRÆPOSITIONES, Prepositions ; which express the relations of nouns to each other : as, *Cæsār ĩn Itāliam vĕnĭt, Cæsar comes into Italy.*
- (3.) CONJUNCTIONES, Conjunctions ; which connect the other parts of speech : as, *ěgŏ ět Cæsār, I and Cæsar; vĕnĭt ūt laŭdĕtŭr, he comes that he may be praised.*
- (4.) INTERJECTIONES, Interjections ; words of exclamation : as, *heŭ, ěheŭ, heĭ, vĕ, alas! heŭs, ho! O, oh! ěn, ěccĕ, lo!*

§ 10. THEREFORE the PARTS of SPEECH are Eight ; viz.

- |                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Substantive ;</i> | 5. <i>Adverb ;</i>         |
| 2. <i>Adjective ;</i>   | 6. <i>Preposition ;</i>    |
| 3. <i>Pronoun ;</i>     | 7. <i>Conjunction ;</i>    |
| 4. <i>Verb ;</i>        | 8. <i>Interjection ;</i>   |
| which are Flĕxĭbĭlĭă,   | which are Infĕxĭbĭlĭă, In- |
| Flexible, or, declined. | flexible, or, undeclined.  |

*Note.* FLEXIO, Flexion, is the manner of changing the endings of words in order to show their relations to other words. The flexion of Nouns is called Dĕclĭnātĭŏ, Declension ; the flexion of Verbs Cŏnjŭgātĭŏ, Conjugation.



## DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 11. THE SUBSTANTIVE is declined by Number and Case.

NUMERŪ, the Numbers, are two :

I. Singŭlārīs, *Singular*, which speaks of one, as, Māgīstēr, *a master*.

II. Plūrālīs, *Plural*, which speaks of more than one, as, Māgīstrī, *masters*.

CASUS, the Cases, are six :

I. Nōmīnātīvūs, the *Nominative* (or Subject) Case, usually goes before a Verb, and answers the question Who, or What? as, *Who teaches?* Māgīstēr dōcēt, *the master teaches*.

II. Gēnītīvūs, the *Genitive* Case, has the sign of, and answers the question, Whose, or Whereof? as, *Whose voice?* Māgīstrī vōx, *the voice of the master*.

III. Dātīvūs, the *Dative* Case, has the signs to, for, and answers the question, To or for Whom? To or for What? as, *To whom do I speak?* Lōquōr māgīstrō, *I speak to the master*.

IV. Accūsātīvūs, the *Accusative* (or Object) Case, follows the Verb, and answers the question, Whom or What? as, *Whom do I see?* Vīdēō māgīstrum, *I see the master*. It also follows Prepositions.

V. Vōcātīvūs, the *Vocative* Case, is of one called or spoken to: as, O māgīstēr! *O master!*

VI. Ablātīvūs, the *Ablative* Case, has the signs by, with, from, in, and others, and often follows Prepositions: as, *By whom am I taught?* Dōcēōr ā māgīstrō, *I am taught by the master*.

§ 12. There are Five DECLENSIONS of Latin Substantives, known by the endings of the Genitive Case Singular.

The Genitive Singular of the 1st Declension ends in *a*.

”	”	2nd	”	”	<i>i</i> .
”	”	3rd	”	”	<i>is</i> .
”	”	4th	”	”	<i>us</i> .
”	”	5th	”	”	<i>ei</i> .

§ 13. GENERA, the Genders, of Nouns are three :

- I. Māscūlinum, *Masculine*.
- II. Fēmīnīnum, *Feminine*.
- III. Neūtrum, *Neuter*.

*Note.* When a Noun can be either Masculine or Feminine, its Gender is called Cōmmūnē, *Common* : as, pārens, *a parent*.

FIRST DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 14. The Nominative of the First Declension ends in *a* : except a few Greek words, chiefly Proper Names, which end in *as*, *es*, or *e*.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Mēns-ā, <i>a table</i>	Mēns-ae, <i>tables</i>
Gen.	Mēns-ae, <i>of a table</i>	Mēns-arum, <i>of tables</i>
Dat.	Mēns-ae, <i>to or for a table</i>	Mēns-is, <i>to or for tables</i>
Acc.	Mēns-am, <i>a table</i>	Mēns-as, <i>tables</i>
Voc.	Mēns-ā, <i>O table</i>	Mēns-ae, <i>O tables</i>
Abl.	Mēns-a, <i>by, with, or from a table.</i>	Mēns-is, <i>by, with, or from tables.</i>

*Obs.* 1. Some Nouns take *um* as well as *rum* in the Genitive Plural : as, cōlicōlum or cōlicōlārum.

*Obs.* 2. Dēā, *a goddess*, has Dative and Ablative Plural dēābūs. So filiā, *a daughter*, filiābūs.

*Note.* Greek Nouns in *as*, *es*, *e*, are thus declined : —

Nom.	Ænē-as,	Gen.	ae,	Dat.	ae,	Acc.	an or am,	Voc.	ā	Abl.	ā.
Nom.	Anchis-es,	Gen.	ae,	Dat.	ae,	Acc.	en	Voc.	ē or ŷ,	Abl.	ā or ē
Nom.	Cybēl-e,	Gen.	ēs,	Dat.	ae,	Acc.	en	Voc.	ē	Abl.	ē

## SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 15. The Nominative of the Second Declension ends in *us* or *er*, of the Masculine gender: in *um* of the Neuter gender.

## (a) Masculine Substantives.

## 1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Dömln-ūs, <i>a lord</i>	Dömln-ī, <i>lords</i>
Gen.	Dömln-ī, <i>of a lord</i>	Dömln-ōrum, <i>of lords</i>
Dat.	Dömln-ō, <i>to or for a lord</i>	Dömln-īs, <i>to or for lords</i>
Acc.	Dömln-um, <i>a lord</i>	Dömln-ōs, <i>lords</i>
Voc.	Dömln-ě, <i>O lord</i>	Dömln-ī, <i>O lords</i>
Abl.	Dömln-ō, <i>by, with, or from a lord.</i>	Dömln-īs, <i>by, with, or from lords.</i>

## 2.

Nom.	Mägiſt-ēr, <i>a master</i>	Mägiſtr-ī, <i>masters</i>
Gen.	Mägiſtr-ī, <i>of a master</i>	Mägiſtr-ōrum, <i>of masters</i>
Dat.	Mägiſtr-ō, <i>to or for a master</i>	Mägiſtr-īs, <i>to or for masters</i>
Acc.	Mägiſtr-um, <i>a master</i>	Mägiſtr-ōs, <i>masters</i>
Voc.	Mägiſt-ēr, <i>O master</i>	Mägiſtr-ī, <i>O masters</i>
Abl.	Mägiſtr-ō, <i>by, with, or from a master.</i>	Mägiſtr-īs, <i>by, with, or from masters.</i>

## 3.

Nom.	Pü-ēr, <i>a boy</i>	Püēr-ī, <i>boys</i>
Gen.	Püēr-ī, <i>of a boy</i>	Püēr-ōrum, <i>of boys</i>
Dat.	Püēr-ō, <i>to or for a boy</i>	Püēr-īs, <i>to or for boys</i>
Acc.	Püēr-um, <i>a boy</i>	Püēr-ōs, <i>boys</i>
Voc.	Pü-ēr, <i>O boy</i>	Püēr-ī, <i>O boys</i>
Abl.	Püēr-ō, <i>by, with, or from a boy.</i>	Püēr-īs, <i>by, with, or from boys.</i>

## (b) Neuter.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Rēgn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms</i>
Gen.	Rēgn-ī, <i>of a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ōrum, <i>of kingdoms</i>
Dat.	Rēgn-ō, <i>to or for a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-īs, <i>to or for kingdoms</i>
Acc.	Rēgn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms</i>
Voc.	Rēgn-um, <i>O kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ā, <i>O kingdoms</i>
Abl.	Rēgn-ō, <i>by, with, or from a kingdom.</i>	Rēgn-īs, <i>by, with, or from kingdoms.</i>

*Obs.* 1. Most Substantives in *er* are declined like *māgīstēr*, dropping *e* in the Genitive. Those declined like *pūēr*, keeping *e*, are :

*sōcēr, gēnēr, ārmīgēr,*  
*ādūltēr, vēspēr, signīfēr.*

*Obs.* 2. *Lībēr, a book*, is declined like *māgīstēr*. *Lībēr, Bacchus*, and *libērī, children*, like *pūēr*.

*Obs.* 3. *Fīlūs, gēnūs*, and Roman Proper Names in *ūs*, make the Vocative in *i* : *as, fili, O son* ; *gēnī, O genius* ; *Mērcūrī, O Mercurius* ; *Cāl, O Caius* ; *Pōmpēī, O Pompeius*.

*Obs.* 4. Genitives in *ii* were anciently contracted into *i* ; as *Ingēnūm, disposition*, *Ingēnī, Ingēni*.

*Obs.* 5. Some Nouns take *um* as well as *orum* in the Genitive Plural : *as, nūmmum* or *nūmmōrum*.

*Note* 1. *Děūs, God*, is thus declined : —

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Děūs, <i>God</i>		Děī, Dīī, or Dī, <i>Gods</i>
Gen.	Děī, <i>of God</i>		Děōrum or Děūm, <i>of Gods</i>
Dat.	Děō, <i>to God</i>		Děīs, Dīīs, or Dīs, <i>to Gods</i>
Acc.	Děum, <i>God</i>		Děōs, <i>Gods</i>
Voc.	Děūs, <i>O God</i>		Děī, Dīī, or Dī, <i>O Gods</i>
Abl.	Děō, <i>by, with, or from God.</i>		Děīs, Dīīs, or Dīs, <i>by, with, or from Gods.</i>

*Note* 2. *Vīr, a man*, Gen. *vīrī*, &c. Plur. Nom. *vīrī*, &c.

*Note* 3. Greek words in *ūs, ūm*, are thus declined : —

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>
Nom.	Dělōs	Nom.	Cōlōn
Gen.	Dělī	Gen.	Cōlī
Dat.	Dělō	Dat.	Cōlō
Acc.	Dělōn or Dělum	Acc.	Cōlōn
Voc.	Dělě	Voc.	Cōlōn
Abl.	Dělō.	Abl.	Cōlō.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 16. The Nominative of the Third Declension ends in *a, e, o, c, l, n, r, s, t, x* : the Genitive always ends in *is*, but is formed from the Nominative in many different ways.

## § 17. Formation of the Genitive in Third Declension.

Nom. Termination.			Gender.
A	- -	Gen. adds <i>tis</i> : as, pčēmā, pčēmātis. - -	N.
E	- -	Gen. <i>is</i> : as, mārē, mārīs. - -	N.
O	- -	Gen. adds <i>nis</i> : as, lēō, lēōnis ; nātīō, nātīōnis. But cārō, cārnis. - -	M. F.
	DO, GO	Gen. <i>inis</i> : as, ōrdō, ōrdīnis ; vīrgō, vīrgīnis. So hōmō, nēmō, tūrbō, Apōllō. But līgō, līgōnis ; Mācēdō, Mācēdōnis. - -	F. M.
C	- -	Lāc, lāctis. - -	N.
L	- -	Gen. adds <i>is</i> : as, sōl, sōlis. But mēl, mēlis ; fēl, fēlis ; sāl, sālīs. - -	N. M.
N	ĀN, ĒN, ŌN	Gen. adds <i>is</i> : as, Tītān, Tītānis ; rēn, rēnis. But slndōn, slndōnis ; Gōrgōn, Gōrgōnis ; with other Greek words. Some Greek Proper Names make <i>ontis</i> , as, Xēnōphōn, Xēnōphōntis. - -	M. F. N. M.
	ĪN	Gen. <i>inis</i> : as, lūmēn, lūmīnis. - -	N. M.
R	AR	Gen. <i>aris</i> : as, cālcār, cālcāris ; or <i>āris</i> , as, jūbār, jūbāris. But fār, fārīs. - -	N.
	ER	Gen. adds <i>is</i> : as, cārcēr, cārcēris ; vēr, vēris. - -	M. N.
	TER	Gen. casts out <i>e</i> and adds <i>is</i> : as, pātēr, patrīs. (So also Imbēr, Imbris ; and names of months in <i>er</i> ; as, Nōvēmbēr, Nōvēmbēris.) But Jūpītēr, Jōvis ; Itēr, Itinēris ; lātēr, lātēris. - -	M. N.
	OR	Gen. <i>oris</i> : as, hōnōr, hōnōris ; but ārbōr, ārbōris ; āquōr, āquōris ; mārmōr, mār- mōris ; cōr, cōrdīs. - -	M. F. N.
	UR	Gen. adds <i>is</i> : as, fūlgūr, fūlgūris ; fūr, fūris. Gen. <i>oris</i> : as, ēbūr, ēbōris. But jēcūr, jēcīnōris and jēcōris. - -	N. M. N.
S	AS	Gen. <i>atis</i> : as, ātās, ātātīs. But vās, vāsīs ; vās, vādīs ; mās, mārīs ; ās, āssīs. Some Greek masculine names in <i>as</i> make Gen. <i>antis</i> : as, Pāllās, Pāllāntīs ; feminine, Gen. <i>adis</i> ; as, Pāllās, Pāllādīs. - -	F. M. N.
	ES	Parisyllables, Gen. <i>is</i> : as, nūbēs, nūbīs. Imparisyllables, Gen. <i>itis</i> : as, mīlēs, mīltīs. — <i>ētis</i> : as, sēgēs, sēgētīs. - - — <i>ētis</i> : as, quīēs, quīētīs. - - — <i>itis</i> : as, ōbeās, ōbeidīs. - - — <i>edis</i> : only pēs, pēdīs, with its compounds. - - — <i>edis</i> : only mērcēs, hārēs	F. M. M. M. F. F. M. M. F. M. F. F. M.
		But Cērēs, Cērēris ; ās, āris ; prās, prādīs.	

Nom. Termination.		Gender.
is	Parisyllables, Gen. <i>is</i> : as, <i>āvis</i> , <i>āvis</i> ; <i>āmnis</i> , <i>āmnis</i> . Imparisyllables, Gen. <i>idis</i> : as, <i>lāpis</i> , <i>lāpidis</i> . — <i>ēris</i> : as, <i>cīnis</i> , <i>cīnēris</i> ; — <i>pūlvīs</i> , <i>pūlvēris</i> . — <i>itis</i> : only <i>lis</i> , <i>Sāmnis</i> , — <i>Quiris</i> , <i>Dīs</i> . But <i>sāguis</i> , <i>sāguinis</i> ; <i>glīs</i> , <i>gliris</i> .	F. M. M. F M. M. F.
os	Gen. <i>ōtis</i> : as, <i>dōs</i> , <i>dōtis</i> . — <i>ōris</i> : as, <i>flos</i> , <i>floris</i> ; <i>ōs</i> , <i>ōris</i> . But <i>cūstōs</i> , <i>cūstōdis</i> ; <i>bōs</i> , <i>bōvis</i> ; <i>ōs</i> , <i>ōssis</i> .	M. F. M. N.
ūs	Gen. <i>ūtis</i> : as, <i>virtūs</i> , <i>virtutis</i> . — <i>ūdis</i> : as, <i>pālūs</i> , <i>pāludis</i> . But <i>pectis</i> , — <i>pectudis</i> . — <i>ūris</i> : as, <i>tellūs</i> , <i>tellūris</i> ; and monosyl- lables ; as, <i>rūs</i> , <i>mūs</i> . But <i>grūs</i> , <i>grūs</i> ; <i>sūs</i> , <i>sūs</i> .	F. F. N. M. F.
ūs	Gen. <i>ēris</i> : as, <i>vulnūs</i> , <i>vulnēris</i> ; <i>Vēnūs</i> , <i>Vē-</i> — <i>ērīs</i> . — <i>ōris</i> : as, <i>tēmpūs</i> , <i>tēmpōris</i> ; <i>pectūs</i> , — <i>pectōris</i> . Gen. <i>audis</i> : only <i>laūs</i> , <i>laudis</i> ; <i>fraūs</i> , <i>fraudis</i> .	N. F. N. F.
Aūs Ls, Ns, Rs	Gen. <i>tis</i> for <i>s</i> : as, <i>pūs</i> , <i>pultis</i> ; <i>frōns</i> , <i>frōn-</i> — <i>tis</i> ; <i>pars</i> , <i>pārtis</i> . But <i>frōns</i> , <i>frōndis</i> ; — <i>glāns</i> , <i>glāndis</i> .	F. M.
Bs, Fs, Ms	Gen. inserts <i>i</i> before <i>s</i> : as, <i>trābs</i> , <i>trābis</i> ; — <i>stirps</i> , <i>stirpis</i> ; <i>hēmōs</i> , <i>hēmōis</i> . But <i>cāl-</i> — <i>lēbs</i> , <i>cālēbis</i> ; <i>prīncēps</i> , <i>prīncēpis</i> .	F. M.
T	Gen. <i>itis</i> : only <i>cāpit</i> , <i>cāpitis</i> , and its com- — pounds.	N.
X	Gen. <i>ācis</i> : as, <i>pāx</i> , <i>pācis</i> . But <i>fāx</i> , <i>fācis</i> .	F.
xx	Gen. <i>icis</i> : as, <i>jūdēx</i> , <i>jūdicis</i> . But <i>vībēx</i> , — <i>vibicis</i> ; <i>vērvēx</i> , <i>vērvēcis</i> ; <i>nēx</i> , <i>nēcis</i> . — <i>ēgis</i> : as, <i>lēx</i> , <i>lēgis</i> . But <i>grēx</i> , <i>grēgis</i> ; — <i>rēmēx</i> , <i>rēmēgis</i> . Remark <i>sēnēx</i> , <i>sēnis</i> ; <i>sūpēllēx</i> , <i>sūpēllēctilis</i> .	M. F. M. F.
ix	Gen. <i>icis</i> : as, <i>cōrnix</i> , <i>cōrnīcis</i> . — <i>icis</i> : as, <i>cālix</i> , <i>cālicis</i> . But <i>strīx</i> , — <i>strīgīs</i> ; <i>nīx</i> , <i>nīvis</i> .	F. M. F.
ox	Gen. <i>ōcis</i> : as, <i>vōx</i> , <i>vōcis</i> . But <i>nōx</i> , <i>nōctis</i> .	F.
ux	Gen. <i>ūcis</i> : as, <i>nūx</i> , <i>nūcis</i> . But <i>lūx</i> , <i>lūcis</i> ; — <i>cōnjūx</i> , <i>cōnjūgis</i> .	F. M.
yx	Gen. <i>ygis</i> : as, <i>Phrȳx</i> , <i>Phrȳgis</i> . Some have — <i>ycis</i> , <i>ycis</i> .	F. M.
nx, rx	Gen. <i>cis</i> or <i>gis</i> : as, <i>lȳnx</i> , <i>lȳnois</i> ; <i>ārx</i> , <i>ārcis</i> ; — <i>Sphīnx</i> , <i>Sphīngis</i> .	F.

**Obs.** Parisyllable is a Noun having as many syllables in the Gen. Sing. as in the Nom. ; Imparisyllable a Noun having more syllables in the Gen. Sing. than in the Nom.

## § 18.

## EXAMPLES IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## A. Masculine and Feminine Substantives.

(a) Parisyllables ; or not increasing in the Genitive Singular.

## 1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Nūb-ēs, <i>a cloud</i>	Nūb-ēs, <i>clouds</i>
Gen.	Nūb-īs, <i>of a cloud</i>	Nūb-ium, <i>of clouds</i>
Dat.	Nūb-i, <i>to or for a cloud</i>	Nūb-ibūs, <i>to or for clouds</i>
Acc.	Nūb-em, <i>a cloud</i>	Nūb-ēs, <i>clouds</i>
Voc.	Nūb-ēs, <i>O cloud</i>	Nūb-ēs, <i>O clouds</i>
Abl.	Nūb-ē, <i>by, with, or from a cloud.</i>	Nūb-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from clouds.</i>

## 2.

Nom.	Civ-īs, <i>a citizen</i>	Civ-ēs, <i>citizens</i>
Gen.	Civ-īs, <i>of a citizen</i>	Civ-ium, <i>of citizens</i>
Dat.	Civ-i, <i>to or for a citizen</i>	Civ-ibūs, <i>to or for citizens</i>
Acc.	Civ-em, <i>a citizen</i>	Civ-ēs, <i>citizens</i>
Voc.	Civ-īs, <i>O citizen</i>	Civ-ēs, <i>O citizens</i>
Abl.	Civ-ē, <i>by, with, or from a citizen.</i>	Civ-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from citizens.</i>

(b) Imparisyllables ; or increasing in the Genitive Singular.

## 1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Lēō, <i>a lion</i>	Lēōn-ēs, <i>lions</i>
Gen.	Lēōn-īs, <i>of a lion</i>	Lēōn-um, <i>of lions</i>
Dat.	Lēōn-i, <i>to or for a lion</i>	Lēōn-ibūs, <i>to or for lions</i>
Acc.	Lēōn-em, <i>a lion</i>	Lēōn-ēs, <i>lions</i>
Voc.	Lēō, <i>O lion</i>	Lēōn-ēs, <i>O lions</i>
Abl.	Lēōn-ē, <i>by, with, or from a lion.</i>	Lēōn-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from lions.</i>

## 2.

Nom.	Virgō, <i>a virgin</i>	Virgīn-ēs, <i>virgins</i>
Gen.	Virgīn-īs, <i>of a virgin</i>	Virgīn-um, <i>of virgins</i>
Dat.	Virgīn-i, <i>to or for a virgin</i>	Virgīn-ibūs, <i>to or for virgins</i>
Acc.	Virgīn-em, <i>a virgin</i>	Virgīn-ēs, <i>virgins</i>
Voc.	Virgō, <i>O virgin</i>	Virgīn-ēs, <i>O virgins</i>
Abl.	Virgīn-ē, <i>by, with, or from a virgin.</i>	Virgīn-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from virgins.</i>

## 3.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. <i>Ētās, an age</i>	<i>Ētāt-ēs, ages</i>
Gen. <i>Ētāt-īs, of an age</i>	<i>Ētāt-um, of ages</i>
Dat. <i>Ētāt-i, to or for an age</i>	<i>Ētāt-ībūs, to or for ages</i>
Acc. <i>Ētāt-em, an age</i>	<i>Ētāt-ēs, ages</i>
Voc. <i>Ēt-ās, O age</i>	<i>Ētāt-ēs, O ages</i>
Abl. <i>Ētāt-ē, by, with, or from an age.</i>	<i>Ētāt-ībūs, by, with, or from ages.</i>

## 4.

Nom. <i>Cōmēs, a companion</i>	<i>Cōmīt-ēs, companions</i>
Gen. <i>Cōmīt-īs, of a companion</i>	<i>Cōmīt-um, of companions</i>
Dat. <i>Cōmīt-i, to or for a companion</i>	<i>Cōmīt-ībūs, to or for companions</i>
Acc. <i>Cōmīt-em, a companion</i>	<i>Cōmīt-ēs, companions</i>
Voc. <i>Cōmēs, O companion</i>	<i>Cōmīt-ēs, O companions</i>
Abl. <i>Cōmīt-ē, by, with, or from a companion.</i>	<i>Cōmīt-ībūs, by, with, or from companions.</i>

## 5.

Nom. <i>Sērpēns, a serpent</i>	<i>Sērpēt-ēs, serpents</i>
Gen. <i>Sērpēt-īs, of a serpent</i>	<i>Sērpēt-um, of serpents</i>
Dat. <i>Sērpēt-i, to or for a serpent</i>	<i>Sērpēt-ībūs, to or for serpents</i>
Acc. <i>Sērpēt-em, a serpent</i>	<i>Sērpēt-ēs, serpents</i>
Voc. <i>Sērpēns, O serpent</i>	<i>Sērpēt-ēs, O serpents</i>
Abl. <i>Sērpēt-ē, by, with, or from a serpent.</i>	<i>Sērpēt-ībūs, by, with, or from serpents.</i>

## B. Neuter Substantives.

(a) Plural *ia*.

## 1.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. <i>Mār-ē, the sea</i>	<i>Mār-īā, seas</i>
Gen. <i>Mār-īs, of the sea</i>	<i>Mār-ium, of seas</i>
Dat. <i>Mār-i, to or for the sea</i>	<i>Mār-ībūs, to or for seas</i>
Acc. <i>Mār-ē, the sea</i>	<i>Mār-īā, seas</i>
Voc. <i>Mār-ē, O sea</i>	<i>Mār-īā, O seas</i>
Abl. <i>Mār-i, by, with, or from the sea.</i>	<i>Mār-ībūs, by, with, or from seas.</i>

## 2.

Nom. <i>Animāl, an animal</i>	<i>Animāl-īā, animals</i>
Gen. <i>Animāl-īs, of an animal</i>	<i>Animāl-ium, of animals</i>
Dat. <i>Animāl-i, to or for an animal</i>	<i>Animāl-ībūs, to or for animals</i>
Acc. <i>Animāl, an animal</i>	<i>Animāl-īā, animals</i>
Voc. <i>Animāl, O animal</i>	<i>Animāl-īā, O animals</i>
Abl. <i>Animāl-i, by, with, or from an animal.</i>	<i>Animāl-ībūs, by, with, or from animals.</i>



(b) Plural *a*.

1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Opūs, <i>a work</i>	Opēr-ā, <i>works</i>
Gen.	Opēr-ls, <i>of a work</i>	Opēr-um, <i>of works</i>
Dat.	Opēr-l, <i>to or for a work</i>	Opēr-lbūs, <i>to or for works</i>
Acc.	Op-ūs, <i>a work</i>	Opēr-ā, <i>works</i>
Voc.	Op-ūs, <i>O work</i>	Opēr-ā, <i>O works</i>
Abl.	Opēr-ē, <i>by, with, or from a work.</i>	Opēr-lbūs, <i>by, with, or from works.</i>

2.

Nom.	Fūlmēn, <i>lightning</i>	Fūlmīn-ā, <i>lightnings</i>
Gen.	Fūlmīn-ls, <i>of lightning</i>	Fūlmīn-um, <i>of lightnings</i>
Dat.	Fūlmīn-l, <i>to or for lightning</i>	Fūlmīn-lbūs, <i>to or for lightnings</i>
Acc.	Fūlmēn, <i>lightning</i>	Fūlmīn-ā, <i>lightnings</i>
Voc.	Fūlmēn, <i>O lightning</i>	Fūlmīn-ā, <i>O lightnings</i>
Abl.	Fūlmīn-ē, <i>by, with, or from lightning.</i>	Fūlmīn-lbūs, <i>by, with, or from lightnings.</i>

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 19. The Nominative of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in *us* ; that of Neuter Substantives in *u*.

1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Grād-ūs, <i>a step</i>	Grād-ūs, <i>steps</i>
Gen.	Grād-ūs, <i>of a step</i>	Grād-ūum, <i>of steps</i>
Dat.	Grād-ūl, <i>to or for a step</i>	Grād-lbūs, <i>to or for steps</i>
Acc.	Grād-um, <i>a step</i>	Grād-ūs, <i>steps</i>
Voc.	Grād-ūs, <i>O step</i>	Grād-ūs, <i>O steps</i>
Abl.	Grād-ū, <i>by, with, or from a step.</i>	Grād-lbūs, <i>by, with, or from steps.</i>

2.

Nom.	Gēn-ū, <i>a knee</i>	Gēn-ūā, <i>knees</i>
Gen.	Gēn-ū, <i>of a knee</i>	Gēn-ūum, <i>of knees</i>
Dat.	Gēn-ū, <i>to or for a knee</i>	Gēn-lbūs, <i>to or for knees</i>
Acc.	Gēn-ū, <i>a knee</i>	Gēn-ūā, <i>knees</i>
Voc.	Gēn-ū, <i>O knee</i>	Gēn-ūā, <i>O knees</i>
Abl.	Gēn-ū, <i>by, with, or from a knee.</i>	Gēn-lbūs, <i>by, with, or from knees.</i>

*Obs. 1.* The following words take *ūbūs* instead of *ībūs* in the Dative and Ablative Plural :

Arcūs, tribūs, artūs,	Quercūs, āctūs,
Spēcūs, pōrtūs, pārtūs,	Vērū, lāctūs.

*Obs. 2.* Dōmūs is peculiarly declined. See *NOTES*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 20. The Nominative ends in *es*.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Fācī-ēs, <i>a face</i>	Fācī-ēs, <i>faces</i>
Gen.	Fācī-ēī, <i>of a face</i>	Fācī-ērum, <i>of faces</i>
Dat.	Fācī-ēī, <i>to or for a face.</i>	Fācī-ēbūs, <i>to or for faces</i>
Acc.	Fācī-em, <i>a face</i>	Fācī-ēs, <i>faces</i>
Voc.	Fācī-ēs, <i>O face</i>	Fācī-ēs, <i>O faces</i>
Abl.	Fācī-ē, <i>by, with, or from a face</i>	Fācī-ēbūs, <i>by, with, or from faces.</i>

## ON SOME CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

§ 21.

*Im* prō *em* Accūsātīvō,  
*I* prō *e* in Ablātīvō  
Dānt *būris, cūcūmis, amūssis,*  
*Rāvis, sitis, vis, et tussis ;*  
Et flūminā quæ claudīt *is,*  
Ut *Albis, Liris, Tiberis.*

*Im* vėl *em* Accūsātīvō,  
*I* vėl *e* in Ablātīvō [*clāvis,*  
Dānt *nēptis, febris, mēssis,*  
*Pūppis, pēlvīs, rēstis, nāvis,*  
*Sēcūris, tūrris ;* addē his  
*Sēmētis* atquē *strigilis.*

§ 22.

*I* Singulāris Ablātivī,  
*Ia* Plūrālis Nōminātivī  
Neutrā gaudēt fingērē,  
Quæ exēunt in *al, ar, e.*  
His excēptā sūnt in *ar,*  
*Baccār, nēctār, jūbār, fār.*

§ 23.

*Ium* prō *um* quæ effērunt  
Plūrālī Gēnītivō sūnt :

- (1) *I* fōrmāntiā Ablātivō :
- (2) Nōn crēscēntiā Gēnītivō :
- (3) Plērāquē in *x* vėl *s*  
Pōst cōnsōnāntem pōsītis :
- (4) Cum āllīs Mōnōsŷllābis ;  
*Mās, mūs, nix, nōx, ōs*  
(*ōssis*), *cōs,*  
*Sāl, sōl, cōr, pāx, glis,*  
*lis, et dōs.*

His excīpiendā sūnt  
(Quæ *um* libētēr effērunt),  
*Vātēs, sēnēx, pātēr, pānis,*  
Et *accīptēr, et cānis,*  
*Frātēr, mātēr, jūvēnis,*  
Et *sāpiūs āpis, vōlūcris.*

## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 24. A. Adjectives of THREE TERMINATIONS in *us, a, um*, or *er, a, um*, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter Genders like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine Gender like Substantives of the First Declension : *as, bönüs, good ; nigër, black ; tēnër, tender.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Bön-ūs	bön-ā	bön-um	Bön-i	bön-æ	bön-ā
G. Bön-i	bön-æ	bön-i	Bön-orum	bön-ārum	bön-orum
D. Bön-ō	bön-æ	bön-ō	Bön-is	bön-is	bön-is
A. Bön-um	bön-am	bön-um	Bön-ōs	bön-ās	bön-ā
V. Bön-ē	bön-ā	bön-um	Bön-i	bön-æ	bön-ā
A. Bön-ō	bön-ā	bön-ō	Bön-is	bön-is	bön-is
N. Nig-ēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-i	nigr-æ	nigr-ā
G. Nigr-i	nigr-æ	nigr-i	Nigr-orum	nigr-ārum	nigr-orum
D. Nigr-ō	nigr-æ	nigr-ō	Nigr-is	nigr-is	nigr-is
A. Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ā
V. Nig-ēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigrī	nigr-æ	nigr-ā
A. Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-is	nigr-is	nigr-is
N. Tēnër	tēnër-ā	tēnër-um	Tēnër-i	tēnër-æ	tēnër-ā
G. Tēnër-i	tēnër-æ	tēnër-i	Tēnër-orum	tēnër-ārum	tēnër-orum
D. Tēnër-ō	tēnër-æ	tēnër-ō	Tēnër-is	tēnër-is	tēnër-is
A. Tēnër-um	tēnër-am	tēnër-um	Tēnër-ōs	tēnër-ās	tēnër-ā
V. Tēnër	tēnër-ā	tēnër-um	Tēnër-i	tēnër-æ	tēnër-ā
A. Tēnër-ō	tēnër-ā	tēnër-ō	Tēnër-is	tēnër-is	tēnër-is

*Obs.* The Adjectives declined like *tēnër* are, *āspër, lācër, libër, mīser, prōspër*, and the compounds of *fērō* and *gērō*, as *aūrīfēr, bēllīgēr*. *Dēxtër* is declined both ways.

§ 25. B. Adjectives with TWO TERMINATIONS or ONE TERMINATION follow the Third Declension of Substantives : *as, tristis, sad ; fēlix, happy ; ingēns, huge ; mēliör, better.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Singular.</i>		
M. F.	N.		M. F.	N.	
N. Trist-īs	trist-ē		Fēl-īx		Ingēns
G. Trist-īs			Fēlic-īs		Ingēnt-īs
D. Trist-i			Fēlic-i		Ingēnt-i
A. Trist-em	trist-ē	Fēlic-em	fēl-īx	Ingēnt-em	Ingēns
V. Trist-īs	trist-ē	Fēl-īx		Ingēns	
A. Trist-i		Fēlic-i		Ingēnt-i or ē	

*Plural.*

N.	Trist-ēs	trist-ŷā	Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-ŷā	Ingēnt-ēs	ingēnt-ŷā
G.	Trist-Yum		Fēlic-Yum		Ingēnt-Yum	
D.	Trist-ŷbūs		Fēlic-ŷbūs		Ingēnt-ŷbūs	
A.	Trist-ēs	trist-ŷā	Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-ŷā	Ingēnt-ēs	ingēnt-ŷā
V.	Trist-ēs	trist-ŷā	Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-ŷā	Ingēnt-ēs	ingēnt-ŷā
A.	Trist-ŷbūs		Fēlic-ŷbūs		Ingēnt-ŷbūs	

*Singular.*

	M. F.	N.
Nom.	Mēlŷ-ōr	mēlŷ-ūs
Gen.	Mēlŷōr-ŷs	
Dat.	Mēlŷōr-i	
Acc.	Mēlŷōr-em	mēlŷ-ūs
Voc.	Mēlŷ-ōr	mēlŷ-ūs
Abl.	Mēlŷōr-ē or i	

*Plural.*

	M. F.	N.
Nom.	Mēlŷōr-ēs	mēlŷōr-ā
Gen.	Mēlŷōr-um	
Dat.	Mēlŷōr-ŷbūs	
Acc.	Mēlŷōr-ēs	mēlŷōr-ā
Voc.	Mēlŷōr-ēs	mēlŷōr-ā
Abl.	Mēlŷōr-ŷbūs	

*Obs.* Adjectives in *er*, following the Third Declension of Substantives, have Three Terminations in the Nom. Sing. : *as*, *ācēr*, *ācēr-ŷs*, *ācēr-ē*, *sharp* ; *cēlēr*, *cēlēr-ŷs*, *cēlēr-ē*, *swift*.

*Sing.*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Acēr	ācēr-ŷs	ācēr-ē
Gen.	Acr-ŷs	ācēr-ŷs	ācēr-ŷs
Dat.	Acr-i	ācēr-i	ācēr-i
Acc.	Acr-em	ācēr-em	ācēr-ē
Voc.	Acēr	ācēr-ŷs	ācēr-ē
Abl.	Acr-i	ācēr-i	ācēr-i

*Sing.*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Cēlēr	cēlēr-ŷs	cēlēr-ē
Gen.	Cēlēr-ŷs	cēlēr-ŷs	cēlēr-ŷs
Dat.	Cēlēr-i	cēlēr-i	cēlēr-i
Acc.	Cēlēr-em	cēlēr-em	cēlēr-ē
Voc.	Cēlēr	cēlēr-ŷs	cēlēr-ē
Abl.	Cēlēr-i	cēlēr-i	cēlēr-i

The Plural terminations are like those of *tristŷs*; except *cēlēr-um*, Genitive Plural of *cēlēr*.

§ 26. The following are irregularly declined in the Singular.

*Unŷs, one.*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Un-ŷs	ŷn-ā	ŷn-um
Gen.		Un-iŷs	
Dat.		Un-i	
Acc.	Un-um	ŷn-am	ŷn-um
Abl.	Un-ō	ŷn-ā	ŷn-ō

*Utēr, which of two.*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ut-ēr	utr-ā	utr-um
Gen.		Utr-iŷs	
Dat.		Utr-i	
Acc.	Utr-um	utr-am	utr-um
Abl.	Utr-ō	utr-ā	utr-ō

*Alŷs, another.*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Alŷ-ŷs	ālŷ-ā	ālŷ-ŷd
Gen.		Alŷ-ŷs	
Dat.		Alŷ-i	
Acc.	Alŷ-um	ālŷ-am	ālŷ-ŷd
Abl.	Alŷ-ō	ālŷ-ā	ālŷ-ō

*Altēr, one of two.*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Altēr	āltēr-ā	āltēr-um
Gen.		Altēr-ŷs	
Dat.		Altēr-i	
Acc.	Altēr-um	āltēr-am	āltēr-um
Abl.	Altēr-ō	āltēr-ā	āltēr-ō

*Obs.* Like *unŷs* are declined *ŷllŷs*, *any* ; *nŷllŷs*, *none* ; *sōlŷs*, *alone* ; *tōtŷs*, *whole*. Like *utēr* : *neŷtēr*, *neither* ; *ŷtērquē*, *each* ; *ŷtēr-ŷis*, *utērŷlŷbēt*, *which you will*.

## COMPARISON.

§ 27. THE ADJECTIVE is compared by three Degrees ; the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative : as,

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
Dūrūs, <i>hard</i> ;	dūrīōr, <i>harder</i> ;	dūrīssīmūs, <i>hardest</i> ;

The Comparative is formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *ior*.

The Superlative is formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *issimus* : as,

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
Dūrūs, <i>hard</i> , Gen. dūr-i	dūr-ior	dūr-issīmūs
Brēvis, <i>short</i> , " brēv-is	brēv-ior	brēv-issīmūs
Audāx, <i>bold</i> , " audāc-is	audāc-ior	audāc-issīmūs

§ 28.

## EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Adjectives in *er* form the Superlative by adding *-rimus* to the Nominative : as, pūlchēr, *beautiful*, Comp. pūlchr-ior, Sup. pūlchēr-rimūs ; cēlēr, *swift*, cēlēr-ior, cēlēr-rimūs. So vētūs, *ancient*, (Gen. vētēris,) Sup. vētērrimūs.

(2) The following form the Superlative in *illimūs* :  
fācīlis, difficīlis,  
sīmīlis, dissīmīlis,  
grācīlis, et hūmīlis.

(3) Adjectives in dicūs, ficūs, vōlūs, form their Comparatives and Superlatives as if from Positives in dicēns, ficēns, vōlēns : as,

mālēdicūs, *slanderous*, mālēdicēntīōr, mālēdicēntīssīmūs,  
bēnēficūs, *beneficent*, bēnēficēntīōr, bēnēficēntīssīmūs,  
bēnēvōlūs, *benevolent*, bēnēvōlēntīōr, bēnēvōlēntīssīmūs.

(4) If the Positive has a vowel before *us*, the Comparative and Superlative are formed by prefixing the Adverbs māgīs, *more*, mākīmē, *most*, to the Positive : as, ārdū-ūs, *steep* ; māgīs ārdūūs, *more steep* ; mākīmē ārdūūs, *most steep*. But those in *quus* are compared as usual : as, āntīquūs, *ancient*, āntīquīōr, āntīquīssīmūs. So strēnūūs, *vigorous*, forms Sup. strēnūīssīmūs ; pīūs, *pious*, pīīssīmūs.

## § 29.

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
Bōnūs, <i>good</i>	mēllōr	ōptīmūs
Mālūs, <i>bad</i>	pējōr	pēssīmūs
Māgnūs, <i>great</i>	mājōr	māxīmūs
Pārvūs, <i>small</i>	mīnōr	mīnīmūs
Mūltūs, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimūs
Nēquam, <i>wicked</i>	nēquīōr	nēquissīmūs
Dīvēs, <i>rich</i>	dīvītīōr or dītīōr	dīvītissīmūs or dītissīmūs
Sēnēx, <i>old</i>	sēnlōr	(nātū māxīmūs)
Jūvenīs, <i>young</i>	jūnlōr	(nātū mīnīmūs)
Extērūs, <i>outward</i>	ēxtērlōr	ēxtremūs and ēxtīmūs
Infērūs, <i>low</i>	īnfērlōr	īnfīmūs and īmūs
Sūpērūs, <i>high</i>	sūpērlōr	suprēmūs and sūmmūs
Pōstērūs, <i>hindward</i>	pōstērlōr	pōstrēmūs and pōstūmūs.

## Comparatives and Superlatives formed from Prepositions.

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
(Citṛā, <i>this side of</i> )	cītērlōr	cītīmūs
(Intrā, <i>within</i> )	īntērlōr	īntīmūs
(Ultrā, <i>beyond</i> )	ūltērlōr	ūltīmūs
(Præ, <i>before</i> )	prīōr	prīmūs
(Prōpē, <i>near</i> )	prōplōr	prōximūs.

## Comparatives and Superlatives formed without a Positive.

Comp.	Sup.	Comp.	Sup.
Dētērlōr, <i>worse</i>	dētērrīmūs	Oclōr, <i>swifter</i>	ōclissīmūs
Pōtlōr, <i>more desirable</i>	pōtlissīmūs		

*Obs.* Many Adjectives are not compared at all; others have no Comparative; some no Superlative.

§ 30. ADVERBS derived from Adjectives are compared in *us* and *e*: as,

(Dignūs, *worthy*.) dignē, *worthily*, digniūs, dignissimē.  
(Grāvīs, *weighty*) grāvitēr, *weightily*, grāviūs, grāvissimē.

In the same manner, —

Sæpē, *often*, sæpiūs, sæpissimē.

Dīū, *long*, dīutiūs, dīutissimē.

Pēnītūs, *deeply*, pēnitiūs, pēnītissimē.

Māgis, *more*, māximē; dētērlūs, *worse*, dētērrimē;  
pōtlūs, *rather*, pōtlissimum; ōclūs, *more quickly*, ōcis-  
simē; priūs, *sooner*, primum; have no Positive.

Bellē, *prettily*, bellissimē; mēritō, *deservedly*, mēritis-  
simē; nūpēr, *lately*, nūperrimē; have no Compa-  
rative.

Sātīs, *enough*, sātīūs; sēcūs, *differently*, sēcīūs; have  
no Superlative.

## NUMERALIA, NUMERALS.

## § 31.

SIGLA NUMERORUM ARABICA.	SIGLA ROMANA.	CARDINALIA : answering the question Quot ? how many ?	ORDINALIA : answering the question Quotus ? which in numeric order ?	DISTRIBUTIVA : answering the question Quoteni ? how many each ?	ADVERBIA NUMERALIA : answering the question Quoties ? how many times ?
1	I	ūnus	primus	singuli	sēmēl.
2	II	duo	secundus	binī	bi.
3	III	tres	tertius	terni or trinī	tēr.
4	IV	quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quātēr.
5	V	quinque	quintus	quinī	quinquē.
6	VI	sex	sextus	senī	sexlē.
7	VII	septem	septimus	septēni	septlē.
8	VIII	octo	octavus	octoni	octlē.
9	IX	novem	nonus	novēni	novlē.
10	X	decem	decimus	denī	dēclē.
11	XI	undecim	undecimus	undēni	undēclē.
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus	duōdenī	duōdēcī.
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī denī	trēdēcī.
14	XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quātēni denī	quātūrdēcī.
15	XV	quindecim	quintus decimus	quinī denī	quindēcī.
16	XVI	sedecim	sextus decimus	senī denī	sēdēcī.
17	XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēni denī	septīdēcī.
18	XVIII	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duōdēvicēni	duōdēvicē.
19	XIX	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undēvicēni	undēvicē.
20	XX	viginti	vicesimus	vicēni	viclē.
21	XXI	unus et viginti	unus et vicesimus	vicēni singuli	sēmēl et viclē.
28	XXVIII	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duōdētricēni	duōdētricē.
29	XXIX	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undētricēni	undētricē.
30	XXX	triginta	trigesimus	tricēni	triclē.
40	XL	quadraginta	quadragesimus	quādragēni	quādrāgē.

	quinquaginta	sexaginta	septuaginta	octoginta	nonginta	undecentum	centum	centum et unus	ducenti (ae, &)	trecenti	quadringenti	quingenti	sexceni	septingenti	octingenti	nongenti	millē	duo milia	quingue milia	decem milia	quinquaginta milia	centum milia	quingenta milia	decies centum milia
50	L																							
60	LX	sexaginta	septuaginta	octoginta	nonginta	undecentum	centum	centum et unus	ducenti (ae, &)	trecenti	quadringenti	quingenti	sexceni	septingenti	octingenti	nongenti	millē	duo milia	quingue milia	decem milia	quinquaginta milia	centum milia	quingenta milia	decies centum milia
70	LXX																							
80	LXXX																							
90	XC																							
99	IC																							
100	C																							
101	CI																							
200	CC																							
300	CCC																							
400	CCCC																							
500	D or Io																							
600	DC																							
700	DCC																							
800	DCCC																							
900	DCCCC																							
1000	M or cIo																							
2000	MM or IIM																							
5000	VM or Io																							
10,000	XM or ccIo																							
50,000	LM or lcc																							
100,000	cccIo																							
500,000	lccc																							
1,000,000	ccccIo																							

*Obs. 1. MULTIPLICATIVA, answering the question Quotuplèx? how many fold? are: simplèx, duplèx, triplèx, quadruplèx, quintuplèx, &c. So septèmplèx, sexenfold; decèmplèx, tenfold; centuplèx, a hundredfold.*

*Obs. 2. PROPORTIONALIA, answering the question Quotuplùs? how many times more? are: simplùs, duplùs, triplùs, quadruplùs, &c.*

*Obs. 3. See Unùs declined, § 26.*



§ 32. Dŭō, *two*, Trēs, *three*, and Millā, *thousands*, are thus declined : —

<i>Plural.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
M.	F.	N.	M. F.	N.		N.
N. Dŭō	dŭā	dŭō	Trēs	trīā		Millā
G. Dŭōrum	dŭārum	dŭōrum		Trīum		Millium
D. Dŭōbŭs	dŭābŭs	dŭōbŭs		Trībŭs		Millibŭs
A. Dŭōs	dŭās	dŭō	Trēs	trīā		Millā
A. Dŭōbŭs	dŭābŭs	dŭōbŭs		Trībŭs		Millibŭs

Note 1. Ambo, *both*, is declined like Dŭō.

Note 2. The other Cardinal Numbers, from quātŭōr to cēntum, are undeclined. Millē is also an undeclined Adjective.

## DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

§ 33. PRONOMINA, Pronouns, are

- A. PERSONALIA, Personal Pronouns : *ĕgō, I; tū, thou; sŭi, himself, herself, or themselves.*
- B. POSSESSIVA, Possessive Pronouns, which are derived from the Genitives of the Personal Pronouns : *as, mēus, mine; tŭus, thine; sŭus, his, her, or their own; nōstēr, our; vēstēr, your.*
- C. DEMONSTRATIVA, Demonstrative Pronouns : *hic, this; ille, illē, istē, that; ipse, self; idem, the same.*
- D. RELATIVUM, the Relative Pronoun *quī, who or which; INTERROGATIVUM, the Interrogative, quīs, who or what? and their compounds.*

§ 34.

### A. PERSONALIA.

#### 1.—Pronoun of 1st Person.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. Eġō, <i>I</i>	Nōs, <i>we</i>
Gen. Mēi, <i>of me</i>	Nōstrī and nōstrŭm, <i>of us</i>
Dat. Mīhi, <i>to or for me</i>	Nōbīs, <i>to or for us</i>
Acc. Mē, <i>me</i>	Nōs, <i>us</i>
Abl. Mē, <i>by, with, or from me.</i>	Nōbīs, <i>by, with, or from us.</i>

#### 2.—Pronoun of 2d Person.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. Tū, <i>thou</i>	Vōs, <i>ye</i>
Gen. Tŭi, <i>of thee</i>	Vēstrī and vēstrŭm, <i>of you</i>
Dat. Tībi, <i>to or for thee</i>	Vōbīs, <i>to or for you</i>
Acc. Tē, <i>thee</i>	Vōs, <i>you</i>
Abl. Tē, <i>by, with, or from thee.</i>	Vōbīs, <i>by, with, or from you.</i>

## 3. — Pronoun of 3d Person.

*Sing. and Plur.*

Nom. (wanting)

Gen. Sui, of himself, herself, or themselves

Dat. Sibi, to or for himself, herself, or themselves

Acc. Sē or sēsē, himself, herself, or themselves

Abl. Sē or sēsē, by himself, herself, or themselves.

*Obs.* These Pronouns sometimes take the syllable met: as, ēgōmēt, I myself; vōsmēt, ye yourselves; sībīmēt, to himself.

## § 35.

## B. POSSESSIVA.

Mēūs, mēā, mēum; tūūs, tūā, tūum; sūūs, sūā, sūum; like bōntūs, § 24.  
Nōstēr, nōstrā, nōstrum; vēstēr, vēstrā, vēstrum; like nīgēr, § 24.

*Obs.* 1. Mēūs, Voc. Masc. mī.

*Obs.* 2. GENTILIA POSSESSIVA: nōstr-ās, -ātis, of our country; vēstr-ās, -ātis, of your country; cūj-ās, -ātis, of what country?

*Obs.* 3. The POSSESSIVE RELATIVE, cūjūs, cūjā, cūjum, whose?

## § 36

## C. DEMONSTRATIVA.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Sing.</i>		
N. Hic	hāc	hōc	Illē	illā	illūd	Is	ēā	Yd
G. Hujūs				Illius			Ejus	
D. Huic				Illī			Eī	
A. Hunc hanc	hōc		Illum	illam	illūd	Eum	eam	Yd
A. Hōc hāc	hōc		Illō	illā	illō	Eō	ēā	ēō
<i>Plur.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. Hi	hāc	hāc	Illī	illāc	illā	It	ēā	ēā
G. Hōrum	hārum	hōrum	Illōrum	illārum	illōrum	Eōrum	ēārum	ēōrum
D. His				Illis			Is or Eis	
A. Hōs	hās	hāc	Illōs	illās	illā	Eōs	ēās	ēā
A. His				Illis			Is or Eis	

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
Nom. Idem	ēādem	Ydem	Idem	ēādem	ēādem
Gen.	Ejusdem		Eōrūdem	ēārūdem	ēōrūdem
Dat.	Eīdem		Iisdem or Eīdem		
Acc.	Eūdem	ēādem Ydem	Eōsdem	ēāsdem	ēādem
Abl.	Eōdem	ēādem ēōdem	Iisdem or Eīdem		

*Obs.* Istē is declined like illē; ipsē like illē, but with Neut. S. Ipsum.

## § 37.

## D. RELATIVUM.

<i>Sing.</i>				<i>Plur.</i>		
Nom. Qui	quā	quōd		Qui	quā	quā
Gen.	Cujūs			Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cui			Quībūs or quēis		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quōd	Quōs	quās	quā
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	Quībūs or quēis		

The following are mostly declined like Qui.

- (1) Quīs, quā, quīd, and Qui, quā, quōd; G. cūjūs, &c.; *who or what?* (Interrogative.)
- (2) Quīs, quā, quīd, *any one.* (Indefinite.) Qui is also used indefinitely.
- (3) Quidam, quādam, quōddam or quīddam; G. cūjūsdam; D. cuidam; Acc. quēdam, quādam, quōddam, &c.; *a certain one.*
- (4) Quīvis, quāvis, quōdvis or quīdvis; G. cūjūsvīs; *any one.*
- (5) Quīlibēt, quālibēt, quōdlibēt or quīdlibēt; G. cūjūslibēt; *any one.*
- (6) Quicūquē, quācūquē, quōdcūquē; G. cūjūscūquē; *who or whatsoever.*
- (7) Quīnam, quānam, quīdnam, and quīnam, quānam, quōdnam; G. cūjūsnam; *who or what.*
- (8) Quīsqūis, Neut. quīdquīd; Abl. quōquō; *who or whatsoever.*
- (9) Quīsquē, quāquē, quōdquē or quīdquē, *each.*
- (10) Quīsquā, quāquā, quīdquā, *any one.*
- (11) Quīspīam, quāspīam, quīdspīam, *any one.*
- (12) Aliquīs, āliquā, āliquīd, and āliquī, āliquā, āliquōd, *some one.*
- (13) Ecquīs, ēcquā, ēcquīd, and ēcquī, ēcquā, ēcquōd, *any one?*
- (14) Unūsqūisquē, unāquāquē, unūmquōdquē or unūmqūidquē; G. unīuscūjūsquē; *each one.*

## THE VERB.

### § 38. VERBS have TWO VOICES (Vōcēs):

- (1) VOX ACTIVA, the Active (or Doing) Voice: as, āmō, *I love.*
- (2) VOX PASSIVA, the Passive (or Suffering) Voice: as, āmōr, *I am loved.*

Verbs of the Active Voice are either

- (1) TRANSITIVA, acting on an object: as, āmō Dēum, *I love God*: or,
- (2) INTRANSITIVA, vel NEUTRA, expressing a state: as, stō, *I stand.*

*Obs.* Neuter Verbs Active have no Passive Voice, except as Impersonals in the Third Persons Singular.

DEPONENTIA, Deponent Verbs, though conjugated in the Passive Voice chiefly, lay aside (*deponunt*) the Passive, and take an Active signification: some being Transitive; as, hōrtōr, *I exhort*; some Neuter; as, mōrīōr, *I die.*

## § 39. Verbs have Three proper MOODS (Mödi):

- Modus { (1) INDICATIVUS, Indicative, for unconditional action: as, *ămō*, *I love*.  
 (2) CONJUNCTIVUS, Conjunctive, for conditional action: as, *ămem*, *I may love*.  
 (3) IMPERATIVUS, Imperative, for command or entreaty: as, *ămā*, *love thou*.

*Obs.* The Conjunctive Mood in some of its uses is called Subjunctive, in some Potential.

Verbs have also :

- (1) INFINITIVUS, an Infinitive (improper) Mood, expressing the action of the Verb without relations of Person: as, *ămārē*, *to love*, *ămāvissē*, *to have loved*.

- (2) GERUNDIA, Gerunds; Three in number:   
 (a) *ămândī*, *of loving*,  
 (b) *ămândō*, *for or by loving*,  
 (c) *ămândum*, *the loving*;  
 (3) SUPINA, Supines; Two in number:   
 (a) *ămātum*, *to love*,  
 (b) *ămātu*, *to be loved*;

} Which serve as Cases of the Infinitive.

- (4) PARTICIPIA, Participles; Two for each Voice: as,

Active { Present Part., *ămāns*, *loving*,  
 Future Part., *ămātūrūs*, *about to love*.

Passive { Past Part., *ămātūs*, *loved*,  
 Part., in *dus ămândūs*, *meet to be loved*.

*Note.* Participles are so called, because they *take part* of the properties of Verbs, as Tense and Transitive Power, and *part* of the properties of Adjectives, as Case and Gender. Thus they are the Adjectives of the Verb, as the Infinitive (with the Gerunds and Supines) forms its Substantive.

§ 40. Verbs have Six TENSES (Tēmporă); Three for unfinished action, Three for finished action.

*Unfinished Action.*

- (1) **PRÆSENS**, Present; as, *āmō*, *I love*, or *am loving*.
- (2) **PRÆTERITUM IMPERFECTUM**, Preterimperfect: as, *āmābam*, *I was loving*.
- (3) **FUTURUM IMPERFECTUM**, *vēl* **SIMPLEX**, Future Imperfect or Simple: as, *āmābō*, *I shall love*, or *shall be loving*.

*Finished Action.*

- (1) **PRÆTERITUM PERFECTUM**, Preterperfect: as, *āmāvi*, *I loved*, or *have loved*.
- (2) **PRÆTERITUM PLUSQUAMPERFECTUM**, Preterpluperfect: as, *āmāveram*, *I had loved*.
- (3) **FUTURUM PERFECTUM** *vēl* **EXACTUM**, Future Perfect or Exact: as, *āmāverō*, *I shall have loved*.

§ 41. Verbs are conjugated also by Two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural; and by Three PERSONS in each Number:

The First expressing the Person or Persons who speak: as,	} <i>egō āmō</i> , <i>I love</i> , <i>nōs āmāmus</i> , <i>we love</i> .
The Second expressing the Person or Persons to whom one speaks: as, - - -	
The Third expressing that of which one speaks: as, -	
	} <i>tū āmās</i> , <i>thou lovest</i> , <i>vōs āmātis</i> , <i>ye love</i> .
	} <i>illē āmāt</i> , <i>he loves</i> , <i>illī āmānt</i> , <i>they love</i>

~~~~~

### CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

§ 42. There are Four CONJUGATIONS of Latin Verbs.

- I. The First Conjugation is known by *ā* before *re* in the Infinitive: as, *āmārē*.
- II. The Second Conjugation is known by *ē* before *re* in the Infinitive: as, *mōnērē*.
- III. The Third Conjugation is known by *ē* before *re* in the Infinitive: as, *rēgērē*.
- IV. The Fourth Conjugation is known by *i* before *re* in the Infinitive: as, *aūdīrē*.

§ 43. In order to conjugate a Latin Verb, it is necessary to know: (1) The Present Indic. Act. 1st Person; (2) The Preterperfect Indic. Act. 1st Person; (3) The Infinitive Pres. Act.; (4) The Supine in *um*. For from these the other Tenses may be derived.

§ 44. It is useful for the learner, when conjugating a Verb, to mention also the 2d Person Sing. Pres. Indic. Act., the Gerunds, Supines, and Participles. He will therefore conjugate the Verbs as follows : —

## ACTIVE VOICE.

|                      | 1st Conj. | 2d Conj.   | 3d Conj.  | 4th Conj.  |
|----------------------|-----------|------------|-----------|------------|
| Pres. Ind. 1st Pers. | ām-ō      | mōn-ēō     | rēg-ō     | aūd-yō     |
| " 2d Pers.           | ām-ās     | mōn-ēs     | rēg-īs    | aūd-ls     |
| Preterperfect        | ām-āvī    | mōn-ūī     | rēx-ī     | aūd-lvī    |
| Infinitive           | ām-arē    | mōn-ērē    | rēg-ērē   | aūd-lrē    |
| Gerund in <i>di</i>  | ām-āndī   | mōn-ēndī   | rēg-ēndī  | aūd-lēndī  |
| " <i>do</i>          | ām-āndō   | mōn-ēndō   | rēg-ēndō  | aūd-lēndō  |
| " <i>dum</i>         | ām-āndum  | mōn-ēndum  | rēg-ēndum | aūd-lēndum |
| Supine in <i>um</i>  | ām-ātum   | mōn-ītum   | rēct-um   | aūd-ītum   |
| " "                  | ām-ātū    | mōn-ītū    | rēct-ū    | aūd-ītū    |
| Participle Present   | ām-āns    | mōn-ēns    | rēg-ēns   | aūd-lēns   |
| " Future             | ām-ātūrūs | mōn-ītūrūs | rēct-ūrūs | aūd-ītūrūs |

## PASSIVE VOICE.

|                      | 1st Conj.   | 2d Conj.     | 3d Conj.    | 4th Conj.    |
|----------------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| Pres. Ind. 1st Pers. | ām-ōr       | mōn-ēōr      | rēg-ōr      | aūd-lōr      |
| " 2d Pers.           | ām-ārīs     | mōn-ērīs     | rēg-ērīs    | aūd-lrīs     |
| Preterperfect        | ām-ātus sum | mōn-ītūs sum | rēct-ūs sum | aūd-ītūs sum |
| Infinitive           | ām-ārī      | mōn-ērī      | rēg-ī       | aūd-lrī      |
| Participle Perfect   | ām-ātūs     | mōn-ītūs     | rēct-ūs     | aūd-ītūs     |
| " in <i>dus</i>      | ām-āndūs    | mōn-ēndūs    | rēg-ēndūs   | aūd-lēndūs   |

## EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

1st Conj., like ām-ō.

ār-ō, *I plough*  
cērt-ō, *I contend*  
clām-ō, *I cry out*  
cūr-ō, *I regard*  
ōpt-ō, *I wish*  
pūgn-ō, *I fight*  
nōmīn-ō, *I name*  
ædific-ō, *I build.*

2d Conj., like mōn-ēō.

hāb-ēō, *I have*  
dēb-ēō, *I owe*  
tērr-ēō, *I frighten*  
prōhīb-ēō, *I forbid*  
ēxērc-ēō, *I exercise*  
præb-ēō, *I afford*  
ādhib-ēō, *I apply*  
cōhib-ēō, *I restrain.*

3d Conj., like rēg-ō.

tēg-ō, *I cover*  
sūg-ō, *I suck*  
jūng-ō, *I join*  
cīng-ō, *I gird*  
dic-ō, *I say*  
duc-ō, *I lead*  
vēh-ō, *I carry*  
cōqu-ō, *I cook*

4th Conj., like aūd-yō.

fīn-yō, *I end*  
pūn-yō, *I punish*  
mūn-yō, *I fortify*  
nūtr-yō, *I nourish*  
vēst-yō, *I clothe*  
cūstōd-yō, *I guard*  
impēd-yō, *I hinder*  
īrūd-yō, *I instruct.*

## § 45.

Formation of the  
Sum, ěs, fŭi,

|                          | <i>Indicative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Present Tense.</i>    | <i>S.</i> Sum, <i>I am</i><br><i>ěs</i> , <i>thou art</i><br><i>ěst</i> , <i>he is</i><br><i>Pl.</i> sŭmŭs, <i>we are</i><br><i>ěstŭs</i> , <i>ye are</i><br><i>sŭnt</i> , <i>they are.</i>                                                              | <i>sim</i> , <i>I may</i><br><i>ěs</i> , <i>thou mayst</i><br><i>sŭt</i> , <i>he may</i><br><i>simŭs</i> , <i>we may</i><br><i>sŭtŭs</i> , <i>ye may</i><br><i>sŭnt</i> , <i>they may</i>                                                                                                                               |
| <i>Preterimperfect.</i>  | <i>S.</i> ěram, <i>I was</i><br><i>ěrān</i> , <i>thou wast</i><br><i>ěrāt</i> , <i>he was</i><br><i>Pl.</i> ěrāmŭs, <i>we were</i><br><i>ěrātŭs</i> , <i>ye were</i><br><i>ěrānt</i> , <i>they were</i>                                                  | <i>ěssem</i> or <i>förem</i> , <i>I might</i><br><i>ěssēs</i> or <i>föres</i> , <i>thou mightst</i><br><i>ěsset</i> or <i>föret</i> , <i>he might</i><br><i>ěssemŭs</i> or <i>föremŭs</i> , <i>we might</i><br><i>ěssetŭs</i> or <i>företŭs</i> , <i>ye might</i><br><i>ěsŕent</i> or <i>förent</i> , <i>they might</i> |
| <i>Preterperfect.</i>    | <i>S.</i> fŭl, <i>I have</i><br><i>fŭlst</i> , <i>thou hast</i><br><i>fŭlt</i> , <i>he has</i><br><i>Pl.</i> fŭlmŭs, <i>we have</i><br><i>fŭlstŭs</i> , <i>ye have</i><br><i>fŭlŕunt</i> , <i>they have</i>                                              | <i>fŭĕrim</i> , <i>I may</i><br><i>fŭĕris</i> , <i>thou mayst</i><br><i>fŭĕrit</i> , <i>he may</i><br><i>fŭĕrimŭs</i> , <i>we may</i><br><i>fŭĕritŭs</i> , <i>ye may</i><br><i>fŭĕrint</i> , <i>they may</i>                                                                                                            |
| <i>Preterpluperfect.</i> | <i>S.</i> fŭĕram, <i>I had</i><br><i>fŭĕrān</i> , <i>thou hadst</i><br><i>fŭĕrāt</i> , <i>he had</i><br><i>Pl.</i> fŭĕrāmŭs, <i>we had</i><br><i>fŭĕrātŭs</i> , <i>ye had</i><br><i>fŭĕrānt</i> , <i>they had</i>                                        | <i>fŭlŕsem</i> , <i>I should</i><br><i>fŭlŕsēs</i> , <i>thou shouldst</i><br><i>fŭlŕset</i> , <i>he should</i><br><i>fŭlŕsemŭs</i> , <i>we should</i><br><i>fŭlŕsetŭs</i> , <i>ye should</i><br><i>fŭlŕsŕent</i> , <i>they should</i>                                                                                   |
| <i>Future Imperfect.</i> | <i>S.</i> ěrō, <i>I shall</i><br><i>ěris</i> , <i>thou shalt</i><br><i>ěrit</i> , <i>he shall</i><br><i>Pl.</i> ěrimŭs, <i>we shall</i><br><i>ěritŭs</i> , <i>ye shall</i><br><i>ěrunt</i> , <i>they shall</i>                                           | <i>fŭtŭrŭs sim</i> , <i>I may</i><br><i>fŭtŭrŭs śis</i> , <i>thou mayst</i><br><i>fŭtŭrŭs sŭt</i> , <i>he may</i><br><i>fŭtŭrŭ simŭs</i> , <i>we may</i><br><i>fŭtŭrŭ śitŭs</i> , <i>ye may</i><br><i>fŭtŭrŭ sŭnt</i> , <i>they may</i>                                                                                 |
| <i>Future Perfect.</i>   | <i>S.</i> fŭĕrō, <i>I shall have</i><br><i>fŭĕris</i> , <i>thou shalt have</i><br><i>fŭĕrit</i> , <i>he shall have</i><br><i>Pl.</i> fŭĕrimŭs, <i>we shall have</i><br><i>fŭĕritŭs</i> , <i>ye shall have</i><br><i>fŭĕrint</i> , <i>they shall have</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

*Gerunds (wanting).**Supines (wanting).**Obs.* Like Sum are declined its compounds ādsum, dĕsum, ĩsum,

**Auxiliary Verb SUM, I am.****ēssē, fütürūs.**

| <i>Imperative Mood.</i>                                                                                         | <i>Infinitive Mood.</i>                                             | <i>Participles.</i>          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| ēs, ēstō, <i>be thou</i><br>ēstō, <i>let him be</i><br>ēstē, ēstōtē, <i>be ye</i><br>sūntō, <i>let them be.</i> | ēssē, <i>to be.</i>                                                 | (ēns)                        |
|                                                                                                                 |                                                                     |                              |
|                                                                                                                 | fūissē, <i>to have been.</i>                                        |                              |
|                                                                                                                 |                                                                     |                              |
|                                                                                                                 | fütürum ēssē <i>or</i><br>fōrē, <i>to be about</i><br><i>to be.</i> | fütürūs, <i>about to be.</i> |
|                                                                                                                 |                                                                     |                              |

intēsum, ōsum, prāsum, sūsum, sūpēsum. Prōsum takes *d* before *e*; as, Prōsum, prēdēs, prōdēt, prōstūmās, prōdētās, prōsūnt. Absum has Pres. Part. ābsēns; prāsum, prāsēns.



|                   | Indicative Mood.                                                                                                                                                                                             | Conjunctive Mood.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Present Tense.    | <i>S.</i> Ām-ō, <i>I love</i><br>ām-ās, <i>thou lovest</i><br>ām-āt, <i>he loves</i><br><i>Pl.</i> ām-āmūs, <i>we love</i><br>ām-ātīs, <i>ye love</i><br>ām-ānt, <i>they love.</i>                           | ām-em, <i>I may</i><br>ām-ēs, <i>thou mayst</i><br>ām-ēt, <i>he may</i><br>ām-ēmūs, <i>we may</i><br>ām-ētīs, <i>ye may</i><br>ām-ēnt, <i>they may</i>                                              |
| Preterimperfect.  | <i>S.</i> ām-ābam, <i>I was</i><br>ām-ābās, <i>thou wast</i><br>ām-ābāt, <i>he was</i><br><i>Pl.</i> ām-ābāmūs, <i>we were</i><br>ām-ābātīs, <i>ye were</i><br>ām-ābānt, <i>they were</i>                    | ām-ārem, <i>I might</i><br>ām-ārēs, <i>thou mightst</i><br>ām-ārēt, <i>he might</i><br>ām-ārēmūs, <i>we might</i><br>ām-ārētīs, <i>ye might</i><br>ām-ārēnt, <i>they might</i>                      |
| Preterperfect.    | <i>S.</i> ām-āvī, <i>I loved</i><br>ām-āvistī, <i>thou lovedst</i><br>ām-āvīt, <i>he loved</i><br><i>Pl.</i> ām-āvimūs, <i>we loved</i><br>ām-āvistīs, <i>ye loved</i><br>ām-āvērunt, <i>they loved.</i>     | ām-āvērim, <i>I may</i><br>ām-āvēris, <i>thou mayst</i><br>ām-āvērīt, <i>he may</i><br>ām-āvērimūs, <i>we may</i><br>ām-āvēritīs, <i>ye may</i><br>ām-āvērīnt, <i>they may</i>                      |
| Preterpluperfect. | <i>S.</i> ām-āvēram, <i>I had</i><br>ām-āvērās, <i>thou hadst</i><br>ām-āvērāt, <i>he had</i><br><i>Pl.</i> ām-āvērāmūs, <i>we had</i><br>ām-āvērātīs, <i>ye had</i><br>ām-āvērānt, <i>they had</i>          | ām-āvissem, <i>I would</i><br>ām-āvissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i><br>ām-āvissēt, <i>he would</i><br>ām-āvissēmūs, <i>we would</i><br>ām-āvissētīs, <i>ye would</i><br>ām-āvissēnt, <i>they would</i>    |
| Future Imperfect. | <i>S.</i> ām-ābō, <i>I shall</i><br>ām-ābīs, <i>thou shalt</i><br>ām-ābīt, <i>he shall</i><br><i>Pl.</i> ām-ābīmūs, <i>we shall</i><br>ām-ābītīs, <i>ye shall</i><br>ām-ābūnt, <i>they shall</i>             | ām-ātūrūs sim, <i>I may</i><br>ām-ātūrūs sis, <i>thou mayst</i><br>ām-ātūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i><br>ām-ātūrī simūs, <i>we may</i><br>ām-ātūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i><br>ām-ātūrī sint, <i>they may</i> |
| Future Perfect.   | <i>S.</i> ām-āvērō, <i>I shall</i><br>ām-āvēris, <i>thou shalt</i><br>ām-āvērīt, <i>he shall</i><br><i>Pl.</i> ām-āvērimūs, <i>we shall</i><br>ām-āvēritīs, <i>ye shall</i><br>ām-āvērīnt, <i>they shall</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Gerunds. {        |                                                                                                                                                                                                              | ām-āndī, <i>of loving</i><br>ām-āndō, <i>for or by loving</i><br>ām-āndum, <i>the loving.</i>                                                                                                       |

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

| <i>Imperative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                          | <i>Infinitive Mood.</i>                                        | <i>Participles.</i>                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <p>ām-ā, ām-ātō, <i>love thou</i><br/> ām-ātō, <i>let him love</i><br/> ām-ātē, ām-ātōtē, <i>love ye</i><br/> ām-antō, <i>let them love.</i></p> | <p>ām-ārē, <i>to love, or</i><br/> <i>be loving.</i></p>       | <p>ām-āns, <i>loving.</i></p>                       |
|                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                |                                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                  | <p>ām-āvīssē, <i>to have</i><br/> <i>loved.</i></p>            |                                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                |                                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                  | <p>ām-ātūrum ēssē, <i>to</i><br/> <i>be about to love.</i></p> | <p>ām-ātūrūs, <i>about</i><br/> <i>to love.</i></p> |
|                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                |                                                     |
| <p><i>Supines.</i> { ām-ātum, <i>to love.</i><br/> ām-ātū, <i>to be loved.</i></p>                                                               |                                                                |                                                     |

|                   | Indicative Mood.                                                                                                                                                                      | Conjunctive Mood.                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Present Tense.    | <i>S. Am-ör, I am<br/>äm-ärıs, thou art<br/>äm-ätür, he is</i><br><i>Pl. äm-ämür, we are<br/>äm-ämlıl, ye are<br/>äm-äntür, they are</i>                                              | <i>äm-ër, I may<br/>äm-ërıs, thou mayst<br/>äm-ëtür, he may<br/>äm-ëmür, we may<br/>äm-ëmlıl, ye may<br/>äm-ëntür, they may</i>                                                   |
| Preterimperfect.  | <i>S. äm-äbär, I was<br/>äm-äbärıs, thou wast<br/>äm-äbätür, he was</i><br><i>Pl. äm-äbämür, we were<br/>äm-äbämlıl, ye were<br/>äm-äbäntür, they were</i>                            | <i>äm-ärër, I might<br/>äm-ärërıs, thou mightst<br/>äm-ärëtür, he might<br/>äm-ärëmür, we might<br/>äm-ärëmlıl, ye might<br/>äm-ärëntür, they might</i>                           |
| Preterperfect.    | <i>S. äm-ätüs sum, I was<br/>äm-ätüs es, thou wast<br/>äm-ätüs est, he was</i><br><i>Pl. äm-ätı sümüs, we were<br/>äm-ätı estıs, ye were<br/>äm-ätı sünt, they were</i>               | <i>äm-ätüs sim, I may<br/>äm-ätüs esıs, thou mayst<br/>äm-ätüs sıt, he may<br/>äm-ätı sımüs, we may<br/>äm-ätı sıtıs, ye may<br/>äm-ätı sınt, they may</i>                        |
| Preterpluperfect. | <i>S. äm-ätüs eram, I had<br/>äm-ätüs eräs, thou hadst<br/>äm-ätüs erät, he had</i><br><i>Pl. äm-ätı eramüs, we had<br/>äm-ätı erätıs, ye had<br/>äm-ätı eränt, they had</i>          | <i>äm-ätüs eşsem, I would<br/>äm-ätüs eşses, thou wouldst<br/>äm-ätüs eşset, he would<br/>äm-ätı eşsemüs, we would<br/>äm-ätı eşsetıs, ye would<br/>äm-ätı eşsent, they would</i> |
| Future Imperfect. | <i>S. äm-äbör, I shall<br/>äm-äbërıs, thou shalt<br/>äm-äbütür, he shall</i><br><i>Pl. äm-äbımür, we shall<br/>äm-äbımlıl, ye shall<br/>äm-äbüntür, they shall</i>                    |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Future Perfect.   | <i>S. äm-ätüs erö, I shall<br/>äm-ätüs erıs, thou shalt<br/>äm-ätüs erıt, he shall</i><br><i>Pl. äm-ätı erımüs, we shall<br/>äm-ätı erıtıs, ye shall<br/>äm-ätı erünt, they shall</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                   |

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

| <i>Imperative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                         | <i>Infinitive Mood.</i>                      | <i>Participles.</i>                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| ăm-ărě, ăm-ătōr, <i>be thou</i><br>ăm-ătōr, <i>let him be</i><br>ăm-ămīnī, ăm-ămīnōr, <i>be</i> <sup>[ye]</sup><br>ăm-ăntōr, <i>let them be</i> | ăm-ārī, <i>to be loved.</i>                  |                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                 |                                              |                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                 | ăm-ătum ăsă, <i>to have been loved.</i>      | ăm-ătūs, <i>loved.</i>             |
|                                                                                                                                                 |                                              |                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                 | ăm-ătum lrī, <i>to be about to be loved.</i> |                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                 |                                              |                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                 |                                              | ăm-ăndūs, <i>meet to be loved.</i> |

|                                                                                                                         | <i>Indicative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                              | <i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Tense.</b>                                                                                                   | <i>S.</i> Mön-ěō, <i>I advise</i><br>mön-ēs, <i>thou advisest</i><br>mön-ēt, <i>he advises</i><br><i>Pl.</i> mön-ēmūs, <i>we advise</i><br>mön-ētīs, <i>ye advise</i><br>mön-ēnt, <i>they advise.</i>                | mön-ěam, <i>I may</i><br>mön-ěās, <i>thou mayest</i><br>mön-ěāt, <i>he may</i><br>mön-ěāmūs, <i>we may</i><br>mön-ěātīs, <i>ye may</i><br>mön-ěānt, <i>they may</i>                                        |
| <b>Præterimperfect.</b>                                                                                                 | <i>S.</i> mön-ēbam, <i>I was</i><br>mön-ēbās, <i>thou wast</i><br>mön-ēbāt, <i>he was</i><br><i>Pl.</i> mön-ēbāmūs, <i>we were</i><br>mön-ēbātīs, <i>ye were</i><br>mön-ēbānt, <i>they were</i>                      | mön-ērem, <i>I might</i><br>mön-ērēs, <i>thou mightest</i><br>mön-ērēt, <i>he might</i><br>mön-ērēmūs, <i>we might</i><br>mön-ērētīs, <i>ye might</i><br>mön-ērēnt, <i>they might</i>                      |
| <b>Præterperfect.</b>                                                                                                   | <i>S.</i> mön-ūī, <i>I advised</i><br>mön-ūīstī, <i>thou advisedst</i><br>mön-ūīt, <i>he advised</i><br><i>Pl.</i> mön-ūīmūs, <i>we advised</i><br>mön-ūīstīs, <i>ye advised</i><br>mön-ūērūnt, <i>they advised.</i> | mön-ūērim, <i>I may</i><br>mön-ūēris, <i>thou mayest</i><br>mön-ūērīt, <i>he may</i><br>mön-ūērimūs, <i>we may</i><br>mön-ūērītīs, <i>ye may</i><br>mön-ūērīnt, <i>they may</i>                            |
| <b>Præterpluperfect.</b>                                                                                                | <i>S.</i> mön-ūēram, <i>I had</i><br>mön-ūērās, <i>thou hadst</i><br>mön-ūērāt, <i>he had</i><br><i>Pl.</i> mön-ūērāmūs, <i>we had</i><br>mön-ūērātīs, <i>ye had</i><br>mön-ūērānt, <i>they had</i>                  | mön-ūīlsem, <i>I would</i><br>mön-ūīssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i><br>mön-ūīssēt, <i>he would</i><br>mön-ūīssēmūs, <i>we would</i><br>mön-ūīssētīs, <i>ye would</i><br>mön-ūīssēnt, <i>they would</i>           |
| <b>Future Imperfect.</b>                                                                                                | <i>S.</i> mön-ēbō, <i>I shall</i><br>mön-ēbīs, <i>thou shalt</i><br>mön-ēbīt, <i>he shall</i><br><i>Pl.</i> mön-ēbīmūs, <i>we shall</i><br>mön-ēbītīs, <i>ye shall</i><br>mön-ēbūnt, <i>they shall</i>               | mön-ītūrūs sim, <i>I may</i><br>mön-ītūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayest</i><br>mön-ītūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i><br>mön-ītūrī simūs, <i>we may</i><br>mön-ītūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i><br>mön-ītūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i> |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>                                                                                                  | <i>S.</i> mön-ūērō, <i>I shall</i><br>mön-ūērīs, <i>thou shalt</i><br>mön-ūērīt, <i>he shall</i><br><i>Pl.</i> mön-ūērīmūs, <i>we shall</i><br>mön-ūērītīs, <i>ye shall</i><br>mön-ūērīnt, <i>they shall</i>         |                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <i>Gerunds</i> { mön-ēndī, <i>of advising</i><br>mön-ēndō, <i>for or by advising</i><br>mön-ēndum, <i>the advising.</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

| <i>Imperative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                         | <i>Infinitive Mood.</i>                                             | <i>Participles.</i>                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>mǝn-ē, mǝn-ētō, <i>advise thou</i><br/> mǝn-ētō, <i>let him advise</i></p> <p>mǝn-ētē, mǝn-ētōtē, <i>advise ye</i><br/> mǝn-ētō, <i>let them advise.</i></p> | <p>mǝn-ērē, <i>to advise,</i><br/> <i>or be advising.</i></p>       | <p>mǝn-ēns, <i>advising</i></p>                       |
|                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                     |                                                       |
|                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>mǝn-ūlssē, <i>to have</i><br/> <i>advised.</i></p>               |                                                       |
|                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                     |                                                       |
|                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>mǝn-ūtūrum ēssē, <i>to be about to ad-</i><br/> <i>vise.</i></p> | <p>mǝn-ūtūrū, <i>about</i><br/> <i>to advise.</i></p> |
|                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                     |                                                       |
| <p><i>Supines.</i> { mǝn-ūtum, <i>to advise</i><br/> mǝn-ūtū, <i>to be advised.</i></p>                                                                         |                                                                     |                                                       |

|                   | <i>Indicative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                             | <i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Present Tense.    | <i>S. Mön-ěör, I am</i><br><i>mön-ěrĭs, thou art</i><br><i>mön-ětŭr, he is</i><br><i>Pl. mön-ēmŭr, we are</i><br><i>mön-ēmĭnĭ, ye are</i><br><i>mön-ěntŭr, they are</i>                                             | <i>mön-ěär, I may</i><br><i>mön-ěärĭs, thou mayest</i><br><i>mön-ěätŭr, he may</i><br><i>mön-ěāmŭr, we may</i><br><i>mön-ěāmĭnĭ, ye may</i><br><i>mön-ěäntŭr, they may</i>                                            |
| Preterimperfect.  | <i>S. mön-ěbär, I was</i><br><i>mön-ěbärĭs, thou wast</i><br><i>mön-ěbätŭr, he was</i><br><i>Pl. mön-ěbāmŭr, we were</i><br><i>mön-ěbāmĭnĭ, ye were</i><br><i>mön-ěbäntŭr, they were</i>                            | <i>mön-ěrēr, I might</i><br><i>mön-ěrērĭs, thou mightst</i><br><i>mön-ěrētŭr, he might</i><br><i>mön-ěrēmŭr, we might</i><br><i>mön-ěrēmĭnĭ, ye might</i><br><i>mön-ěrëntŭr, they might</i>                           |
| Preterperfect.    | <i>S. mön-ĭtŭs sum, I was</i><br><i>mön-ĭtŭs ěs, thou wast</i><br><i>mön-ĭtŭs ěst, he was</i><br><i>Pl. mön-ĭtĭ sŭmŭs, we were</i><br><i>mön-ĭtĭ ěstĭs, ye were</i><br><i>mön-ĭtĭ sŭnt, they were</i>               | <i>mön-ĭtŭs sim, I may</i><br><i>mön-ĭtŭs sĭs, thou mayst</i><br><i>mön-ĭtŭs sĭt, he may</i><br><i>mön-ĭtĭ sĭmŭs, we may</i><br><i>mön-ĭtĭ sĭtĭs, ye may</i><br><i>mön-ĭtĭ sint, they may</i>                         |
| Preterpluperfect. | <i>S. mön-ĭtŭs ěram, I had</i><br><i>mön-ĭtŭs ěräs, thou hadst</i><br><i>mön-ĭtŭs ěrät, he had</i><br><i>Pl. mön-ĭtĭ ěrämŭs, we had</i><br><i>mön-ĭtĭ ěrätĭs, ye had</i><br><i>mön-ĭtĭ ěränt, they had</i>          | <i>mön-ĭtŭs ěssem, I would</i><br><i>mön-ĭtŭs ěssēs, thou wouldst</i><br><i>mön-ĭtŭs ěssēt, he would</i><br><i>mön-ĭtĭ ěssēmŭs, we would</i><br><i>mön-ĭtĭ ěssētĭs, ye would</i><br><i>mön-ĭtĭ ěssēnt, they would</i> |
| Future Imperfect. | <i>S. mön-ěbör, I shall</i><br><i>mön-ěbörĭs, thou shalt</i><br><i>mön-ěbĭtŭr, he shall</i><br><i>Pl. mön-ěbĭmŭr, we shall</i><br><i>mön-ěbĭmĭnĭ, ye shall</i><br><i>mön-ěbŭntŭr, they shall</i>                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Future Perfect.   | <i>S. mön-ĭtŭs ěrō, I shall</i><br><i>mön-ĭtŭs ěrĭs, thou shalt</i><br><i>mön-ĭtŭs ěrĭt, he shall</i><br><i>Pl. mön-ĭtĭ ěrĭmŭs, we shall</i><br><i>mön-ĭtĭ ěrĭtĭs, ye shall</i><br><i>mön-ĭtĭ ěrŭnt, they shall</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

| <i>Imperative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                   | <i>Infinitive Mood.</i>                         | <i>Participles.</i>                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| mŏn-ĕřĕ, mŏn-ĕtŏr, <i>be thou</i><br>mŏn-ĕtŏr, <i>let him be</i><br>mŏn-ĕmĭnĭ, mŏn-ĕmĭnŏr, <i>[be ye</i><br>mŏn-ĕntŏr, <i>let them be</i> | mŏn-ĕrĭ, <i>to be advised.</i>                  |                                       |
|                                                                                                                                           |                                                 |                                       |
|                                                                                                                                           | mŏn-ĭtum ĕssĕ, <i>to have been advised.</i>     | mŏn-ĭtŭs, <i>advised.</i>             |
|                                                                                                                                           |                                                 |                                       |
|                                                                                                                                           | mŏn-ĭtum ĭrĭ, <i>to be about to be advised.</i> |                                       |
|                                                                                                                                           |                                                 |                                       |
|                                                                                                                                           |                                                 | mŏn-ĕndŭs, <i>meet to be advised.</i> |



|                          | <i>Indicative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                | <i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Tense.</b>    | <i>S.</i> Rēg-ō, <i>I rule,</i><br>rēg-ls, <i>thou rulest</i><br>rēg-īt, <i>he rules</i><br><i>Pl.</i> rēg-īmūs, <i>we rule</i><br>rēg-ltīs, <i>ye rule</i><br>rēg-ūnt, <i>they rule</i>               | rēg-am, <i>I may</i><br>rēg-ās, <i>thou mayst</i><br>rēg-āt, <i>he may</i><br>rēg-āmūs, <i>we may</i><br>rēg-ātīs, <i>ye may</i><br>rēg-ānt, <i>they may</i>                                        |
| <b>Preterimperfect.</b>  | <i>S.</i> rēg-ēbam, <i>I was</i><br>rēg-ēbās, <i>thou wast</i><br>rēg-ēbāt, <i>he was</i><br><i>Pl.</i> rēg-ēbāmūs, <i>we were</i><br>rēg-ēbātīs, <i>ye were</i><br>rēg-ēbānt, <i>they were</i>        | rēg-ērem, <i>I might</i><br>rēg-ērēs, <i>thou mightst</i><br>rēg-ērēt, <i>he might</i><br>rēg-ērēmūs, <i>we might</i><br>rēg-ērētīs, <i>ye might</i><br>rēg-ērēnt, <i>they might</i>                |
| <b>Preterperfect.</b>    | <i>S.</i> rēx-l, <i>I ruled</i><br>rēx-lstī, <i>thou ruledst</i><br>rēx-īt, <i>he ruled</i><br><i>Pl.</i> rēx-īmūs, <i>we ruled</i><br>rēx-lstīs, <i>ye ruled</i><br>rēx-ērūnt, <i>they ruled.</i>     | rēx-ērim, <i>I may</i><br>rēx-ēris, <i>thou mayst</i><br>rēx-ērīt, <i>he may</i><br>rēx-ērimūs, <i>we may</i><br>rēx-ērītīs, <i>ye may</i><br>rēx-ērīnt, <i>they may</i>                            |
| <b>Preterpluperfect.</b> | <i>S.</i> rēx-ēram, <i>I had</i><br>rēx-ērās, <i>thou hadst</i><br>rēx-ērāt, <i>he had</i><br><i>Pl.</i> rēx-ērāmūs, <i>we had</i><br>rēx-ērātīs, <i>ye had</i><br>rēx-ērānt, <i>they had</i>          | rēx-lssem, <i>I would</i><br>rēx-lssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i><br>rēx-lssēt, <i>he would</i><br>rēx-lssēmūs, <i>we would</i><br>rēx-lssētīs, <i>ye would</i><br>rēx-lssēnt, <i>they would</i>          |
| <b>Future Imperfect.</b> | <i>S.</i> rēg-am, <i>I shall</i><br>rēg-ēs, <i>thou shalt</i><br>rēg-ēt, <i>he shall</i><br><i>Pl.</i> rēg-ēmūs, <i>we shall</i><br>rēg-ētīs, <i>ye shall</i><br>rēg-ēnt, <i>they shall</i>            | rēct-ūrūs sim, <i>I may</i><br>rēct-ūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i><br>rēct-ūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i><br>rēct-ūrī sīmūs, <i>we may</i><br>rēct-ūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i><br>rēct-ūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i> |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>   | <i>S.</i> rēx-ērō, <i>I shall</i><br>rēx-ēris, <i>thou shalt</i><br>rēx-ērīt, <i>he shall</i><br><i>Pl.</i> rēx-ērimūs, <i>we shall</i><br>rēx-ērītīs, <i>ye shall</i><br>rēx-ērīnt, <i>they shall</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Gerunds.</b>          |                                                                                                                                                                                                        | rēg-ēndī, <i>of ruling</i><br>rēg-ēndō, <i>for or by ruling</i><br>rēg-ēndum, <i>the ruling.</i>                                                                                                    |

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

| <i>Imperative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                             | <i>Infinitive Mood.</i>                                        | <i>Participles.</i>                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <p>řĕg-ě, řĕg-ýtō, <i>rule thou</i><br/> řĕg-ýtō, <i>let him rule</i><br/> řĕg-ýtě, řĕgýtōtě, <i>rule ye</i><br/> řĕg-ūtō, <i>let them rule</i></p> | <p>řĕg-ěřě, <i>to rule, or</i><br/> <i>be ruling.</i></p>      | <p>řĕg-ěns, <i>ruling.</i></p>                      |
|                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                |                                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                     | <p>řĕx-īssě, <i>to have</i><br/> <i>ruled.</i></p>             |                                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                |                                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                     | <p>řĕct-ūrum ěssě, <i>to</i><br/> <i>be about to rule.</i></p> | <p>řĕct-ūrŭs, <i>about to</i><br/> <i>rule.</i></p> |
|                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                |                                                     |
| <p><i>Supines.</i> { řĕct-um, <i>to rule.</i><br/> řĕct-ŭ, <i>to be ruled.</i></p>                                                                  |                                                                |                                                     |

|                          | <i>Indicative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                               | <i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Tense.</b>    | <i>S. Rēg-or, I am<br/>rēg-ērīs, thou art<br/>rēg-ītūr, he is</i><br><i>Pl. rēg-īmūr, we are<br/>rēg-īmīnī, ye are<br/>rēg-ūntūr, they are</i>                                        | <i>rēg-ār, I may<br/>rēg-ārīs, thou mayst<br/>rēg-ātūr, he may<br/>rēg-āmūr, we may<br/>rēg-āmīnī, ye may<br/>rēg-āntūr, they may</i>                                             |
| <b>Preterimperfect.</b>  | <i>S. rēg-ēbār, I was<br/>rēg-ēbārīs, thou wast<br/>rēg-ēbātūr, he was</i><br><i>Pl. rēg-ēbāmūr, we were<br/>rēg-ēbāmīnī, ye were<br/>rēg-ēbāntūr, they were</i>                      | <i>rēg-ērēr, I might<br/>rēg-ērērīs, thou mightst<br/>rēg-ērētūr, he might<br/>rēg-ērēmūr, we might<br/>rēg-ērēmīnī, ye might<br/>rēg-ērēntūr, they might</i>                     |
| <b>Preterperfect.</b>    | <i>S. rēct-ūs sum, I was<br/>rēct-ūs ēs, thou wast<br/>rēct-ūs ēst, he was</i><br><i>Pl. rēct-ī sūmūs, we were<br/>rēct-ī ēstīs, ye were<br/>rēct-ī sūnt, they were</i>               | <i>rēct-ūs sim, I may<br/>rēct-ūs sis, thou mayst<br/>rēct-ūs sīt, he may<br/>rēct-ī sīmūs, we may<br/>rēct-ī sītīs, ye may<br/>rēct-ī sīnt, they may</i>                         |
| <b>Preterpluperfect.</b> | <i>S. rēct-ūs ēram, I had<br/>rēct-ūs ērās, thou hadst<br/>rēct-ūs ērāt, he had</i><br><i>Pl. rēct-ī ērāmūs, we had<br/>rēct-ī ērātīs, ye had<br/>rēct-ī ērānt, they had</i>          | <i>rēct-ūs ēssem, I would<br/>rēct-ūs ēssēs, thou wouldst<br/>rēct-ūs ēssēt, he would<br/>rēct-ī ēssēmūs, we would<br/>rēct-ī ēssētīs, ye would<br/>rēct-ī ēssēnt, they would</i> |
| <b>Future Imperfect.</b> | <i>S. rēg-ār, I shall<br/>rēg-ērīs, thou shalt<br/>rēg-ētūr, he shall</i><br><i>Pl. rēg-ēmūr, we shall<br/>rēg-ēmīnī, ye shall<br/>rēg-ēntūr, they shall</i>                          |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>   | <i>S. rēct-ūs ērō, I shall<br/>rēct-ūs ērīs, thou shalt<br/>rēct-ūs ērīt, he shall</i><br><i>Pl. rēct-ī ērīmūs, we shall<br/>rēct-ī ērītīs, ye shall<br/>rēct-ī ērūnt, they shall</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                   |

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

| <i>Imperative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                   | <i>Infinitive Mood.</i>                      | <i>Participles.</i>                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| řěg-ěřě, řěg-ýtör, <i>be thou</i><br>řěg-ýtör, <i>let him be</i><br>řěg-ýmŋnĭ, řěg-ýmŋnör, <i>be</i> [ye<br>řěg-üntör, <i>let them be</i> } <i>ruled.</i> | řěg-ĭ, <i>to be ruled.</i>                   |                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                           |                                              |                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                           | řěct-um ěssě, <i>to have been ruled.</i>     | řěct-ŭs, <i>ruled.</i>              |
|                                                                                                                                                           |                                              |                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                           | řěc-tum ĭrĭ, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i> |                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                           |                                              |                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                           |                                              | řěg-ěndŭs, <i>meet to be ruled.</i> |

|                                                                                                                          | <i>Indicative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                            | <i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Tense.</b>                                                                                                    | <i>S.</i> Aūd-yō, <i>I hear</i><br>aūd-is, <i>thou hearest</i><br>aūd-it, <i>he hears</i><br><i>Pl.</i> aūd-imūs, <i>we hear</i><br>aūd-itīs, <i>ye hear</i><br>aūd-yūnt, <i>they hear.</i>                        | aūd-yam, <i>I may</i><br>aūd-yās, <i>thou mayst</i><br>aūd-yāt, <i>he may</i><br>aūd-yāmūs, <i>we may</i><br>aūd-yātīs, <i>ye may</i><br>aūd-yānt, <i>they may</i>                                        |
| <b>Preterimperfect.</b>                                                                                                  | <i>S.</i> aūd-yēbam, <i>I was</i><br>aūd-yēbās, <i>thou wast</i><br>aūd-yēbāt, <i>he was</i><br><i>Pl.</i> aūd-yēbāmūs, <i>we were</i><br>aūd-yēbātīs, <i>ye were</i><br>aūd-yēbānt, <i>they were</i>              | aūd-irem, <i>I might</i><br>aūd-irēs, <i>thou mightst</i><br>aūd-irēt, <i>he might</i><br>aūd-irēmūs, <i>we might</i><br>aūd-irētīs, <i>ye might</i><br>aūd-irēnt, <i>they might</i>                      |
| <b>Preterperfect.</b>                                                                                                    | <i>S.</i> aūd-ivī, <i>I heard</i><br>aūd-ivistī, <i>thou heardst</i><br>aūd-ivīt, <i>he heard</i><br><i>Pl.</i> aūd-ivimūs, <i>we heard</i><br>aūd-ivistīs, <i>ye heard</i><br>aūd-ivērūnt, <i>they heard.</i>     | aūd-ivērim, <i>I may</i><br>aūd-ivēris, <i>thou mayst</i><br>aūd-ivērīt, <i>he may</i><br>aūd-ivērimūs, <i>we may</i><br>aūd-ivēritīs, <i>ye may</i><br>aūd-ivērīnt, <i>they may</i>                      |
| <b>Preterpluperfect.</b>                                                                                                 | <i>S.</i> aūd-ivēram, <i>I had</i><br>aūd-ivērās, <i>thou hadst</i><br>aūd-ivērāt, <i>he had</i><br><i>Pl.</i> aūd-ivērāmūs, <i>we had</i><br>aūd-ivērātīs, <i>ye had</i><br>aūd-ivērānt, <i>they had</i>          | aūd-ivissem, <i>I would</i><br>aūd-ivissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i><br>aūd-ivissēt, <i>he would</i><br>aūd-ivissēmūs, <i>we would</i><br>aūd-ivissētīs, <i>ye would</i><br>aūd-ivissēnt, <i>they would</i>    |
| <b>Future Imperfect.</b>                                                                                                 | <i>S.</i> aūd-iam, <i>I shall</i><br>aūd-iēs, <i>thou shalt</i><br>aūd-yēt, <i>he shall</i><br><i>Pl.</i> aūd-yēmūs, <i>we shall</i><br>aūd-yētīs, <i>ye shall</i><br>aūd-yēnt, <i>they shall</i>                  | aūd-itūrūs sim, <i>I may</i><br>aūd-itūrūs sis, <i>thou mayst</i><br>aūd-itūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i><br>aūd-itūrī simūs, <i>we may</i><br>aūd-itūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i><br>aūd-itūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i> |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>                                                                                                   | <i>S.</i> aūd-ivērō, <i>I shall</i><br>aūd-ivēris, <i>thou shalt</i><br>aūd-ivērīt, <i>he shall</i><br><i>Pl.</i> aūd-ivērimūs, <i>we shall</i><br>aūd-ivēritīs, <i>ye shall</i><br>aūd-ivērīnt, <i>they shall</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <i>Gerunds.</i> { aūd-yēndī, <i>of hearing</i><br>aūd-yēndō, <i>for or by hearing</i><br>aūd-yēndum, <i>the hearing.</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

| <i>Imperative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                 | <i>Infinitive Mood.</i>                                         | <i>Participles.</i>                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>aūd-l, aūd-ītō, <i>hear thou</i><br/> aūd-ītō, <i>let him hear</i><br/> aūd-ītē, aūd-ītōtē, <i>hear ye</i><br/> aūd-lūntō, <i>let them hear.</i></p> | <p>aūd-lrē, <i>to hear, or</i><br/> <i>be hearing.</i></p>      | <p>aūd-lēns, <i>hearing.</i></p>                     |
|                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                 |                                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                         | <p>aūd-lvīssē, <i>to have</i><br/> <i>heard.</i></p>            |                                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                 |                                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                         | <p>aūd-ltūrum ēssē, <i>to</i><br/> <i>be about to hear.</i></p> | <p>aūd-ltūrīs, <i>about</i><br/> <i>to hear.</i></p> |
|                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                 |                                                      |
| <p><i>Supines.</i> { aūd-ltum, <i>to hear</i><br/> aūd-ltū, <i>to be heard.</i></p>                                                                     |                                                                 |                                                      |

|                          | <i>Indicative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                             | <i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Tense.</b>    | <i>S. Aūd-Yōr, I am</i><br><i>aūd-īrīs, thou art</i><br><i>aūd-ītūr, he is</i><br><i>Pl. aūd-īmūr, we are</i><br><i>aūd-īmīnī, ye are</i><br><i>aūd-īuntūr, they are</i>                                            | <i>aūd-īār, I may</i><br><i>aūd-īārīs, thou mayst</i><br><i>aūd-īātūr, he may</i><br><i>aūd-īāmūr, we may</i><br><i>aūd-īāmīnī, ye may</i><br><i>aūd-īāntūr, they may</i>                                             |
| <b>Preterimperfect.</b>  | <i>S. aūd-īēbār, I was</i><br><i>aūd-īēbārīs, thou wast</i><br><i>aūd-īēbātūr, he was</i><br><i>Pl. aūd-īēbāmūr, we were</i><br><i>aūd-īēbāmīnī, ye were</i><br><i>aūd-īēbāntūr, they were</i>                      | <i>aūd-īrēr, I might</i><br><i>aūd-īrērīs, thou mightst</i><br><i>aūd-īrētūr, he might</i><br><i>aūd-īrēmūr, we might</i><br><i>aūd-īrēmīnī, ye might</i><br><i>aūd-īrēntūr, they might</i>                           |
| <b>Preterperfect.</b>    | <i>S. aūd-ītūs sum, I was</i><br><i>aūd-ītūs ēs, thou wast</i><br><i>aūd-ītūs ēst, he was</i><br><i>Pl. aūd-ītī sūmūs, we were</i><br><i>aūd-ītī ēstīs, ye were</i><br><i>aūd-ītī sūnt, they were</i>               | <i>aūd-ītūs sim, I may</i><br><i>aūd-ītūs sīs, thou mayst</i><br><i>aūd-ītūs sīt, he may</i><br><i>aūd-ītī sīmūs, we may</i><br><i>aūd-ītī sītīs, ye may</i><br><i>aūd-ītī sīnt, they may</i>                         |
| <b>Preterpluperfect.</b> | <i>S. aūd-ītūs ēram, I had</i><br><i>aūd-ītūs ērās, thou hadst</i><br><i>aūd-ītūs ērāt, he had</i><br><i>Pl. aūd-ītī ērāmūs, we had</i><br><i>aūd-ītī ērātīs, ye had</i><br><i>aūd-ītī ērānt, they had</i>          | <i>aūd-ītūs ēssem, I would</i><br><i>aūd-ītūs ēssēs, thou wouldst</i><br><i>aūd-ītūs ēssēt, he would</i><br><i>aūd-ītī ēssēmūs, we would</i><br><i>aūd-ītī ēssētīs, ye would</i><br><i>aūd-ītī ēssēnt, they would</i> |
| <b>Future Imperfect.</b> | <i>S. aūd-īār, I shall</i><br><i>aūd-īērīs, thou shalt</i><br><i>aūd-īētūr, he shall</i><br><i>Pl. aūd-īēmūr, we shall</i><br><i>aūd-īēmīnī, ye shall</i><br><i>aūd-īēntūr, they shall</i>                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>   | <i>S. aūd-ītūs ērō, I shall</i><br><i>aūd-ītūs ērīs, thou shalt</i><br><i>aūd-ītūs ērīt, he shall</i><br><i>Pl. aūd-ītī ērīmūs, we shall</i><br><i>aūd-ītī ērītīs, ye shall</i><br><i>aūd-ītī ērunt, they shall</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

| <i>Imperative Mood.</i>                                                                                                                                    | <i>Infinitive Mood.</i>                       | <i>Participles.</i>                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| aūd-īrě, aūd-ītōr, <i>be thou</i><br>aūd-ītōr, <i>let him be</i><br>aūd-īmīnī, aūd-īmīnōr, <i>be</i> [ye<br>aūd-īuntōr, <i>let them be</i> } <i>heard.</i> | aūd-īrī, <i>to be heard.</i>                  |                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                            |                                               |                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                            | aūd-ītum ēssě, <i>to have been heard.</i>     | aūd-ītūs, <i>heard.</i>              |
|                                                                                                                                                            |                                               |                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                            | aūd-ītum īrī, <i>to be about to be heard.</i> |                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                            |                                               |                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                            |                                               | aūd-īēndūs, <i>meet to be heard.</i> |



## ON THE SIGNS OF THE TENSES.

§ 54. Most of the Tenses have more than one Sign, or may be put into English in more than one way, though in the foregoing tables only one is given.

## SIGNS OF TENSES IN THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

- Pres. Amō, *I — love, or am loving.*  
 Preterimp. Amābam, *I — loved, or was loving, or used to love.*  
 Preterperf. Amāvi, *I — loved, or have loved.*  
 Preterplup. Amāvēram, *I had loved.*  
 Fut. Imp. Amābō, *I — shall or will — love, or be loving.*  
 Fut. Perf. Amāvērō, *I — shall or will — have loved.*

SIGNS OF TENSES IN THE CONJUNCTIVE MOOD,  
WHEN POTENTIAL.

- Pres. Amem, *I — may, or can, or would, or should, or could — love, or be loving.*  
 Preterimp. Amārem, *I — might, or would, or should, or could — love, or be loving, or have been loving.*  
 Preterperf. Amāvērim, *I — may, or can, or might, or would, or should, or could — have loved, or love.*  
 Preterplup. Amāvissem, *I — might, or would, or should, or could — have loved.*

## § 55.

Note 1. When the Conjunctive Mood is truly *Subjunctive* (that is to say, *subjoined* to governing Conjunctions or Relative Pronouns,) it often has the same signs as the Indicative: as,

Laūdābērīs mōdō pārēās.  
*Thou wilt be praised if thou obeyest.*  
 Laūdābār quum pārērem.  
*I was praised when I obeyed.*  
 Laūdātūr quōd pārūrēt.  
*He is praised because he obeyed.*  
 Laūdāvi ēum quī pārūrēēt.  
*I praised him who had obeyed.*

Note 2. The Present Conjunctive is also used for the Imperative Mood: as,

- Act. Amem, *may I love, or let me love.*  
 Amēs, *mayst thou love, or love thou.*  
 Amēt, *may he love, or let him love.*  
 Amēmūs, *may we love, or let us love.*  
 Amētīs, *may ye love, or love ye.*  
 Amēnt, *may they love, or let them love.*

**Pass.** *Aměr, may I be loved, or let me be loved.*  
*Aměrís, mayst thou be loved, or be thou loved.*  
*Amětűr, may he be loved, or let him be loved.*  
*Amēműr, may we be loved, or let us be loved.*  
*Amēmĩnĩ, may ye be loved, or be ye loved.*  
*Aměntűr, may they be loved, or let them be loved.*

**Note 3.** The Infinitive in *re* stands for the Preterimperfect as well as for the Present Tense : and the Infinitive in *isse* stands for the Preterpluperfect as well as for the Preterperfect Tense : as,

- (1) *Dicĩt mē ămărě.*  
*He says (that) I am loving.*  
*Dixĩt mē ămărě.*  
*He said (that) I was loving.*
- (2) *Dicĩt mē ămāvĩssě.*  
*He says (that) I loved, or have loved.*  
*Dixĩt mē ămāvĩssě.*  
*He said (that) I had loved.*

### VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 56. Verbs in *io* of the Third Conjugation, in the Tenses derived from the Present-stem, throw away *i* before another *i* ; but keep it before *a, o, u,* and *e,* except before *er* : as, *răpĩ-ō, I seize, răp-ĩs, răpĩ-ũnt, răp-ěřě, răpĩ-ěbam, răpĩ-am, răp-ěrem, răp-ĩ, răpĩ-ěns, &c.* These Verbs are the following with their compounds :

*Căpĩō, cŭpĩō, făcĩō, jăcĩō,*  
*Fŭgĩō, fŏdĩō, păřĩō, lăcĩō,*  
*Răpĩō, săpĩō, spēcĩō, quătĩō,*  
*Grăđĩōr, mŏrĩōr, pŏtĩōr, pătĩōr.*

### § 57. VARIETIES OF FORM.

(a) The following changes are made in the several Conjugations, chiefly by the poets :

I. *Avis* into *as* ; as, *ămăstĩ* for *ămăvistĩ* ; *ămăssě* for *ămăvĩssě*.

*Aver* into *ar* ; as, *ămărũnt* for *ămăvěrũnt* ; *ămăram* for *ămăvěram*.

II. *Evis* into *es* ; as, *implēssem* for *implēvissem* ; *implēssē* for *implēvissē*.

*Ever* into *er* ; as, *implērunt* for *implēvērunt* ; *Implērō* for *implēvērō*.

IV. *Iv* into *ī* ; as, *aūdīt* for *aūdivīt* ; *aūdīrunt* for *aūdivērunt*.

*Ivis* into *ūs*, or *is* ; as, *aūdīssē* and *aūdīssē* for *aūdivissē*.

*Note.* *Nōvi*, in the Third Conjugation, changes *ovis* into *os* ; as, *nōstī* for *nōvistī* ; and *over* into *or* ; as, *nōram* for *nōvēram*. *Pētīvi* from *pētō*, and *dēsīvi* from *dēsīnō*, take the same changes as Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

(b) The Third Person Plural of the Preterperfect Active often ends in *ērē* instead of *ērunt* ; as,

*Amāvērunt* or *āmāvērē*.

*Mōnūērunt* or *mōnūērē*.

*Rēxērunt* or *rēxērē*.

*Aūdivērunt* or *aūdivērē*.

*Note.* We must not change *āvērē* into *ārē*, or *ēvērē* into *ērē* ; thus, *āmāvērē* must not become *āmārē*, nor *implēvērē* *implērē*, because these are the forms of the Infinitive.

(c) In the Second Persons Singular of several Passive Tenses, *re* is often put for *ris* ; as,

I. *Amābāris* or *āmābārē* ; *āmābērīs* or *āmābērē*.

*Amērīs* or *āmērē* ; *āmārērīs* or *āmārērē*.

II. *Mōnēbāris* or *mōnēbārē* ; *mōnēbērīs* or *mōnēbērē*.

*Mōnēārīs* or *mōnēārē* ; *mōnērērīs* or *mōnērērē*.

III. *Rēgēbāris* or *rēgēbārē* ; *rēgērīs* or *rēgērē*.

*Rēgārīs* or *rēgārē* ; *rēgērērīs* or *rēgērērē*.

IV. *Aūdīcāris* or *aūdīcārē* ; *aūdīērīs* or *aūdīērē*.

*Aūdīārīs* or *aūdīārē* ; *aūdīrērīs* or *aūdīrērē*.

*Note.* It is not usual to write *re* for *ris* in the Second Person Present Passive, on account of the confusion with Infinitive Act. and Imperat. Pass. But in Deponent Verbs the change is less objectionable ; as, *hōrtārē* for *hōrtārīs*.

(d) In the Passive Tenses formed with the Auxiliary Verb *sum*, *fūi* may be used for *sum* ; *fūeram* for *eram* ; *fūērō* for *erō* ; *fūerim* for *sim* ; and *fūissem* for *ēssem* ; with a stronger past force : as,

|         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                    |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Amātūs  | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum or fūi, I was, or have been} \\ \text{eram or fūeram, I had been} \\ \text{erō or fūerō, I shall have been} \\ \text{sim, or fūerim, I may have been} \\ \text{ēssem, or fūissem, I should have been} \end{array} \right\}$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{loved.} \\ \text{advised.} \\ \text{ruled.} \\ \text{heard.} \end{array} \right\}$ |
| Mōnītūs |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                    |
| Rēctūs  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                    |
| Andītūs |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                    |

(e) Dicō, dūcō, faciō make in the Second Person Imperative dic, dūc, faci.

(f) The old Infinitive Passive in *ier* for *i*, is sometimes used by the epic poets; as, āmāriēr for āmāri.

(g) The Participle in *dus* of 3d and 4th Conj. is sometimes formed in *undus* as well as *endus*, especially that of Verbs in *io*; as faciēndūs or faciūndūs.

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 58. The Participles in *rus* and *dus* may be conjugated with all the Tenses of the Verb *sum*; and this is called the Periphrastic Conjugation; as,

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

|          | (I) am | was    | have been | shall be | shall have been |                  |
|----------|--------|--------|-----------|----------|-----------------|------------------|
| Amātūrūs | sum    | eram   | fūi       | erō      | fūerō           | } about to love. |
| —        | ēs     | erās   | fūisti    | eris     | fūeris          |                  |
| —        | est    | erāt   | fūit      | erit     | fūerit          |                  |
| Amātūri  | sūmūs  | erāmūs | fūimūs    | erimūs   | fūerimūs        |                  |
| —        | estis  | erātis | fūistis   | eritis   | fūeritis        |                  |
| —        | sūnt   | erānt  | fūerūnt   | erūnt    | fūerint         |                  |

And the other Moods in like manner.

#### PASSIVE VOICE.

|         | (I) am | was    | have been | shall be | shall have been |                    |
|---------|--------|--------|-----------|----------|-----------------|--------------------|
| Amāndūs | sum    | eram   | fūi       | erō      | fūerō           | } meet to be loved |
| —       | ēs     | erās   | fūisti    | eris     | fūeris          |                    |
| —       | est    | erāt   | fūit      | erit     | fūerit          |                    |
| Amāndi  | sūmūs  | erāmūs | fūimūs    | erimūs   | fūerimūs        |                    |
| —       | estis  | erātis | fūistis   | eritis   | fūeritis        |                    |
| —       | sūnt   | erānt  | fūerūnt   | erūnt    | fūerint         |                    |

And the other Moods in like manner.

Note. The Participle in *dus* is often called the Gerundive.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 59. Deponent Verbs follow the Passive Conjugation, but take also Gerunds, Supines, and Participles Active. Intransitive Deponents want the Supine in *u*, and Participle in *dus*.

## (a) CONJUGATION OF TRANSITIVE DEPONENTS.

| 1                | 2            | 3             | 4              |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>I exhort,</i> | <i>fear,</i> | <i>speak,</i> | <i>divide.</i> |
| Hört-ör          | věr-ěör      | lõqu-ör       | pärt-iör       |
| Hört-ärıs        | věr-ěrıs     | lõqu-ěrıs     | pärt-irıs      |
| Hört-ătũs sum    | věr-ĩtũs sum | lõcũ-tũs sum  | pärt-itũs sum  |
| Hört-ārı         | věr-ērı      | lõqu-ı        | pärt-irı       |
| Hört-āndı        | věr-ēndı     | lõqu-ēndı     | pärt-iēndı     |
| Hört-āndō        | věr-ēndō     | lõqu-ēndō     | pärt-iēndō     |
| Hört-āndum       | věr-ēndum    | lõqu-ēndum    | pärt-iēndum    |
| Hört-ātum        | věr-ĩtum     | lõcũ-tum      | pärt-itum      |
| Hört-ātũ         | věr-ĩtũ      | lõcũ-tũ       | pärt-itũ       |
| Hört-āns         | věr-ēns      | lõqu-ēns      | pärt-iēns      |
| Hört-ătũs        | věr-ĩtũs     | lõcũ-tũs      | pärt-itũs      |
| Hört-ătũrũs      | věr-ĩtũrũs   | lõcũ-tũrũs    | pärt-itũrũs    |
| Hört-āndũs.      | věr-ēndũs.   | lõqu-ēndũs.   | pärt-iēndũs.   |

## (b) CONJUGATION OF INTRANSITIVE DEPONENTS.

| 1                | 2    | 3            | 4              |
|------------------|------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>I wander,</i> |      | <i>fall,</i> | <i>fawn.</i>   |
| Våg-ör           |      | lāb-ör       | blānd-iör      |
| Våg-ärıs         |      | lāb-ěrıs     | blānd-irıs     |
| Våg-ătũs sum     |      | lāp-sũs sum  | blānd-itũs sum |
| Våg-ārı          |      | lāb-ı        | blānd-irı      |
| Våg-āndı         |      | lāb-ēndı     | blānd-iēndı    |
| Våg-āndō         | None | lāb-ēndō     | blānd-iēndō    |
| Våg-āndum        |      | lāb-ēndum    | blānd-iēndum   |
| Våg-ātum         |      | lāp-sum      | blānd-itum     |
| Våg-āns          |      | lāb-ēns      | blānd-iēns     |
| Våg-ătũs         |      | lāp-sũs      | blānd-itũs     |
| Våg-ătũrũs.      |      | lāp-sũrũs.   | blānd-itũrũs.  |

## VERBA DERIVATA, DERIVED VERBS.

§ 60. I. Fréquēntatīvā, Frequentative Verbs, express the repetition of an action, are of the 1st Conjugation, and end in -ito, -to, -tor : as, rōg-ītō, *I ask often*, from rōg-ō ; mīn-ītōr, *I threaten often*, from mīn-ōr ; cān-tō, *I sing often*, from cān-ō.

II. Incēptīvā or Inchōatīvā, Inceptive Verbs, express the beginning of an action, are of the 3rd Conjugation, and end in -āscō, -ēscō, -īscō.

Some are derived from Verbs : as,

Lāb-āscō, *I begin to totter* ; from lāb-ō, (lāb-ās).  
 Pāl-ēscō, *I turn pale* ; „ pāl-ēō, (pāl-ēs).  
 Trēm-īscō, *I begin to tremble* ; „ trēm-ō, (trēm-īs).  
 Sc-īscō, *I begin to know* ; „ scī-ō, (scīs).

Some from Nouns : as,

Pūēr-āscō, *I become a boy* ; from pūēr.  
 Mīl-ēscō, *I become mild* ; „ mīlīs.

III. Dēsīdērātīvā, Desiderative Verbs, express the desire of an action, are of the 4th Conjugation, ending in -ūrīō, and derived from Supines in -um : as,  
 Es-ūrīō, *I am hungry* ; from ēdō, ēs-um.

## VERBA ANOMALA, IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 61. Irregular Verbs are such as do not form their Tenses according to the common rules : as,

- (1) Pōssum, pōtēs, pōtūi, pōssē, pōtūissē, pōtēns, *to be able*.
- (2) Vōlō, vis, vōlūi, vēllē, vōlūissē, vōlēndi, vōlēndō, vōlēndum, vōlēns, *to be willing*.
- (3) Nōlō, nōnvīs, nōlūi, nōllē, nōlūissē, nōlēndi, nōlēndō, nōlēndum, nōlēns, *to be unwilling*.
- (4) Mālō, māvīs, mālūi, māllē, mālūissē, mālēndi, mālēndō, mālēndum, mālēns, *to be more willing*.
- (5) Eō, is, ivi, irē, ivissē, itūrum ēssē, ēundī, ēundō, ēundum, itum, itū, ēūns or iēns, itūrūs, *to go*.
- (6) Fērō, fers, tūli, fērrē, tūliassē, lātūrum ēssē, fērēndi, fērēndō, fērēndum, lātum, lātū, fērēns, lātūrūs, *to bear*.
- (7) Fīō, fīs, fāctūs sum, fīērī, fāctum ēssē, fāctum irī, fāctūs, fāciēndūs, *to become or be made*.
- (8) Fērōr, fērrīs, lātūs sum, fērī, lātum ēssē, lātum irī, lātūs, fērēndūs, *to be borne*.

| Indicative Mood.                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                             | Conjunctive Mood.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Singular.                                                                                                                                                 | Plural.                                                                                                                                                                                     | Singular.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Plural.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Present Tense.<br>Pōsum pōtēs pōtēt<br>Vōlō vīt vīt<br>Nōlō nōn vīs nōn vīt<br>Mālō māvīs māvīt<br>Eō ē ē<br>Fērō fīs fīt<br>Fērō fērīs fērīt             | pōssūmūs pōtētīs pōssūnt.<br>vōlūmūs vūtīs vōlūnt.<br>nōlūmūs nōn vūtīs nōlūnt.<br>mālūmūs māvūtīs mālūnt.<br>ēimūs ēitīs ēiūt.<br>fērīmūs fērītīs fērītūt.<br>fērīmūr fērīmūtīs fērīmūtūr. | Pōs-sim<br>Vōl-im<br>Nōl-im<br>Māl-im<br>E-am<br>Fēr-am<br>Fēr-am<br>Pōs-sem<br>Vōl-lem<br>Nōl-lem<br>Māl-lem<br>I-rem<br>Fēr-rem<br>Fēr-rem<br>Pōt-ūrim<br>Vōl-ūrim<br>Nōl-ūrim<br>Māl-ūrim<br>Iv-ērim<br>Tūl-ērim<br>Factūs<br>Lātūs                                                  | -sītīs -sūtīs -sūt.<br>-lītīs -lūtīs -lūt.<br>-ētīs -ētūtīs -ētūt.<br>-āmūtīs -āmūtūtīs -āmūtūtūr.<br>-sētīs -sētūtīs -sētūt.<br>-lētīs -lētūtīs -lētūt.<br>-rētīs -rētūtīs -rētūt.<br>-rēmūtīs -rēmūtūtīs -rēmūtūtūr.<br>-ūērītīs -ūērītūtīs -ūērītūt.<br>-ērītīs -ērītūtīs -ērītūt.<br>facti<br>lati } sūmūtīs sūtīs sūt.     |
| Pōt-ēram<br>Vōl-ēbam<br>Nōl-ēbam<br>Māl-ēbam<br>I-bam<br>Fēr-ēbam<br>Fēr-ēbam<br>Pōt-ūi<br>Vōl-ūi<br>Nōl-ūi<br>Māl-ūi<br>Iv-i<br>Tūl-i<br>Factūs<br>Lātūs | -ērāt -ērātīs -ērātūt.<br>-ēbāt -ēbātīs -ēbātūt.<br>-bāt -bātīs -bātūt.<br>-ēbāt -ēbātīs -ēbātūt.<br>-ēbāmūt -ēbāmūtīs -ēbāmūtūt.                                                           | -sīt -sītīs -sītūt.<br>-līt -lītīs -lītūt.<br>-ēt -ētīs -ētūt.<br>-āmūt -āmūtīs -āmūtūt.<br>-sēt -sētīs -sētūt.<br>-lēt -lētīs -lētūt.<br>-rēt -rētīs -rētūt.<br>-rēmūt -rēmūtīs -rēmūtūt.<br>-ūērīt -ūērītīs -ūērītūt.<br>-ērīt -ērītīs -ērītūt.<br>facti<br>lati } sūmūtīs sūtīs sūt. | -sūtīs -sūtūtīs -sūtūt.<br>-lūtīs -lūtūtīs -lūtūt.<br>-ētīs -ētūtīs -ētūt.<br>-āmūtīs -āmūtūtīs -āmūtūt.<br>-sētīs -sētūtīs -sētūt.<br>-lētīs -lētūtīs -lētūt.<br>-rētīs -rētūtīs -rētūt.<br>-rēmūtīs -rēmūtūtīs -rēmūtūt.<br>-ūērītīs -ūērītūtīs -ūērītūt.<br>-ērītīs -ērītūtīs -ērītūt.<br>facti<br>lati } sūmūtīs sūtīs sūt. |

[illegible]

Quēō, *I am able*, and Nēquēō, *I am unable*, are conjugated like Eō, but have no Imperative Mood nor Gerunda.



§ 63. (9) Edō, *I eat*, ēdīs or ēs, ēdī, ēdērē or ēssē, ēdīssē, ēsūrum ēssē, ēdēndī, ēdēndō, ēdēndum, ēsum, ēsū, ēdēns, ēsūrūs, *to eat*.

*Pres. Indic. Act.*

*Sing.* Edō, ēdīs or ēs, ēdīt or ēst :

*Plur.* ēdīmūs, ēdītīs or ēstīs, ēdūnt.

*Conjunct. Preterimp. Act.*

*Sing.* Edērem or ēssem, ēdērēs or ēssēs, ēdērēt or ēssēt :

*Plur.* ēdērēmūs or ēssēmūs, ēdērētīs or ēssētīs, ēdērēnt or ēssēnt.

*Imperative Mood.*

*Sing. 2d Pers.* Edē or ēs ; ēdītō or ēstō ;

*3d Pers.* ēdītō or ēstō ;

*Plur. 2d Pers.* ēdītē or ēstē, ēdītōtē or ēstōtē ;

*3d Pers.* ēdūntō.

*Obs.* The other Tenses are regular : also the Passive Voice ; except that ēstūr may be used for ēdītūr, and ēssētūr for ēdērētūr.

## VERBA DEFECTIVA, DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 64. Defective Verbs are such as want many of the usual parts of a Verb.

(1) Aīō, *I say* ; and Inquam, *say I*.

|                         | <i>Indic.</i> | <i>Conj.</i> | <i>Indic.</i> | <i>Conj.</i> |
|-------------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| <i>Present.</i>         | Aīō           | —            | Inquam        | —            |
|                         | āīs           | aīās         | īnquīs        | īnquīās.     |
|                         | āīt           | aīāt         | īnquīt        | īnquīāt.     |
|                         | —             | —            | īnquīmūs      | —            |
|                         | —             | —            | īnquītīs      | īnquīātīs.   |
|                         | aīūnt.        | aīānt        | īnquīūnt      | īnquīānt.    |
| <i>Preterimperfect.</i> | aīēbam        | —            | īnquīēbam     | —            |
|                         | aīēbās        | —            | īnquīēbās     | —            |
|                         | aīēbāt        | —            | īnquīēbāt     | —            |
|                         | aīēbāmūs      | —            | īnquīēbāmūs   | —            |
|                         | aīēbātīs      | —            | īnquīēbātīs   | —            |
|                         | aīēbānt       | —            | īnquīēbānt.   | —            |

*Preterperf.* —, inq̄l̄stī, inq̄l̄t, —, inq̄l̄stīs, —.

*Fut. Imperf.* —, inq̄l̄ēs, inq̄l̄ēt.

*Imper.* inq̄ē, inq̄l̄tō; inq̄l̄tē.

*Part.* of aīō, aīēns.

§ 65.

(2) Quāēsō, *I entreat*; 1st Pers. Pl. quāēsūmūs.

(3) Fārī, *to speak*; used by the Poets in this and a few other forms, as fātūr, *he speaks*; fābōr, *I shall speak*; fārē, *speak thou*; *Part.* (fāns), fāntis, &c.; fātūs; fāndūs; *Ger.* fāndī, fāndō; *Sup.* fātū.

(4) The Imperatives;

Apāgē, *begone*.

Avē, āvētē, *hail*; *Infin.* āvērē.

Cēdō, cēdītē, or cēttē, *give me*.

Sālvē, sālvētē, *hail*; *Infin.* sālvērē; *Fut.* sālvēbīs.

Vālē, vālētē, *farewell*; *Infin.* vālērē.

(5) Aūsīm, aūsīs, aūsīt —, —, aūsīnt: for aūdēam, *I may dare*.

Fāxim, fāxis, fāxīt, fāxīmūs, fāxītīs, fāxīnt: for fāciām, *I may do*, or fēcērim, *I may have done*.

Also fāxō, for fāciām, *I shall do*, or fēcērō, *I shall have done*.

§ 66.

(6) Prāterītīvā; or Verbs conjugated only in the Preterperfect and its derived Tenses; cēpi, *I begin*; ōdī, *I hate*; mēmīnī, *I remember*.

|             | <i>Indic.</i> | <i>Conj.</i> | <i>Infin.</i> | <i>Part.</i> |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| Preterperf. | Cēpi          | cēpērim      | cēpīssē.      | —            |
|             | Ōdī           | ōdērim       | ōdīssē.       | —            |
|             | Mēmīnī        | mēmīnērim    | mēmīnīssē.    | —            |
| Preterplu.  | Cēpēram       | cēpīssēm.    | —             | —            |
|             | Ōdēram        | ōdīssēm.     | —             | —            |
|             | Mēmīnēram     | mēmīnīssēm.  | —             | —            |
| Fut. Perf.  | Cēpērō        | —            | cēptūrum ēssē | cēptūrūs.    |
|             | Ōdērō         | —            | ōsūrum ēssē   | ōsūrūs.      |
|             | Mēmīnērō.     | —            | —             | —            |

*Imper. Sing.* Mēmētō, *Plur.* mēmētōtē.

*Obs.* 1. For cēpi and its Tenses may be used the Passive cēptūs sum and its Tenses before an Infinitive Passive.

*Obs.* 2. Nōvī, *I know*, Preterp. of nōscō, is also used as a Präteritive.

## § 67.

(7) Impersonal Verbs are conjugated only in the Third Persons Singular of the Proper Moods, and in the Infinitive Mood.

A. Impersonal Verbs Active have no Passive Voice. The principal of these are of the 2nd Conjugation.

Opōrtēt, tādēt, mīserēt,  
Pigēt, pūdēt, pænītēt,  
Libēt, licēt, liquēt, et  
Dēcēt atquē dēdēcēt.

|                    | <i>Indic.</i> | <i>Conjunc.</i> | <i>Inf.</i> |
|--------------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>       | Opōrtēt       | ōpōrtēāt        | ōpōrtērē.   |
| <i>Preterimp.</i>  | Opōrtēbāt     | ōpōrtērēt       | —           |
| <i>Preterperf.</i> | Opōrtūit      | ōpōrtūērīt      | ōpōrtūissē. |
| <i>Preterplu.</i>  | Opōrtūērāt    | ōpōrtūissēt     | —           |
| <i>Fut. Imp.</i>   | Opōrtēbīt.    |                 |             |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i>  | Opōrtūērīt.   |                 |             |

The Persons are expressed by the Cases following the Verb :  
as,

|                                                | <i>Pres. Indic.</i>     |   |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| <i>Sing.</i> Opōrtēt mē, <i>it behoves me,</i> | or <i>I am behoven.</i> |   |
| Opōrtēt tē, — <i>thee,</i>                     | or <i>thou art</i>      | — |
| Opōrtēt ēum, — <i>him,</i>                     | or <i>he is</i>         | — |
| <i>Plur.</i> Opōrtēt nōs, — <i>us,</i>         | or <i>we are</i>        | — |
| Opōrtēt vōs, — <i>you,</i>                     | or <i>ye are</i>        | — |
| Opōrtēt ēōs, — <i>them,</i>                    | or <i>they are</i>      | — |

And so in the other Tenses.

§ 68. B. Intransitive Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice : as, lūdītūr, from lūdō, *I play.*

|                    | <i>Indic.</i> | <i>Conjunc.</i> | <i>Inf.</i>   |
|--------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>       | Lūdītūr       | lūdātūr         | lūdī.         |
| <i>Preterimp.</i>  | Lūdēbātūr     | lūdērētūr.      | —             |
| <i>Preterperf.</i> | Lūsum ēst     | lūsum sīt       | lūsum ēssē.   |
| <i>Preterplu.</i>  | Lūsum ērāt    | lūsum ēssēt     | lūsum fūissē. |
| <i>Fut. Imp.</i>   | Lūdētūr       | —               | lūsum irī.    |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i>  | Lūsum ērīt.   | —               | —             |

The Persons are expressed by an Ablative Case with the Preposition *a* or *ab* following the Verb : as,

| <i>Pres. Indic.</i> |                         |                            |                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i>        | <i>Lūdītūr ā mē,</i>    | <i>it is played by me,</i> | <i>or I play.</i>             |
|                     | <i>Lūdītūr ā tē,</i>    | —                          | <i>thee, or thou playest.</i> |
|                     | <i>Lūdītūr āb ēō,</i>   | —                          | <i>him, or he plays.</i>      |
| <i>Plur.</i>        | <i>Lūdītūr ā nōbīs</i>  | —                          | <i>us, or we play.</i>        |
|                     | <i>Lūdītūr ā vōbīs,</i> | —                          | <i>you or ye play.</i>        |
|                     | <i>Lūdītūr āb ēīs,</i>  | —                          | <i>them or they play.</i>     |

And so in the other Tenses.

§ 69. C. The Neuter of the Gerundive Participle in *dus*, is used impersonally, in the same manner, with a Dative or Ablative after it to mark the Persons : as,

| <i>Pres. Indic.</i> |                            |                                 |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>S.</i>           | <i>Lūdēndum ēst mīhi,</i>  | <i>it must be played by me,</i> | <i>or I</i>          |
|                     | <i>Lūdēndum ēst tībi,</i>  | —                               | <i>thee, or thou</i> |
|                     | <i>Lūdēndum ēst ēi,</i>    | —                               | <i>him, or he</i>    |
| <i>P.</i>           | <i>Lūdēndum ēst nōbīs,</i> | <i>it must be played by us,</i> | <i>or we</i>         |
|                     | <i>Lūdēndum ēst vōbīs,</i> | —                               | <i>you, or ye</i>    |
|                     | <i>Lūdēndum ēst ēīs,</i>   | —                               | <i>them, or they</i> |

*must play.*

And so in the other Tenses.

(The Particles are treated of in other parts of this Grammar.)

# I. OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

§ 70.

## A. GENERAL RULES.

(1.)

*Viri, Pöpuli, et Divi,  
Venti, Menses, Mōntes, Rivi*  
Gēnēris sūnt Māscūlini.

(2.)

*Plāntā, Divā, Fēmīnā,  
Terrā, Urbēs, Insulā*  
Gēnēris sūnt Fēmīnīni.

(3.)

*Vox* indēclinābilis  
Neūtriūs ēst Gēnēris.

(4.)

Sūnt Cōmmūnis Gēnēris  
*Civis, hōstis, iuvēnis,  
Tēstis, iudex, artifex,  
Auctōr, exsul, opifex,  
Cōmēs, hērēs, hōspēs, dux,  
Obsēs, intērpres, cōnjux,  
Incōlā, sēcērdōs, vindex,  
Adōlescēns, infans, indēx,  
Pārēns, præsul, pār, cūstōs,  
Mūnicēps, sātēllēs, bōs,  
Milēs, vātēs, aūgūr, grūs,  
Cānis, tigris, sērpēs, sūs:  
Dāmā, tālpā jūngimūs.*

## B. OF GENDER IN THE DECLENSIONS.

§ 71.

### I. FIRST DECLENSION.

#### PRINCIPAL RULE.

*A* et *ē* sūnt Fēmīnīnā ; | *As* et *ēs* sūnt Māscūlinā.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

Māscūlinā sūnt in *a*  
Māscūlōrum nōmīnā,

Ut *naūtā, vērnā* et *pōvā,*  
*Scūrrā, scribā* et *prōphētā.*

## § 72.

## II. SECOND DECLENSION.

## PRINCIPAL RULE.

Māscūlinis ūs ēt ēr, | Neūtris um tribūtūr.

## EXCEPTIONS.

- |                                                                                       |                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) Fēmīnīnā sūnt īn ūs<br><i>Alvīs, ārcūs, cārbāsūs,<br/>Cōlīs, hūmūs, mēthōdūs;</i> | (2) Neūtrā vīrūs, pēdāgūs.<br><i>Vulgūs fērē Neūtrum sūt,<br/>Māscūlum sūbīndē fīt.</i> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## § 73.

## III. THIRD DECLENSION.

## (a) FIRST PRINCIPAL RULE.

Māscūlis īnsērītūr | Et Nōmēn dēsīnēns īn es,  
Quōd claudīt o, or, os, vėl er, | Sī flectīt cāsūs īmpārēs.

## EXCEPTIONS.

- |                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) Illā Fēmīnīnā sūnt<br>In do ēt go quā dēsīnūnt:<br>Sēd Māscūlinā mānēnt cārdō,<br><i>Līgō, ōrdō atquē mārō.</i> | <i>Equōr, ādōr, mārōr, cōr:</i><br>Fēmīnīnum ēst ārbōr.                                                                               |
| (2) Sūnt īn io Fēmīnīnā:<br>Tāntum illā Māscūlinā,<br>Quā vėl ōcūlis spēctābīs,<br>Vėl tū mānībūs trāctābīs.        | (5) Fēmīnīnā cōs ēt dōs,<br>Neūtrā sūnt ūtrūmqū os.                                                                                   |
| (3) Cārdō (cārnīs) māvult sē<br>Fēmīnīs āddērē.                                                                     | (6) Neūtrā mūltā sūnt īn er,<br><i>Vērbēr, silēr, ācēr, vēr,<br/>Tūdēr, ūbēr, ēt cādāvēr,<br/>Pīpēr, ūēr, ēt pāpāvēr.</i>             |
| (4) Neūtrā paucā sūnt īn or;                                                                                        | (7) <i>Es</i> ēst Neūtrum; sēx īn es<br>Quā flectūt cāsūs īmpārēs<br>Fēmīnīnā, cōmpēs, tēgēs,<br><i>Mērcēs, mērgēs, quīēs, sēgēs.</i> |

## § 74.

## (b) SECOND PRINCIPAL RULE.

Fēmīnīs īnsērās | S cum cōnsōnāntē nēxā,  
Quā claudūt is, x, aus ēt as, | Es æqualītēr īnflectā.

## EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) *Multă sunt quæ claudīt is*  
*Măsculină Gēnēris,*  
*Amnis, axis, cāllis, cōllis,*  
*Caulis, cucumis et follis,*  
*Fascis, funis, fustis, finis,*  
*Ignis, orbis atque crinis,*  
*Panis, piscis, pōtis, ensis,*  
*Sēntis, cōrbis, tōrquis, mēsis,*  
*Torris, unguis, et cōnālis,*  
*Vectis, vermis et addālis,*  
*Cassis, cinis, glis et ānguis,*  
*Lapis, pulvis atque sanguis.*
- (2) *Plērăquē quæ claudīt ex*  
*Măsculină sunt, ut græx :*  
*Sed Fēminină mănēnt nēx,*  
*Supēllēx, ūlēx, cūrēx, lēx.*

- (3) *Măsculină sunt in ix*  
*Fōrnix, phēnix et cōlix.*
- (4) *Măsculină sunt in as*  
*Vas (vadis), gīgās, elēphās,*  
*As (āsis), mās et addāmās,*  
*Neutră, vas (vās), nēfūs, fās.*
- (5) *Măsculinis addē mōns,*  
*Fōns et tōrrēns, gryps et pōns,*  
*Rūdēns, hydrōps, dēns et bidēns,*  
*Oriēns, occidēns et tridēns.*
- (6) *Măsculină sunt in es*  
*Verrēs et ācināclēs.*

## § 75.

## (c) THIRD PRINCIPAL RULE.

Neutră claudūnt *a* et *e*, | *Ar, ur, us, c, l, n* et *t*.

## EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) *Măsculină sunt in ur*  
*Furfur, turtur, oultur, fur.*
- (2) *Măsculină sunt in us*  
*Lēpis (lēpōris) et mūs.*
- (3) *Fēminină sunt in ūs*  
*Virtus atque sērvitūs,*  
*Jivētūs, incūs atque pālūs,*  
*Sēnēctūs, tēllūs atque sālūs,*  
*Quibūs lōngā mănēt u*  
*In Gēnītivī trānsitū.*
- (4) *Est et pēcūs (pēcūdis)*  
*Fēminīnī Gēnēris.*
- (5) *Măsculī in l sunt mūyl,*  
*Cōnsul, sal, sol atque pūyl.*
- (6) *Măsculină sunt rēn, splēn,*  
*Pēcēn, dēlphīn, āttāgēn.*
- (7) *Fēminină sunt in on*  
*Gōrgōn, sindōn, hūlcōn.*



## § 76

## IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.

## PRINCIPAL RULE.

*Măsculis in Quārtā ūs, | Neutris ū tribūimās.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

*Fēminină sunt in ūs*  
*Quārtā dōmūs, pōrticūs,*

*Acūs, Idūs atque mādūs,*  
*Tribūs, nārūs, socrūs, dñūs.*

## § 77.

## V. FIFTH DECLENSION.

## PRINCIPAL RULE.

Femīnīnis Insērēs | Quintæ nōmīnā in *ēs*.

## EXCEPTION.

*Dīs* ēst in Singulō | In Plūrālī Nūmērō  
Mās vėl Femīnīnum : | Sēmpēr Māsculīnum.

## II. IRREGULAR NOUNS.

## § 78. I. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

- |                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>(a) Singulārīs Nūmērūs<br/>Mūltīs deēst Nōmīnībūs :<br/>Ut <i>Mānēs, lōcūlī, Pēndītēs ;</i><br/><i>Cūnā, thērmā, nūgā, grātīs ;</i></p> | <p><i>Armā, viscērd, māgālā,</i><br/>Cum dēum <i>fēstīs, ūt Flōrālīd.</i><br/>(b) Lēctītāntībūs āppārēt<br/>Mūltā quā Plūrālī cārēt.</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## II. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

Nōnnūllī cāsūs ābsūnt hīs, | Et mūltā prætēr hāc āppārēt  
*Fās, frūgīs, dāpīs, ōpīs, vīs :* | Quā cāsībūs nōnnūllīs cārēt.

## III. NOUNS REDUNDANT IN NUMBER.

In a vėl i quā ēffērūnt | Nūmērūm Plūrālem, sūnt  
*Frēnum, cārbāsūs ēt lōcūs,*  
*Rāstrum, sībīlūs ēt jōcūs.*  
*Tūrtārūs fit in Plūrālī*  
*Tūrtārd, ēt cālum cālī.*

## IV. NOUNS REDUNDANT IN CASE.

Abūdānt quādam Cāsībūs, | Ut *dōmūs, laūrūs, Œdīpūs.*

## III. OF THE PRETERPERFECTS AND SUPINES OF LATIN VERBS.

## § 79. I. FIRST CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

Vērbōrūm Primā Cōnjūgātīō,  
Cui *ō ās ārē* tērminātīō,  
*Avī* in Pēfēctō fit,  
Sūpinō *ātum* sūbjicit.  
(Am-ō, ām-ās, ām-ārē, ām-āvī, ām-ātum.)



## EXCEPTIONS.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>(1) Hinc excipienda sunt<br/>Quæ ut itum effecerunt:<br/><i>Crēpō, cūbō atque sōnō,</i><br/><i>Dōmō, vētō atque tōnō.</i></p> <p>(2) <i>Sēcō sēcūi atque sēcūm;</i><br/><i>Fricō fricūi atque frictum.</i></p> <p>(3) <i>Jūvō jūvi jūtum stāt;</i></p> | <p><i>Lāvō lāvi lūtum dāt,</i><br/><i>Et lāvōtum vindicāt.</i></p> <p>(4) <i>Dō fit dēlī atque dātum,</i><br/><i>Stō fit stēti atque statum.</i></p> <p>(5) <i>Micō dāt Pēfēctum micūi,</i><br/><i>Plicō dāt Pēfēctum plicūi;</i><br/><i>Nūllum fērt Sūpinum micō,</i><br/><i>-ātum dāt vėl -itum plicō.</i></p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## § 80. II. SECOND CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

Vērbōrum Altērā Cōnjūgatiō,  
Cui ēō ēs ērē tērminātiō,  
Uī in Pēfēctō fit,  
Sūpinō itum sūbjicit.

(Mōn-ēō, mōnēs, mōn-ārē, mōn-ūi, mōn-ītum.)

## EXCEPTIONS.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>(1) Hinc excipienda sunt<br/>Quæ ut itum effecerunt:<br/>Ut nēō nēvi atque nētum;<br/><i>Dēlēō dēl-ēvi -ētum.</i><br/><i>Addē flēō, plēō, his,</i><br/><i>Et olēō, cum cōpōsūtis.</i></p> <p>(2) His in dī Pēfēctum stāt,<br/>Sum Sūpinum tērmināt.<br/><i>Prāndī prānsūm prāndēō;</i><br/><i>Sēdī sēsum sēdēō;</i><br/><i>Vidī visum vidēō.</i><br/><i>Sēd spōndēō spōpōndī spōnsūm;</i><br/><i>Tōndēō tōtōndī tōnsūm;</i><br/><i>Mōmōrdī mōrsūm mōrdēō;</i><br/><i>Pēpēndī pēnsūm pēndēō.</i></p> <p>(3) His in sī Pēfēctum fit,<br/>Sum Sūpinum exigit.<br/><i>Jūsi jūsum jūbēō;</i><br/><i>Mūsi mūsūm mūcēō</i><br/><i>Dāt, Itidēmquē mūlgēō;</i><br/><i>Tēsi tērsūm tērgēō;</i><br/><i>Arsi arsum arēō;</i><br/><i>Risi risum ridēō;</i><br/><i>Sūsi sūsūm sūdēō;</i><br/><i>Māsi māsum mānēō;</i><br/><i>Hāsi hāsum hārēō.</i><br/><i>Sic ēt algēō alsi dāt,</i><br/><i>Fūlgēō fūsi vindicāt;</i></p> | <p><i>Urgēō item ūsi fit;</i><br/><i>Sēd his Sūpinum dēficiūt.</i></p> <p>(4) <i>Dāt si ēt tum indūl-gēō,</i><br/><i>Et tōr-si tōr-tum tor-quēō.</i></p> <p>(5) <i>Aūgēō aūxi auctum fit;</i><br/><i>Frigēō frizi sūscipīt:</i><br/><i>Lugēō, lūcēō, lūxi dāt,</i><br/><i>Sēd nōn Sūpinum gēnērānt.</i></p> <p>(6) Hāc Pēfēctō vōlūt vī,<br/>Tum Sūpinō sūfficiūt:<br/><i>Cāvēō cāvi atque caūtum;</i><br/><i>Fāvēō fāvi atque faūtum;</i><br/><i>Fōvēō fōvi atque fōtum;</i><br/><i>Mōvēō mōvi atque mōtum;</i><br/><i>Vōvēō vōvi atque vōtum.</i></p> <p>(7) His ūi in Pēfēctō stāt,<br/>Tum Sūpinum tērmināt.<br/><i>Dāt dōcēō dōctum;</i> dāt mīstum mī-<br/><i>cēō;</i> sōrptum<br/><i>Sōrbēō;</i> fit tēnēō tēntum; fit tōrrēō<br/><i>tōstum.</i></p> <p>(8) His Prætērītum Pāssivē,<br/>Præsēns scribitūr Activē;<br/><i>Aūdēō dāt aūsūs sum;</i><br/><i>Gaūdēō gāvīsūs sum;</i><br/><i>Sōlēōquē sōlūtūs sum.</i></p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## § 81. III. THIRD CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

Verborum Tertiā Conjugatiō,  
Cui ō is ēre tēminātiō,  
Pēfēctum variāe formāe dāt,  
Tum vėl sum Sūpinō stāt.

(Rēg-ō, rēg-is, rēx-i, rēg-ērē, rēct-um.)

*Special Rules with their Exceptions.*

## § 82. (a) Bō ēt pō.

Bō, pō hābēt additum  
Pēfēctō pōi, Sūpinō ptum :  
Ut nūbō nūpi atquē nūptum.

## EXCEPTIONS.

Rūmpō tāmen rūpi rūptum ;  
Bibō bibi bibitum ;  
Strēpō strēpi strēpitum.

## (b) Cō, gō, hō, quō.

Cō, gō, hō, quō, sic dēclinō,  
Xi Pēfēctō, ctum Sūpinō :  
Ut dūcō dūxi atquē dūctum ;  
Sūgō sūxi atquē sūctum ;  
Rēgō rēxi atquē rēctum ;  
Vēhō vēxi atquē vēctum.

## EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) Scō Pēfēctō jūbēt ei,  
Tum Sūpinō subjici ;  
Ut crēscō crēvi crētum ; suēscō  
Suēvi suētum ; sic quiescō.  
Nōscō nōvi nōtum dāt ;  
Pāscō pāvi pāstum stāt.  
Cōmplescō fit cōmplescūi ;  
Pōpōsci pōscō ; discō didici.
- (2) Icō ici atquē icum ;  
Vincō vici atquē victum ;  
Lingvō liqui atquē licum.
- (3) Pārcō dāt pēpēci pārsū.
- (4) Spārgō spārsi atquē spārsū ;  
Mērgō mērsi atquē mērsū ;  
Tērgō tērsi atquē tērsū.

- (5) Agō ēgi atquē actum ;  
Frāngō frēgi atquē frāctum ;  
Tāngō tētiigi ēt tāctum ;  
Pāngō pēpiigi ēt pāctum ;  
Sēd cōmpōstā-pēgi -pāctum ;  
Pūngō pūpiigi ēt pūctum ;  
Jūngō jūnxi atquē jūctum.  
Lēgō lēgi vindicāt,  
Cōmpōstum sēpē lēxi dāt.

- (6) Fīgō fixi fixum ; fīngō  
Fīnxi atquē fīctum ; pīngō  
Pīnxi fīcīt atquē pīctum ;  
Stringō strīnxi atquē strīctum.

## (c) Dō.

Dō Pēfēctō jūbēt ei,  
Sum Sūpinō suffici.  
Lāsi lāsum fīcīt lādō ;  
(Vērūm cēssi cēssum cēdō :)  
Sic il-lādō -līsi -līsum ;  
Dividō dī-vīsi -vīsum.

## EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) Quē exēunt in āndō, ēndō,  
Flēctē dō in dī vērtēndō.  
Pēndō fit pēpēndi pēnsū ;  
Tēndō dāt tēpēndi tēnsū.
- (2) Fīndō tāmen fidī fīssū ;  
Scīndō scīdī atquē scīssū ;  
Fūndō fūdī atquē fūssū ;  
Tūndō tūtūdī ēt tūssū.  
Cūdō cūdī atquē cūssū ;  
Cādō cēcidī ēt cāssū ;  
Cādō fit cēcidī cāssū ;  
Fīcīt lādō lādī lāssū.

- (3) *Abdō, addō, cōdō, crēdō,*  
*Obdō, pērdō, rēddō, edō,*  
*Prōdō, trādō, vēndō, dēdō,*  
 Quæ a dō cōpōstā sūnt,  
 -didī, dītum, effērunt:  
 Ut *edō edidī* et *edītum*,  
*Dēdō dedidī* et *dēdītum*.

(d) To.

*Flectō flecti* atque *flectum*;  
*Nectō nēxi* atque *nēxum*;  
*Pectō pēxi* atque *pēxum*;  
*Pectōi* et *pectum pectō*;  
*Mectō* et *mectum mectō*;  
*Mittō misi* *missum dāt*;  
*Vectō vēxi* *vēxum stāt*.  
 Verbum quōd a *sistō* fit  
*Pērfectō -stī* sūfficit.

§ 83. (e) So.

*Sō stōi situm* fit; *arsēssō*  
 Sic formātūr, et *laccēssō*.  
*Vtō vīsi* vindicāt;  
*Pīnō pīnsi* *pīstum dāt*.

§ 84. (f) Xo.

Unum in *xō tēxō* stāt,  
 Quōd *tēxūi tēxtum* vindicāt.

§ 85. (g) Lo.

*Lō lūi* tum; sic cōnsūlō  
*Flectitūr*; et *occulō*.  
 Sēd cōlūi et cūltum cōlō,  
*Mōlūi mōlūtum* fit *mōlō*.  
 A cēllō vērba cēllūi;  
 Sēd pērcēllō pērcūli  
 Cōnjūgābils et pērcūsum;  
*Pēllō pēpūli* et *pūsum*;  
*Vēllō vēli* (vūli) vūsum.  
*Fallo* fit *fēfēli fāsum*;  
*Psallo psalli*; *sallo sālsum*;  
*Tollo sustūli* formātum  
 In Sūplnō fit sūblātum.

(h) Mo.

*Mō mūi mūtum* fit; ūt *frēmō*  
*Frēmūi frēmītum*; sic *gēmō*,  
 Et Sūplnō cārēns *trēmō*.

EXCEPTIONS.

*Si* tum: cōmō cōmsi cōmtum,  
*Prōmō prōmsi* atque *prōmtum*;  
 Sic *flectūtūr sūmō, dēmō*;  
 Sēd *ēmī* atque *ēmtum ēmō*;  
*Prēssi* atque *prēssum prēmō*.

(Intēr m et s vēl t

Lātini sēpē pōnūt p.

Sic fiūt *sūmpsi, dēmpsi, dēmp-*

*tum,*

*Cōmptum, prōmptum, sūmptum,*

*ēmtum.)*

(i) No.

*Cānō cāntum cēcīni*,  
*Cōmpōstā -cēntum -cīnī*;  
*Gignō gēnūi gēnītum*;  
*Pōnō pōsūi pōsītum*;  
*Tēmō tēmī tēmtum dāt*;  
*Stērō strāvi strātum stāt*.  
*Spērō sprēvi* atque *sprētum*;  
*Cērō crēvi* atque *crētum*;  
*Līnō lēvi* atque *lītum*;  
*Sīnō sīvi* atque *sītum*.

(j) Rō.

*Vērō vērrī* atque *vērsūm*;  
*Cūrō dāt cūcūrri cūrsum*;  
*Quārō* fit *quā-sīvi -sītum*;  
*Tērō trīvi* atque *trītum*;  
*Urō ūsī ūstum stāt*;  
*Gērō gēsī gēstum dāt*;  
*Fērō fūli* atque *fātum*;  
*Sērō sēvi* atque *sātum*;  
*Sērō sērūi sērtum dāt*,  
 Si cum vi *nēctēndī* stāt.

§ 86. (k) Io.

*Faciō fēci* atque *fāctum*;  
*Jaciō jēci* atque *jāctum*;  
*Dānt a lāciō lēxi lēctum*;  
 Et a *spēcīō spēxi spēctum*;  
*Fōdiō fōdi* fit *fōssumque*;  
*Fūgiō fūgi* *fūgitumque*;  
*Cāpiō cēpi* atque *cāptum*;  
*Rāpiō rāpi* et *rāptum*;

*Cūp-ivi -itum cūpiō ;*  
*Pēpēri pārtum pāriō ;*  
*Quātiō quāssum vindicāt,*  
*Sed in cōmpōstis cūssum dāt.*

*Vō inflictit vī ēt ūtum ;*  
*Ut solvō solvi ēt solūtum ;*  
*Vōlō vōlvi ēt vōlūtum.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

*Flūd tāmen flūrum flūri ;*  
*Strūd strūctum atquē strūxi ;*  
*Vioō vixi victum dāt ;*  
*Stinguō stinxī stinctum stāt.*

87. (1) *Uō ēt vō.*

*Uō formāt ūt ūtum ;*  
*Ut tribūō tribūi tribūtum.*

## § 88. IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

*Verbōrum Quārtā Cōnjūgatiō,*  
*Cui iō is irē tēminatīō,*  
*Ivi in Pēfectō fit,*  
*Sūpinō itum sūfficit.*

(*Aūd-iō, aūd-is, aūd-irē, aūd-ivi, aūd-itum.*)

## EXCEPTIONS.

*Sānciō sānxi sānctum fit ;*  
*Nēc -civi -ctum rēspūit,*  
*Vinxi vinctum vinciō ;*  
*Fūli fūctum fūciō ;*  
*Sārciō fit sārxi sārtum ;*  
*Fārciōquē fārxi fārtum ;*  
*Amiciō amicūi dāt ;*  
*Sāliō sālīi (sālī) stāt ;*  
*At singūliō singūlitum ;*  
*Et sēpēiō sēpūtum ;*

*Vēniō vēni vēntum fit ;*  
*(Vēnēō vēni sūscipit) ;*  
*Sēpiō sēpi sēptum dāt ;*  
*A-pēriō -pērii -pērtum stāt ;*  
*Sed cōmpēriō cōmpēri ;*  
*Et rēpēriō rēppēri.*  
*Haūsi haūstum haūriō ;*  
*Sēnsi sēnsū sēntiō.*

§ 89.

## V. DEPONENT VERBS.

*Dēpōnēntiā flēxēris*  
*Ex Activōrum rēgūlis ;*  
*Nam Prætēritum Pāssivum*  
*Sūpini ēst Dērivātivum.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

(1) SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Rēōr rātūs ēfficit ;*  
*Misērēōr misērtūs fit ;*  
*Fāsēōr fāssūs ; flēctē sīs*  
*Fūssūs in cōmpōstis.*

(2) THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Lābōr lāpsūs sūscipit ;*  
*Utiō usūs ēfficit ;*  
*Lōquōr ēfficit lōcutūs ;*  
*Sēquōr ēfficit sēcutūs ;*

*Nitōr nīsūs nīrūs stāt ;  
Irātūs sum irāscōr dāt ;  
Quērōr quētūs ; grādīōr grēs-  
sūs ;  
Pātīōr pāsūs sum, ēt -pēsūs  
In cōmpōstīs ; fīt ālciscōr  
Ultūs ; āptūs sum āpliscōr ;  
Sēd ādēptūs ādīpiscōr ;  
Prōficiōr fīt prōfēctūs ;  
Expērgiscōr expērrēctūs ;  
Fīt oblītūs oblīviscōr ;  
Et cōmmētūs cōmmīniscōr ;*

*Sēd nānciscōr fācīt nāctūs ;  
Et pāciscōr fācīt pāctūs.  
Mōrtūs sum fācīt mōriōr ;  
Nāscōr nātūs ; ōrtūs ōriōr ;  
Quēs fūtūrā mōritūrūs,  
Nāscitūrūs, ōritūrūs.*

## (3) FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Quārtā mēnsūs mētiōr ;  
Fōrmāt ōrsūs ōrdiōr ;  
At expēriōr expērtūs,  
Et ōppēriōr ōppērtūs.*

## § 90.

## VI. INCEPTIVE VERBS.

- (1) A Vērbīs dūctā Incēptīvā  
Flēxēris ūt Prīmītivā :  
Sic ēxārsi ēxārdēscō,  
Obēdīvi obēdlēscō ;  
Trēmūi vindicāt trēmīscō ;  
Et rēsciui fīt rēsciscō.

- (2) Fāctorū ēx Nōmīnībūs  
Pērfēctīs ūt tērminībūs :  
Evānēscō sic evānūi ;  
Cōnsānēscō fīt cōnsānūi.  
Plūrimā Sūpīnis cārēnt,  
Pērfēctā mūltīs nōn āppārēnt.

## VII. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

*Impērsōnālīā flēxēris  
Ex Pērsōnālūm rēgūlīs :  
Sic pūdēt fācīt pūdūt ;  
Pēnitēt pēnitūtī ;  
Opōrtēt sic ōpōrtūtī.*

*Sēd mīserēt mīsertum ēst ;  
Libēt libūt libitum ēst ;  
Tēdēt dāt pērtāsum ēst  
Vēl tēdūt ; sic pigēt fīt  
Pigitum ēst ēt pigūt.*

## VIII. VERBS WANTING PRETERPERFECTS AND SUPINES.

*In ōpēribūs Lātīnīs,  
Mūltā Vērbā quāe Sūpīnīs,*

*Mūltā quāe Pērfēctō cārēnt,  
Lēctītāntībūs āppārēnt.*

## § 91. IV. OF THE CHANGES OF VERBS IN COMPOSITION.

- (1) A In e cōvērtēris  
Hōrum In Cōmpōstīs :  
Arcēō, cārpō, dāmno, lāctō,  
Fāscōr, fāllo, fārciō, jāctō,

*Grādīōr, pātīōr, pārtīōr, trāctō,  
Pāriō, patrō, ātquē cāndō,  
Sacō, spārgō, ātquē scāndō.*

- (2) *A* In *i* cōnvertēris  
Hōrum In Cōmpōsītīs :  
*Agō, cādō, cādō, frangō,*  
*Habēō, latēō, fātēor, pangō,*  
*Saliō, statūō, atquē tangō,*  
*Cūpiō, rūpiō, sapiō, faciō,*  
*Jaciō, laciō, plācēō, taciō.*  
Excēptā : *pēragō, pēplācēō ;*  
Et cum Advērbīs mīstum faciō.
- (3) *A* In *u* cōnvertitō  
Ex *calcō, salūō, quatūō.*
- (4) *E* In *i* cōnvertēris  
Hōrum In Cōmpōsītīs :  
*Egō, tēnēō, atquē tēmō,*  
*Spēcīō, sēdēō, atquē prēmō,*  
Addē *dēdi* atquē *lēgō,*  
Addē *stēti* atquē *rēgō.*  
Sunt excēptā : *rēlēgō,*  
*Prēlēgō, et prālēgō.*  
*Nota.*  
Si, mūtātō Simplicī,  
Cōmpōstī Prāsēns sūmsit *i,*
- In Pēfēctō sūmēt *ē,*  
Si lōngām vālēt fingērē :  
Sic *dēficiō* fit *dēfēcī ;*  
Sic *prōjiciō* fit *prōjēcī ;*  
Sic *cōspiciō* fit *cōspēcī ;*  
Sic *dirigō* fit *dirēcī.*  
*Pērgō (pēr-rēgō) pērrēcī ;*  
*Surgō (sūs-rēgō) sūrrēcī ;*  
*Pōrrigō (prō-rēgō) pōrrēcī.*
- (5) *Æ* In *i, ā* quērō, cādō  
Cōmpōstā mūtāt, ēt *ā lādō.*
- (6) *Aū* In *ō* cōnvertit *plaudō ;*  
*Aū* In *ū* cōmmūtāt *claudō ;*  
*Au* In *ē* sōlūmmōdō  
Ex *audīō* dāt *obedīō.*
- (7) Rēduplicatiō Simplicis  
Exibīt ē Cōmpōsītīs :  
Sic *ā pellō, pēpūli,*  
Fit *impellō, impūli.*  
Sēd *ā discō, pōscō, dō*  
Cōmpōstā sērviāt, ēt *ā stō.*

## § 92. OF PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

- (1) *Con-* fit Prāpōsitiō *cum,*  
Quāndō stāt cōmpōsītum.
- (2) Tāntum In Cōmpōsītīs  
Stāt *ambī, rē, sē, sus, et dis.*
- (3) Prāpōsitiō tērmīnāntem  
Sēpē mūtāt cōnsōnāntem  
Sic, ut *fiāt* sīmīlis  
Cōnsōnāntī Simplicis :  
Ut *ad-fērō* fit *affērō,*  
Ut *in-īnō* fit *illīnō,*  
Ut *ob-petō* fit *oppetō.*
- (4) *N* In *m* cōnvertitē  
Antē *b* vēl antē *p.*  
Ut *cōn-bibō* fit *cōm-bibō,*  
Ut *in-plcō* fit *im-plcō.*
- (5) *AN* *ā* *līnā* trānsfērunt,  
Quā rēlātū lōngā sūnt ;  
Unum hōc nōtāndum *dō,*  
*Ab-fērō* fit *aūfērō,*  
*Ab-fūgīō* fit *aūsfūgīō.*

# SYNTAXIS MINOR,

IN TIRUNCULORUM GRATIAM CONCINNATA.

§ 93. A. I. ADJECTIVA, Participia, et Pronomina cum Substantivis suis genere, numero, et casu concordant: ut,

*Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes.*

1. Substantivum per ellipsin intelligitur: ut,  
*Laborem plerique fugiant.* (supple *homines.*)
2. Neutra Adjectiva Substantivorum vice funguntur: ut,  
*Omnium rerum mors est extremum.*

II. Verbum finitum concordat cum Nominativo numero et personâ: ut,

*Omnia vitia contra naturam pugnant.*

1. Aliquando Infinitivus, vel Locutio aliqua, pro Nominativo ponitur: ut,  
*Non est mentiri meum.*  
*Incertum est quàm longa vita futura sit.*
2. Nominativus Pronominum rarè exprimitur: ut,  
*Nitimur in vetitum semper cupimusque negata.*  
Nisi distinctioni vel emphasi inserviat: ut,  
*Ego reges ejeci: vos tyrannos introducitis.*
3. Impersonalia Nominativum non habent expressum: ut,  
*Tædet ipsum vehementerque paritet.*
4. Personæ Verbi sæpè intelliguntur: ut,  
*Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum.* (supple *est.*)

5. Infinitivus interdum Nominativo postponitur : ut,

*Tum pius Æneas humeris abscindere vestem.*

6. Plerumque autem Infinitivus Accusativo postponitur, præcedens Verbo finito : ut,

*Tradunt Homerum cæcum fuisse.*

- III. Relativum cum Antecedente concordat genere, numero, et personâ ; casu autem construitur cum suâ sententiâ : ut,

*Ea est jucundissima amicitia, quam similitudo morum conjugavit.*

- B. 1. Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu singulare, sæpè habet Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale : ut,

*Pars epulis onerant mensas.*

*Subeunt Tegeæa juvenus Auxilio tardî.*

2. Duo vel plura Nomina singularia habent plerumque Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale : ut,

*Veneno absumpti sunt Hannibal et Philopæmen.*

- a. Verbum plurale cum Nominativo dignioris personæ, Adjectivum verò vel Relativum cum Substantivo dignioris generis, ferè concordat.

- b. Prima persona dignior est quàm secunda, secunda quàm tertia : ut,

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.*

- c. In rebus animatis dignius est masculinum genus quàm femininum : ut,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.*

- d. In rebus inanimis Adjectivum vel Relativum sæpissimè erit in neutro genere : ut,

*Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt.*

3. Verba Copulativa, *sum, fio, videor, vocor*, cum similibus, sive finiti modi, sive infiniti, eundem habent utrinque casum : ut,

*Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur Iambus.*

*Regius agnoscor per rata signa puer.*

*Vobis licet esse beatis.*



4. Verbum, inter duos Nominativos positum, interdum cum posteriore solo concordat: ut,

*Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.*

5. Relativum, inter duo Substantiva ejusdem rei collocatum, cum posteriore solo sæpè concordat: ut,

*Thebæ, quod Bæotiæ caput est.*

6. Substantivo, Pronomini, et interdum Sententiæ, apponi potest Substantivum ejusdem rei in eodem casu: ut,

*Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.*

*Nos consules desumus.*

*Cogitet oratorem institui, rem arduam.*

7. Cum duo Substantiva diversarum rerum concurrunt, alterum in Genitivo ponitur: ut,

*Recubans sub tegmine fagi.*

- § 94. C. I. Verba Transitive regunt Accusativum proprii Objecti: ut,

*Sperne voluptates.*

*Imprimis venerare Deum.*

1. Verba quædam Neutra et Passiva Accusativum admittunt suæ operationis: ut,

*Duram servit servitutem.*

*Claudius aleam ludit.*

2. Verba quædam, rogandi præsertim et docendi, duplicem habent Accusativum: ut,

*Pacem te poscimus omnes.*

*Quid nunc te, asine, literas doceam?*

- a. Plurima ex his in Passivâ Voce retinent Accusativum rei: ut,

*Motus doceri gaudet Ionicos.*

3. Accusativus Respectûs Græco more subjicitur tum Verbis Neutris et Passivis, tum Adjectivis: ut,

*Micat auribus et tremat artus.*

*Inficitur teneras tota rubore genas.*

*Nudæ sunt brachia.*

## 4. Accusativum regunt hæ Præpositiones :

*Ante, apud, ad, adversus,  
Circum, circa, citra, cis,  
Contra, inter, erga, extra,  
Infra, intra, juxta, ob,  
Pene, pone, post, et præter,*

*Prope, propter, per, secundum,  
Supra, versus, ultra, trans ;  
His super, subter, addito,  
Et in, sub, si fit motio.*

## II. Vocativus, Appellati casus, regitur ab Interjectione vel expressâ, vel intellectâ : ut,

*Fili vel o fili.*

1. Interjectiones *en* et *ecce* regunt Accusativum atque Nominativum ; *o, ah, heu, hem, proh*, Accusativum, Nominativum, et Vocativum : ut,

*En miserum hominem !  
Ecce nova turba atque rixa !  
Heu miserande puer !  
Heu vanitas humana !  
Proh Deum atque hominum fidem !  
Proh sancte Jupiter !*

2. Dativum regunt *hei* et *væ* : ut,

*Hei misero mihi !  
Væ tibi, cauidice !*

## III. Omnia ferè Adjectiva et Verba, item Adverbia et Substantiva, regunt Dativum remotioris Objecti, cujus causâ est aut fit aliquid : ut,

*Non solum nobis divites esse volumus.  
Mihi istic nec seritur nec metitur.  
Numa virgines Vestæ legit.  
Urbi pater est ubique maritus.*

- a. Ita *sum* possessivè significans Dativum possidentis habet : ut,

*Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.*

1. Dativum regunt plurima Adjectiva, Adverbia, et Verba, interdum etiam Substantiva, a quibus indicatur

*Commodum, communicatio,  
Compuratio, consecratio,  
Congruentia, consuetudo,  
Auxilium et aptitudo,  
Benignitas, vicinitas,  
Jucunditas, affinitas,*

*Traditio, venia, demonstratio,  
Promissio, fides, et narratio,  
Obsequium, imperium,  
Et quicquid his contrarium ;  
Cum nubo, vaco : cetera  
Sub primâ stabunt regulâ :*

ut, *Patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.  
 Est finitimus oratori poeta.  
 Turba gravis paci placidaque inimica quieti.  
 Congruenter naturæ vivendum est.  
 Culturæ patientem commodat aurem.  
 Quod alii donat sibi detrahit.  
 Hoc mihi confirmavit et persuasit.  
 Nobis spondet fortuna salutem.  
 Philosophia medetur animis.  
 Tibi favemus.  
 Irascor tibi.  
 Victrix causa deis placuit, sed victa Catoni.  
 Parce pio generi.  
 Anguis Sulla apparuit immolanti.  
 O formosæ puer, nimium ne crede colori.  
 Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.  
 Placitone etiam pugnabis amor?  
 Venus nupsit Vulcano.  
 Philosophicæ semper vaco.  
 Nulla fides regni sociis.*

- a. *Communis, similis, proprius, par, atque alienus,*  
*Pluraque, nunc voluere Dativum, nunc Genitivum : ut,*

*Media simillima veris sunt.  
 Deos esse similes tui putas?  
 Propria est nobis mentis agitatio.  
 Proprium est oratoris ornatè dicere.*

- b. *Delecto atque juvo, jubeo, rego, lædo, guberno, Accusativo contra regulam junguntur : ut,*

*Multos castra juvant.  
 Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento.*

- c. *Tempero et moderor nunc Dativum nunc Accusativum habent : ut.*  
*Hic moderatur equos qui non moderabitur iræ.*

2. Dativum fermè regunt Verba composita cum Adverbiis *bene, satis, male* ; et cum Præpositionibus, præsertim his : —

|                       |  |                           |
|-----------------------|--|---------------------------|
| <i>Ad, ante, ab,</i>  |  | <i>Sub, super, ob,</i>    |
| <i>In, inter, de,</i> |  | <i>Con, post, et præ.</i> |

ut, *Ceteris satisfacio semper ; mihi nunquam.  
 Siciliæ quondam Italiæ adhæsit.  
 Gigantes bellum diis intulerunt.  
 Andæm ova gallinis sæpè supponimus.*

- a. *Multa ex his variant constructionem : ut,*  
*Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt.  
 In amore hæc insunt vitia.*

3. Dativus Agentis sequitur Verbalia in *bilis*, et Gerundivum in *us*; interdum Participia perfecta; rarò Verba Passiva: ut,

*Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit.*

*Restat Chremes qui mihi exorandus est.*

*Magnus civis obit et formidatus Othoni.*

*Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli.*

- a. Verba et Participia Passiva plerumque habent Ablativum Agentis cum Præpositione *a* vel *ab*: ut,

*Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.*

*Mors Crassi est a multis defleta.*

4. Dativus Propositi additur Verbo *sum* et multis aliis, vel pro Nominativo vel pro Accusativo: ut,

*Exemplo est magni formica laboris.*

*Nucleum amisi; reliquit pignori putamina.*

- a. Sæpè duplex admittitur Dativus: ut,

*Exilio est avidum mare nautis.*

- IV. Genitivus Possessoris sequitur omnia ferè Substantiva, necnon Verba *sum*, *facio*, *fio*, per ellipsin Substantivi: ut,

*Singulorum opes sunt divitiæ civitatis.*

*Omnia, quæ mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt.*

*Scipio Hispaniam Romanæ ditionis fecit.*

1. *Est* Impersonale præponitur Genitivo, si intelligitur

*Indoles, indicium, | Munus aut officium.*

ut, *Cujusvis hominis est errare.*

*Improbi hominis est mendacio fallere.*

*Est adolescentis majores natu vereri.*

2. Fit etiam ellipsis aliorum Nominum ante Genitivum: ut,

*Hectoris Andromache.* (supple *uxor.*)

*Deiphobe Glauci.* (supple *filia.*)

*Ventum erat ad Vestæ.* (supple *templum.*)

*Hujus video Byrrhiam.* (supple *servum.*)

3. Genitivus Personalis in Possessivo Pronomine latens recipit alterum Genitivum sibi concordantem: ut,

*Respublica meæ unius operâ salva erat.*

*Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos.*

4. Genitivus Qualitatis sequitur Substantiva: ut,

*Ingenui vultus puer ingenuique pudoris.*

Qualitas etiam in Ablativo ponitur: ut,

*Senex promissâ barbâ, horrenti capilla.*

5. Vocabula Partitiva, Numeralia, Comparativa, et Superlativa regunt Genitivum, quocum genere concordant: ut,

*Multæ harum arborum meâ ipsius manu sunt satæ.  
 Utroque vestrâ delector.  
 Sequimur te, sancte deorum.  
 Sullæ centum viginti suorum amisit.  
 Major Neronum.  
 Gallorum fortissimi.  
 Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.  
 Minimè omnium.*

6. Hi Genitivi, *gentium, terrarum*, alique, sequuntur Adverbia *huc*, *ed*, *quò*, *ubi*, similia: ut,

*Migrandum aliquò terrarum arbitror.*

7. Quantitatem significantia Adverbia et Substantiva, item Neutra Adjectiva ac Pronomina, Genitivum regunt: ut,

*Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum.  
 Justitia nihil expetit præmii.  
 Aliquid pristini roboris conservat.  
 Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei.*

8. Genitivum regunt Verbalia in *az*, Participia quædam adjectivè posita, et Adjectiva significantia

*Notitiam, curam, et cupiditatem,  
 Memoriam, metum, crimen, po-  
 testatem,*

*Et quæ contrario sensu stant:  
 Poetæ multa alia dant:*

ut, *Tempus edax rerum.  
 Animus alieni appetens, sui profusus.  
 Nescia mens hominum est fati.  
 Omnes immemorem beneficii oderunt.  
 Fraternal sanguinis insons.  
 Ira est impotens sui.  
 O seri studiorum.*

9. Verba quædam accusandi, absolvendi, damnandi, monendi, regunt Genitivum rei: ut,

*Condemnamus haruspices stultitiæ.  
 Res adversæ admonent nos religionum.*

10. *Memini, recorder, reminiscor, obliviscor*, nunc Genitivum regunt, nunc Accusativum: ut,

*Jubet mortis te meminisse Deus.  
 Dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos.*

11. *Misereor, miseresco*, Genitivo junguntur: ut,

*Nil nostri misere.*

- V. Adjectiva, Verba, et aliquando Substantiva, admittunt Ablativum significantem causam, vel instrumentum, vel modum, vel materiam, vel respectum, vel limitationem qualemcumque : ut,

*Cæptis immanibus effera Dido.  
Oderunt peccare mali formidine pœnæ.  
Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.  
Injuria fit duobus modis, vi aut fraude.  
Animo constamus et corpore.  
Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis.  
Mardonius natione Medus.  
Non grandis natu est, sed tamen jam ætate propectus.*

1. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor*, Ablativum regunt ; *potior*, Ablativum vel Genitivum : ut,

*Fungar vice cotis.  
Cum victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit.  
Numidæ ferinâ carne vescebantur.  
Auro vi potitur.  
Romani signorum potiti sunt.*

2. Adjectiva et Verba, quæ ad copiam egestatemve pertinent, Ablativum regunt ; multa etiam Genitivum : ut,

*Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus.  
Numquam animus motu vacuus est.  
Turpe est diffuere luxuriâ.  
Vacare culpâ maximum est solatium.  
Dices opum, dives pictæ vestis et auri.  
Mancipiis locuples eget æris Cappadocum rex.  
Hæ res vitæ me saturant.*

3. *Opus et usus* Ablativum regunt : ut,

*Ubi res adsunt, quid opus est verbis ?  
Usus est filio viginti minis.*

4. Adjectiva, *dignus, indignus, præditus, fretus, contentus*, item Verbum *dignor*, Ablativum regunt : ut,

*Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori.  
Lentulus est singulari modestiâ præditus.  
Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.*

5. Ablativus Pretii sequitur Verba et Adjectiva significantia *emptionem, venditionem, vel æstimationem* : ut,

*Ego spem pretio non emo.  
Plurimus auro vœnit honos.  
Multorum sanguine victoria stetit.  
Quod non opus est, asse carum est.*

- a. Per Ellipsin usurpantur, omissâ voce *pretio*, Ablativi, *vili*, *parvo*, *minimo*, *nimio*, *magno*, *plurimo*, *duplo*, et *dimidio*; ut,  
*Parvo fames constat, magno fastidium.*

- b. *Æstimatio* rei plerumque Genitivum habet, præsertim ellipticos illos, *magni*, *parvi*, *minimi*, *pluris*, atque *plurimi*: ut,  
*Sapiens dolorem nihili facit.*  
*Voluptatem virtus minimi facit.*  
*Pluris est oculatus testis unus quàm auriti decem.*

- c. Tam *Pretium* quàm *Æstimationem* significant, *pluris*, *minoris*, *tanti*, *quantum*, *maximi*: ut,  
*Emit hortos tanti quanti Pythius voluit.*

6. Ablativus *Differentiæ* jungitur Adjectivis, Adverbiis, et Verbis comparativæ et superlativæ significationis: ut,  
*Sol multis partibus major est quàm luna.*  
*A Cynicis tunicâ distantia dogmata.*

- a. In primis Ablativi elliptici:

*Altero, hoc, eo, quo,*  
*Nihilo et nimio,*

*Dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto,*  
*Paullo, multo, aliquanto:*

ut, *Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa major.*  
*Tanto pessimus omnium poeta,*  
*Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus.*

7. Ablativus *Comparisonis* regitur a Comparativis, sive Adjectivis, sive Adverbiis: ut,

*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.*  
*Puto mortem dedecore leviores.*

- a. *Quàm* eleganter omittitur post *plus*, *amplius*, *minus*: ut,  
*Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi.*

8. Ablativum regunt hæ Præpositiones:

*A, ab, absque, coram, de,*  
*Palam, clam, cum, ex, et e,*  
*Sine, tenus, pro, et præ:*

*His subter, super, addito.*  
*Et in, sub, si fit statio.*

- a. Præpositio in Compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit, quem et extra Compositionem regebat: ut

*Detrudunt naves scopulo.*  
*Te nunc alloquor, Africane.*

- b. Verba *discedendi*, *separandi*, *arcendi*, *removendi*, et similia, omissâ quoque Præpositione, regunt Ablativum: ut,

*Cedes coemptis saltibus et domo.*  
*Populus Atheniensis Phocionem patriâ pepulit.*

- c. Huc refer Ablativum post Verba et Participia Originis, qualia sunt, *natus, prognatus, satus, creatus, ortus* : ut,  
*Atreus Tantalo prognatus, Pelope natus.*  
*Sate sanguine divum.*
- d. *Tenus* vel Genitivum pluralem vel Ablativum regit, et post suum Casum ponitur : ut,  
*Crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent.*  
*Antiochus Tauro tenus regnare jussus est.*
- e. Cum ita subjungitur casibus Pronominum Personalium, et plerumque Relativi, ut ex duobus vocibus una fiat : ut, *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum* vel *quoque, quibuscum*.
9. Substantivum et Participium conjunctim ponuntur in Ablativo, quem Absolutum vocant : ut,  
*Regibus exactis consules creati sunt.*  
*Cesare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem.*  
*Pereunte obsequio imperium etiam intercidit.*
- a. Absolutè etiam ponitur Substantivum cum Substantivo vel Adjectivo, ubi intelligitur Participium *existendi* : ut,  
*Nil desperandum est, Teucro duce et auspice Teucro.*  
*Jamque cinis, vivis fratribus, Hector erut.*

§ 95. D. I. 1. Definitio Temporis in Ablativo ponitur, si rogatur *quando* vel *intra quantum tempus* : ut,

*Hieme omnia bella conquiescunt.*  
*Quicquid est, biduo sciemus.*

2. In definiendo Tempore multus est Præpositionum usus : ut,

*Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit.*  
*De die. (id est, ante finem diei.)*  
*De nocte. (id est, ante finem noctis.)*  
*De multâ nocte. (id est, multo ante finem noctis.)*  
*Sub vesperum. (id est, appropinquante vespero.)*  
*Diem ex die expecto.*

3. *Quanto tempore abhinc, antè* vel *pòst*, interdum per Ablativum, interdum per Accusativum dicitur : ut,

*Comitia jam abhinc triginta diebus erant habita.*  
*Hoc factum est fermè abhinc biennium.*

4. Duratio temporis, ubi rogatur *quamdiu*, frequentius in Accusativo ponitur, rarius in Ablativo : ut,

*Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Athenis.*  
*Imperium Assyrii mille trecentis annis tenere.*



II. 1. Locus, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, vel sine Præpositione, vel longè frequentius cum Præpositione *in*: ut,  
*Ibam fortè viâ Sacrâ.*  
*In Lemno uxorem ducit.*

2. Oppidi nomen, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, modò sit vel tertiæ Declinationis, vel pluralis Numeri: ut,  
*Alexander Babylone mortuus est.*  
*Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis.*  
*Thebis nutritus an Argis.*

3. Sed in Genitivo ponitur, si et Declinationis est primæ vel secundæ, et singularis Numeri: ut,  
*Quid Romæ faciam? mentiri nescio.*  
*Is habitat Miletî.*

4. Loci nomen a Præpositione ferè regitur post Verbum motûs: ut,  
*Profectus est in Galliam.*  
*Ab Europâ petis Asiam.*

5. Oppidi nomen, ad quod itur, in Accusativo sine Præpositione ferè ponitur: ut,  
*Regulus Carthaginem rediit.*

6. Oppidi nomen, ex quo itur, in Ablativo sine Præpositione ferè ponitur: ut,  
*Demaratus fugit Corintho.*

7. Sed et Oppida sæpè capiunt, et alia Nomina omittunt Præpositionem post Verbum motûs: ut,  
*A Brundisio nulla fama venerat.*  
*Pars Scythiam et rapidum Cretæ veniemus Oaxen.*

8. *Humus, domus, et rus oppidorum constructionem imitantur: ut,*  
*Cadmus spargit humi, mortalia semina, dentes.*  
*Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.*  
*Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ.*  
*Video rurs redeuntem senem.*

III. 1. Spatium Distantiæ frequentius in Accusativo, interdum in Ablativo ponitur: ut,  
*Aberam ab Amanò iter unius diei.*  
*Æsculapii templum quinque millibus passuum ab Epidauro distat.*

2. Spatium Progressionis in Accusativo ponitur: ut,  
*Millia tum pransi tria repimus.*

3. Spatium Dimensionis frequentissimè in Accusativo, interdum in Ablativo, interdum in Genitivo ponitur: ut,

*Erant muri Babylonis ducentos pedes alti.  
Longum sesquipede, latum pede.  
Areas latas pedum dentum facito.*

---

- § 96. E. I. 1. *Libet, licet, liquet*, et pleraque Impersonalia, regunt Dativum: ut,

*Ne libeat tibi quod non licet.  
Savis inter se convenit uris.*

2. *Piget, pudet, pœnitet, tædet* atque *miseret*, regunt Accusativum Personæ cum Genitivo Rei, vel cum Infinitivo: ut,

*Miseret te aliorum: tui te nec miseret, nec pudet.  
Me civitatis morum piget tædetque.  
Eos partim scelerum, partim ineptiarum pœnitet.  
Quem pœnitet peccasse, pœnè est innocens.*

3. *Delectat, juvat, decet, dedecet, oportet*, Accusativum capiunt: ut,

*Me juvat in primâ coluisse Heliconæ juventâ.  
Oratorem irasci minimè decet.  
Legem brevem esse oportet.*

4. *Pertinet, attinet*, Præpositionem *ad* cum Accusativo sumunt: ut,

*Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari.  
Profundat, perdat, pereat, nihil ad me attinet.*

5. *Interest et rēfert* Genitivum admittunt: ut,

*Interest omnium rectè facere.  
Rēfert compositionis, quæ quibus anteponas.*

6. Cum his Verbis junguntur, loco Pronominum Personalium, Ablativi feminini, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*, subaudita voce *re*: ut,

*Et tuâ et meâ interest te valere.  
Quid rēfert meâ, cui serviam?*

7. Adduntur his Verbis Genitivi Æstimationis, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris*: ut,

*Utriusque nostrum magni interest, ut te videam.  
Hoc non pluris rēfert quam si imbrem in cribrum geras.*

8. Verba Neutra in Passivâ Voce impersonaliter usurpantur pro quibuslibet personis: ut,

*Ab omnibus reclamatum est. (scil. omnes reclamârunt.)  
Quid agitur? statur. (scil. statur a nobis, sive stamus.)*

II. 1. Activa sententia ferè omnis ita in Passivam converti potest, ut Nominativus Activæ sententiæ fiat in Passivâ Ablativus Agentis.

(A.) Si Activæ sententiæ Verbum Accusativum habet propioris Objecti, Verbum in Passivâ personale erit, Accusativo Activæ in Nominativum Passivæ transeunte : ut

ACT. *Egregiè consul rem gessit.*

PASS. *Egregiè ab consule res gesta est.*

(B.) Sin minus, Verbum Passivæ impersonale erit, et vel sine casu stabit, vel eundem casum reget, quem in Activâ regebat : ut,

ACT. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*

PASS. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.*

ACT. *Medicinæ nos indigemus.*

PASS. *Medicinæ a nobis indiget.*

2. Ubi nihil ambigui esse potest, supprimitur Ablativus Agentis post Impersonalia Passiva : ut,

*Itur in antiquam silvâ.*

3. Hinc apparet, eosdem casus a Passivis Verbis regi, atque ab Activis, præterquàm unum Accusativum propioris Objecti.

4. *Vapulo, veneo, exulo, liceo, fio*, cum aliis quibusdam, vi Passivâ construuntur : ut,

*Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit.*

*Malo a cive spoliari, quàm ab hoste vñire.*

*Torqueor, infesto ne vir ab hoste cadat.*

§ 97. F. I. Infinitivus cum Gerundiis et Supinis Substantivum Verbi efficit.

1. Infinitivus multis Verbis ac Participiis adjungitur et poeticè Adjectivis : ut,

*Invidere non cadit in sapientem.*

*Videor pios errare per lucos.*

*Solent diu cogitare qui magna volunt gerere.*

*Et cantare pares et respondere parati.*

2. Pro Accusativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *dum* post Præpositiones : ut,

*Breve tempus satis est longum ad bene vivendum.*

*Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt.*

3. Pro Genitivo ponitur Gerundium in *di* post Adjectiva Substantiva: ut,

*Cupidus sum satisfaciendi reipublicæ.  
Thucydides omnes dicendi artificio vincit.*

4. Pro Dativo ponitur Gerundium in *do* post Adjectiva et Verba nonnulla: ut,

*Crassus disserendo par esse non potuit.*

5. Pro Ablativo ponitur Gerundium in *do* Causam, Instrumentum, aut Modum significans, vel cum Præpositionibus *ab, de, ex, in, cum*: ut,

*Nihil agendo homines male facere discunt.  
Jovem a juvando nominamus.*

6. Gerundia Activè significant: si verò Transitiva sunt, eorum constructio Passivè repræsentari potest, imò frequentius repræsentatur, per Participium in *du*, quod inde Gerundivi nomen accipit.

7. Gerundiva constructio ejusmodi est, ut Substantivum in Gerundii casum trahatur, cum quo concordet Gerundivum: ut,

*E terrâ ignem elicimus ad colendos agros.  
Occasio videbatur rerum novandarum.*

8. Ad Necessitatem Passivè significandam Gerundivum in Neutro Genere impersonaliter adhibetur: ut,

*Civium bonis est a vobis consulendum.  
Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.*

- II. 1. Supinum in *um* postponitur, ut Accusativus, Verbis motum significantibus: ut,

*Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.  
Scitatum oracula Phæbi mittimus.*

2. Supinum in *u* postponitur, ut Ablativus Respectûs, tum multis Adjectivis, tum Substantivis *fas, nefas, opus*: ut,

*Nil dictu fœdum visuque hæc limina tangat,  
Intra quæ puer est.  
Ecce (nefas visu) serpens altaribus exit.*

- III. Participia, Gerundia, et Supinum in *um*, regunt casus suorum Verborum: ut,

*Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti.*

- 
- § 98. G. 1. Neutra Adjectiva utriusque Numeri ponuntur interdum Adverbialiter, præsertim apud poetæ: ut,

*Serviet æternum qui parvo nesciet uti.  
Asper, acerba tuens, retro redit.*

2. Conjunctiones Copulativæ et Disjunctivæ similes Casus, Modos, et Tempora connectunt: ut,

*Miratur portas strepitumque et strata viarum.  
Virtus nec eripi nec surripi potest.*

*Nisi alia constructionis ratio intercedat.*

- H. 1. *Nē*, prohibitiva Conjunctio, Imperativo vel Subjunctivo Modo jungitur: ut,

*Ne qua meis esto dictis mora.  
Ne conferas culpam in me.*

2. Subjunctivum exigunt hæ Conjunctiones:

|                              |                |                   |
|------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| <i>Ut</i> (that)             | <i>Dum</i>     | } (provided that) |
| <i>Nē</i> (lest, that — not) | <i>Modo</i>    |                   |
| <i>Quo</i> (in order that)   | <i>Dummodo</i> |                   |
| <i>Quominus</i> (but that)   | <i>Tanquam</i> |                   |
| <i>Quin</i> (but that)       | <i>Velut</i>   | } (as if)         |
| <i>Quum</i> (since)          | <i>Ceu</i>     |                   |
| <i>Licet</i>                 | <i>Quasi</i>   | } (I wish that)   |
| <i>Quamvis</i> } (although)  | <i>Utinam</i>  |                   |
| <i>Ut</i>                    | <i>O si</i>    |                   |

3. Subjunctivum vel Indicativum pro re natâ capiunt hæ Conjunctiones:

|                              |                                 |                 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Quum</i> }                | <i>Ante — quam</i> }            | } (before that) |
| <i>Ubi</i> }                 | <i>Prius — quam</i> }           |                 |
| <i>Ut</i> }                  | <i>Post — quam</i> (after that) | }               |
| <i>Dum</i> }                 | <i>Si</i> (if)                  |                 |
| <i>Donec</i> }               | <i>Nisi</i> (unless)            | } (although)    |
| <i>Quoad</i> }               | <i>Etsi</i>                     |                 |
| <i>Quoties</i> (as often as) | <i>Etiam si</i>                 |                 |
| <i>Simul ac</i> (as soon as) | <i>Tametsi</i>                  |                 |

4. Indicativum plerumque capiunt hæ Conjunctiones, nisi ratio loci Subjunctivum postulet:

|                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Quod</i> (that, because)   | <i>Ut</i> (from the time when) |
| <i>Quia</i> (because)         | <i>Dum</i> }                   |
| <i>Quoniam</i> (since)        | <i>Donec</i> }                 |
| <i>Quando</i> (when, since)   | <i>Quoad</i> }                 |
| <i>Siquidem</i> (inasmuch as) | <i>Quamquam</i> (although)     |

5. *Quamvis* cum Indicativo reperitur apud historicos et poetas: ut,  
*Quamvis ingenio non valet, arte valet.*

6. Relativum, *qui, quæ, quod*, Subjunctivum regit, ubi significat *quum, quamvis, ut, vel talis ut*: ut,

*Miseret tui me, qui hunc facias inimicum tibi.  
Literas misi quibus et placarem eum et monerem.  
Est qui vinci possit.  
Quis est qui non oderit protervæ pueritiæ?*

7. Pronominibus et Particulis interrogandi, subordinatè positis, Subjunctivus additur : ut,

*Ipse quis sit, utrum sit, an non sit, id quoque nescit.*

Talia sunt :

*Quis, quantus, qualis, qui, quot, quotus, unde, ubi, quando,  
Quàm, quamobrem, quare, cur, quomodo, num, nē, ut, an, utrum.*

8. Relativum vel Conjunctio, quum subordinatur Infinitivo vel Subjunctivo, Subjunctivum regit : ut,

*Cæsar ad me scripsit, gratissimum sibi esse quod quieverim.  
Melior ut Cæsar mihi concedat ut absim, quum aliquid in senatu  
contra Cnæum agatur.*

9. Conjunctio intelligitur aliquando : ut, -

*Philosophia servias oportet. (supple ut.)*

*Quæram justum sit necne poeta. (supple utrum.)*

*Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes. (supple si.)*

*Naturam expellas furcâ, tamen usque recurret. (supple etsi.)*

**FIRST**

**RULES OF CONSTRUING AND PARSING:**

**FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS.**

---

§ 99. A. As every independent Sentence *must* have

- I. A Verb in a Proper Mood, expressed or understood ;
- II. A Subject in the Nominative Case, expressed or understood ; with which the Verb agrees (see § 101.):

So observe more particularly :

(a) A Substantive *may* have any of these Adjuncts :

- (1) Adjectives agreeing with it ;
- (2) Substantives in apposition to it ;
- (3) A Genitive governed by it ;
- (4) A Preposition and Case depending on it.

(b) An Adjective *may* have any of these Adjuncts :

- (1) An Adverb qualifying it ;
- (2) Cases governed by it ;
- (3) A Preposition and Case depending on it.

(c) A Verb *may* have any of these Adjuncts :

- (1) An Adverb qualifying it ;
- (2) Cases governed by it ;
- (3) Prepositions (with their Cases) depending on it ;
- (4) An Infinitive depending on it.

B. Therefore, in order to construe a simple Sentence :

I. Find its Verb, which must be in a Proper Mood.

*Obs.* If no such Verb appear, *Est* or *sunt* is probably understood.

II. Find its Subject, which will be a Nominative Case of the same Number and Person as the Verb, answering the question *who* or *what* ?

*Obs.* 1. If no such Nominative appear, the Pronoun agreeing with the Verb must generally be understood as the Subject.

*Obs.* 2. If an Adjective appear in the Nominative, but no Substantive, a Substantive with which it agrees is generally supplied in English: usually *man* or *men*, if the Adjective is Masculine; *thing* or *things*, if it is Neuter.

III. Find the Adjuncts of the Subject, if any.

IV. Find the Adjuncts of the Verb, seeing first if it has an Adverb.

*Obs.* In order to find its other Adjuncts, see whether the Verb is Copulative or not. If Copulative, the chief Adjunct will be a Predicate Substantive or Adjective. If not Copulative, the Adjuncts, if any, will be some of those above-mentioned (c). See § 101.

V. Having done this, construe into English first the Subject with its agreeing Adjective, and their Adjuncts; then the Verb with its Adverb; then its other Adjuncts.

*Note.* Generally a Simple Sentence contains only one Verb of a Proper Mood: a Compound Sentence contains two or more such Verbs. But, when a Verb is followed by an Accusative and Infinitive, the Sentence is compound.

*Obs.* A Vocative Case may be construed at the beginning of the Sentence, or in some other convenient place.

§ 100. Observe the following Rules for Parsing the words of a Sentence, whether in writing or by mouth. State what Part of Speech any word is, and mention, if

(1) A Substantive, { Its Case—Number—Nom. Sing.—Genitive Termination—Declension—Gender  
—Word it agrees with or is governed by.

Give the Rule for its Gender, if desired, from the Accidence: and the Rule for its agreement or government, from the Syntax.

Decline it, if desired, through both Numbers.

*Obs.* It is useful, with a Substantive, to decline the Adjective Pronoun *meus*, in order to show the Gender. Thus, when required to decline *ager*, a *field*, say—



|      | <i>Sing.</i>                 |  | <i>Plur.</i>                        |
|------|------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| Nom. | Ager meus, <i>my field</i>   |  | Agri mei, <i>my fields</i>          |
| Gen. | Agri mei, <i>of my field</i> |  | Agrorum meorum, <i>of my fields</i> |
| Dat. | Agro meo, <i>to my field</i> |  | Agris meis, <i>to my fields</i>     |
| Acc. | Agrum meum, <i>my field</i>  |  | Agnos meos, <i>my fields</i>        |
| Voc. | Ager mi, <i>O my field</i>   |  | Agri mei, <i>O my fields</i>        |
| Abl. | Agro meo, <i>by my field</i> |  | Agris meis, <i>by my fields</i>     |

And in like manner—

Mensa mea, *my table.* Opus meum, *my work, &c. &c.*

- (2) An Adjective, { Its Case—Gender—Number—Nom.  
Sing.—What declined like?—What it  
agrees with?

Decline it, if required.

- (3) a. A Verb in a Proper Mood { Its Person—Tense—Mood—Voice—  
Verb it comes from—Kind of Verb—  
Conjugation—What Nom. it agrees  
with?

Conjugate it, if required, according to § 44.

Give the Rule, if required, for its Perfect and Supine; and the Syntax Rule for its construction.

- b. An Infinitive { Tense—Voice—Verb it comes from—  
Kind of Verb—Conjunction—What go-  
vernated by?

- c. Gerund or Supine, } Verb it comes from, &c., &c.

Conjugate and give Rules for b. and c. as for a.

- d. Participle, { Case—Gender—Number—Nom. Sing.  
—Tense—Voice—Verb it comes from  
—Kind of Verb—Conjugation—What  
it agrees with?

Decline, Conjugate, and give Rules, as above, (2) (3) a.

- (4) Pronoun Relative, { What Antecedent?—How it agrees  
with its Antecedent?—What Case?—  
Why?

Obs. Personal Pronouns follow the rules of Substantives: Possessive those of Adjectives: Demonstrative Pronouns may be used either as Substantives or Adjectives.

- (5) Adverb, What word it qualifies?

## (6) Preposition,      What word it governs ?

*Note.* When the learner is somewhat advanced, he must also state, in parsing, the derivation and composition of words, the government of Moods, &c. &c.

**EXAMPLE.**—It is required to construe and parse the words :  
 Ad firmandum corpus multum conducit tempestiva animi  
 remissio, quæ negligi non potest impune.

1. These words contain two connected simple sentences, or one compound sentence.

(1) Verb of first sentence is                      *conducit* (Third Pers. Sing.)

(2) Subject Nom. of first sentence is *remissio*.

(3) Adjuncts to the Subject are,

- |                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| a. Agreeing Adjective, | <i>tempestiva</i> . |
| b. Genitive Case,      | <i>animi</i> .      |

(4) Adjuncts to the Verb are,

- |                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| a. Adverb,                | <i>multum</i> .              |
| b. Preposition with Case, | <i>ad firmandum corpus</i> . |

(1) Verb of second sentence is                      *potest*.

(2) Subject Nomin. of second sentence is *quæ*.

(3) Adjuncts to the Subject *quæ*,                      *none*.

(4) Adjuncts to the verb are,

- |                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| a. Adverb,     | <i>non</i> .     |
| b. Infinitive, | <i>negligi</i> . |
| c. Adverb,     | <i>impune</i> .  |

2. Construe the words in this order :

|                              |  |                       |  |                        |  |                                   |  |                   |
|------------------------------|--|-----------------------|--|------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|--|-------------------|
| <i>Tempestiva remissio</i>   |  | <i>animi</i> ,        |  | <i>quæ</i>             |  | <i>non potest</i>                 |  | <i>negligi</i>    |
| <i>Seasonable relaxation</i> |  | <i>of-mind,</i>       |  | <i>which</i>           |  | <i>can-not</i>                    |  | <i>be omitted</i> |
|                              |  | <i>impune,</i>        |  | <i>conducit multum</i> |  | <i>ad firmandum corpus</i> .      |  |                   |
|                              |  | <i>with-impunity,</i> |  | <i>conduces much</i>   |  | <i>to strengthening the-body.</i> |  |                   |

3. Parse thus, taking the words in order of construing :

(1.) *Tempestiva*. Adjective. Nom. Fem. Sing. from *tempestivus*, like *bonus*. Agrees with *remissio* by Rule § 93. A. I.

(2.) *Remissio*. Substantive. Nom. Sing. Third Decl. Fem. (*onis*). Subject of the Verb *conducit*. Rule for its Gender § 73. (a) (2).

- (3.) *Animi*. Substantive. Gen. Sing. from *animus* (i) *mind*.  
Second Decl. Masc. Governed by remissio by  
Rule § 93. B. 7. Rule for Gender, § 72.
- (4.) *Quæ*. Relative Pronoun. Agrees with Antecedent remissio, being Fem. Sing. Third Pers. Rule,  
§ 93. III. Nominative to the Verb *potest*.
- (5.) *Non*. Adverb. Qualifies the Verb *potest*.
- (6.) *Potest*. Verb. Third Pers. Pres. Indic. Act. from the  
Irregular Neuter Verb *possum* (*potes*, &c.),  
§ 61. Agrees with its Nom. *quæ* by Rule  
§ 93. II.
- (7.) *Negligi*. Verb. Pres. Infin. Pass. from the Transitive  
Verb *negligo* (*is*), *I-neglect*. Third Conj. Is  
governed by the Verb *potest* by Rule § 97. F.  
I. 1. Conjugate *negligo*, *negligis*, *neglexi*, &c.  
Rule for Preterperfect and Supine, § 91. 4. N.  
§ 82. (b).
- (8.) *Impune*. Adverb. Qualifies the Verb *negligi* (or *potest*).
- (9.) *Conducit*. Verb. Third Pers. Pres. Indic. Act. from the  
Neuter Verb *conduco* (*is*), *I-conduce*. Third  
Conj. Agrees with its Nominative Case remissio  
by Rule § 93. II. Conjugate *conduco*,  
*conducis*, *conduxi*, &c. Rule for Preterperfect  
and Supine, § 82. (b).
- (10.) *Multum*. Adverb. Qualifies the Verb *conducit*.
- (11.) *Ad*. Preposition. Governs the Accus. Case *corpus*.
- (12.) *Firmandum*. Participle. Acc. Neut. Sing. from *firmandus*,  
Part. Gerundive Pass. from the Transitive Verb  
*firmo* (*as*); *I-strengthen*; First Conj. Agrees  
with *corpus* by Rule § 97. I. 7.
- (13.) *Corpus*. Substantive. Acc. Sing. from *corpus* (*oris*).  
Third Decl. Neut. Governed by *ad*, by Rule  
§ 94. V. 8. Rule for Gender, § 75. (c).

*Note.* Each rule, when required, must be repeated at full: each Substantive, when required, be declined with *meus*; and each Verb be conjugated according to § 44.

# SYNTAXIS, SIVE SENTENTIARUM CONSTRUCTIO.

---

## PARS I. DE SIMPLICI SENTENTIA.

---

### § 101. PREFATORY EXCURSION.

SYNTAX teaches the correct arrangement of words in sentences. The simplest sentence is the Proposition or Enuntiation of a single thought: as, *homo est mortalis*, man is mortal. The simplest form of Sentence has three members:

1. *Subjectum*, the Subject; that is, the person, thing, or notion concerning which something is predicated, or declared.
2. *Prædicatum*, the Predicate; that which is predicated (*prædicatur*), or declared, concerning the Subject.
3. *Copula*, or the Link, which shows the connection between the Subject and its Predicate, and so constructs the sentence.

(1) The Subject must be a Substantive, or that which possesses the force of a Substantive: as *homo*, man; *ego*, I; *Gallus*, a Gaul; *errare*, to err; *tu*, thou.

(2) The Predicate, when distinct from the Copula, must be a Substantive, Adjective, Participle, or Adjectival Pronoun; as, *animal*, an animal; *mortalis*, mortal; *victus*, conquered; *oster*, ours: or a Preposition with its case (equivalent to a noun); as *sine vitiis*, *pro consule*.

(3) The Copula, when distinct from the Predicate, is generally some finite form of the Verb of being, *sum*.

Examples of Simple Sentences in which the three members are distinct:—

| SUBJECT.                | COPULA.            | PREDICATE.        |
|-------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>Homines</i> ..... | <i>sunt</i> .....  | <i>animalia</i> . |
| Men.....                | are .....          | animals.          |
| 2. <i>Ego</i> .....     | <i>sum</i> .....   | <i>mortalis</i> . |
| I .....                 | am.....            | mortal.           |
| 3. <i>Galli</i> .....   | <i>erant</i> ..... | <i>victi</i> .    |
| The Gauls .....         | were .....         | conquered.        |
| 4. <i>Errare</i> .....  | <i>est</i> .....   | <i>nostrum</i> .  |
| To err .....            | is .....           | ours.             |

| SUBJECT.           | COPULA.          | PREDICATE.          |
|--------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| 5. <i>Th</i> ..... | <i>es</i> .....  | <i>pro consula.</i> |
| <i>Thou</i> .....  | <i>art</i> ..... | <i>Proconsul.</i>   |

But, in general, the Predicate and Copula are blended together in one finite Predicative Verb: as

| SUBJECT.             | PREDICATE WITH COPULA.          |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Ego</i> .....     | <i>disc-o.</i>                  |
| <i>I</i> .....       | <i>learn (am learning).</i>     |
| <i>Homines</i> ..... | <i>spira-nt.</i>                |
| <i>Men</i> .....     | <i>breathe (are breathing).</i> |

Here, strictly speaking, the crude Forms of the Verbs (*disc-*, *spira-*) are the Predicates, and the Endings (*-o*, *-nt*), are the Copulas. And when the Subject is understood from the Ending, a single Verb may be a complete sentence. Thus, the famous despatch of Cæsar, *Veni, vidi, vici* (I came, I saw, I conquered), contains three distinct sentences, each consisting of one word only.

*Obs.* 1. When an Adjective qualifies a Substantive without being joined to it by a Copula, it is said (*attribui, attributum esse*) to be an Attributive or Epithet. Thus, in the sentence, *Vir bonus laudatur* (a good man is praised), *bonus* is an Epithet; but in *Vir est bonus* (the man is good), *bonus* is the Predicate.

*Obs.* 2. The Infinitive, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, are called *Verbum Infinitum*: all the other forms of the Verb, any of which can make a complete sentence, are called *Verbum Finitum*.

*Obs.* 3. Objectum, the Object, is that person or thing upon which an action is directed: as, *Parentes amant liberos*, where *liberos* is the Object. Sometimes there are two Objects, a nearer and a remoter: as, *Pater librum filio dat*; where *librum* is the nearer Object, *filio* the remoter.

*Obs.* 4. Copulative Verbs are those which connect a Subject and distinct Predicate. Of these Verbs *sum* is the chief: but others also have a Copulative use, as *forem, fio, existo, evado, maneo, audio, nascor, vidcor*; and Passive Verbs of *making, naming, declaring, choosing, thinking, finding, &c.*: as *efficior, appellor, torcor, nuncupor, dicor, feror, declaror, creor, designor, eligor, inscribor, existimor, putor, credor, agnoscor, habeor, invenior, reperior, &c.*

## DE CONCORDANTIIS.

### CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

#### *Adjectivi cum Substantivo.*

§ 102. *Regula Generalis.*—Adjectiva, Participia, et Pronomina, sive attributa sive prædicata, cum Substantivis suis genere, numero, et casu concordant: ut,

*Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos ;  
Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes.* — OVIDIUS.

*Obs.* 1. Substantivum per ellipsin intelligitur : ut,  
*Laborem plerique fugiunt.* (supple *homines.*) — CICERO.  
*Cornix a levâ canit, corvus a dextrâ.* (supple *manu.*) — CIC.

*Obs.* 2. Neutra Adjectiva Substantivorum vice funguntur :  
ut,  
*Omnium rerum mors est extremum.* — CIC.  
*Honestum et utile pugnare aliquando videntur.* — CIC.  
*Verecundâ laxamus seria mensâ.* — PERSIUS.



## CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

### *Verbi cum Nominativo Subjecti.*

§ 103. *R. G.* — Verbum finitum concordat cum Nominativo numero et personâ : ut,

*Omnia vitia contra naturam pugnant.* — SENECA.  
*Sera nimis vita est crastina.* — MARTIALIS.

*Obs.* Aliquando Infinitivus, vel continuata Locutio, vel Adverbium cum Genitivo, pro Nominativo ponitur : ut,  
*Non est mentiri meum.* — TERENTIUS.  
*Incertum est quàm longa nostrum cujusque vita futura sit.* — CIC.  
*Parum in eo putabatur esse animi.* — CIC.

### A. DE ELLIPSI NOMINATIVI.

§ 104. *Obs.* 1. Nominativus Pronominum rarè exprimitur : ut,  
*Nitimur in vetitum semper cupimusque negata.* — OV.

(*Obs.*) Nisi distinctioni vel emphasi inserviat : ut,  
*Ego reges ejeci : vos tyrannos introducitis.* — CIC.

*Obs.* 2. *Dicendi, narrandi, et appellandi* Verba tertiæ personæ pluralis Nominativum *homines* sæpè habent intellectum : ut,

*Quod aiunt, auribus teneo lupum.* — TER.

*Obs.* 3. Impersonalia Nominativum non habent expressum : ut,

*Tædet ipsum vehementerque pœnitet.* — CIC.

(*Obs.*) Multa verò, quæ Impersonalia vocantur, Nominativum aliquem habent intellectum : ut,

*Jam advesperascit.* (supple *dies.*) — CIC.

## B. DE ELLIPSI VERBI.

§ 105. *Obs.* 1. Personæ præsentis Verbi *sum* sæpè intelliguntur: ut,  
*Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum.* (supple *est.*) — CIC.

*Obs.* 2. Infinitivus interdum Nominativo postponitur: ut,  
*Tum pius Æneas humeris abscindere vestem.* — VIRG.

(*Obs.*) Plerumque autem Infinitivus Accusativo postponitur,  
 præcedente Verbo finito: ut,  
*Tradunt Homerum cæcum fuisse.* — CIC.



## CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

*Relativi cum Antecedente.*

§ 106. *R. G.* — Relativum cum Antecedente concordat  
 genere, numero, et personâ: casu autem construi-  
 tur cum suâ sententiâ: ut,

*Ea est jucundissima amicitia, quam similitudo  
 morum conjugavit.* — CIC.

*Obs.* 1. Si Sententia pro Antecedente ponitur, Relativum est  
 in neutro genere: ut,

*In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est  
 primum.* — TER.

*Obs.* 2. Interdum Antecedens in possessivo Pronomine in-  
 cluditur: ut,

*Omnes laudare fortunas meas  
 Qui natum haberem tati ingenio præditum.* (sci-  
 licet, *fortunas mei quæ.*) — TER.

§ 107. *Nota.* — Relativum, *Qui, quæ, quod*, plerumque considerari  
 debet tanquam positum inter duos casus unius Substan-  
 tivi, sive expressos sive suppressos: cum antecedente  
 conveniet in genere et numero: cum sequente etiam in  
 casu, sicut Adjectivum cum Substantivo.

*Obs.* 1. Ambo Casus interdum exprimuntur: ut,

*Erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exire possent.* — CÆSAR.

*Obs.* 2. Plerumque supprimitur Casus posterior: ut,

*Animum rege, qui, nisi paret,  
 Imperat.* (scilicet *qui animus.*) — HORATIUS.

*Obs.* 3. Interdum prior: ut,

*Sic tibi dent nymphæ quæ levet unda sitim* (scil. *undam quæ  
 unda.*) — OV.

Obs. 4. Interdum uterque: ut,

*Sunt quibus in satirâ videor nimis acer.* (scil. *homines quibus hominibus.*)—HON.



## SUPPLEMENTUM CONCORDANTIARUM.

### A. DE SYNESI.

§ 108. Synësis est ea constructionis ratio, quæ ad sensum vocabulorum, non ad formam, spectat.

R. G. I. — Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu singulare, sæpè habet Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale: ut,

*Pars epulis onerant mensas.* — VIRGILIUS.

*Clamor inde populi, mirantium quid rei esset.* — LIVIUS.

*Cæsar equitatum præmittit, qui hostes observent.* — CÆS.

R. G. II. — Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu neutrum vel femininum, interdum habet Adjectivum aut Relativum diversi generis: ut,

*Capita conjurationis securi percussi sunt.* — LIV.

*Ubi est is scelus, qui me perdidit?* — TER.

*Subeunt Tegeæa juventus*

*Auxilio tardi.* — STATIUS.

### B. DE PLURIBUS NOMINIBUS IN SUBJECTO.

§ 109. R. G. I. — Duo vel plura Nomina singularia conjuncta habent plerumque Adjectivum, Verbum, vel Relativum plurale: ut,

*Veneno absumpti sunt Hannibal et Philopæmen.* — LIV.

§ 110. R. G. II. — Si Nomina illa singularia diversarum sunt personarum vel generum, Verbum plurale cum Nomina-tivo dignioris personæ, Adjectivum verò vel Relativum cum Substantivo dignioris generis, ferè concordat.

(a) Prima persona dignior est quàm secunda, secunda quàm tertia: ut,

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.* — CIC.

(b) In rebus animatis dignius est masculinum genus quàm femininum: ut,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.* — TER.

(c) In rebus verò inanimis Adjectivum vel Relativum sæpissimè erit in neutro genere: ut,

*Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt.* — SALLUSTIUS.



(Obs.) Verbum haud rarè cum proximo Substantivo concordat : ut,

*Religio et fides anteponatur amicitiae.* — CIC.

*Convicta est Messalina et Silius.* — TACITUS.

### C. DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM COPULATIVORUM.

§ 111. *R. G.*—Verba Copulativa, sive finiti modi, sive iufiniti, eundem habent utrinque casum : ut,

*Si spes est expectatio boni, mali expectationem esse necesse est metum.* — CIC.

*Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur Iambus.* — HOR.

*Regius agnoscor per rata signa puer.* — OV.

*Vobis licet esse beatis.* — HOR.

§ 112. *Obs. 1.* Verbum, inter duos Nominativos positum, interdum cum posteriore solo concordat : ut,

*Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.* — TER.

*Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda.* — CIC.

*Obs. 2.* Relativum, inter duo Substantiva ejusdem rei collocatum, cum posteriore solo sæpè concordat : ut,

*Animal plenum rationis, quem vocamus hominem.* — CIC.

*Theba, quod Bæotia caput est.* — LIV.

### D. DE APPOSITIONE.

§ 113. *R. G.*—Substantivo, Pronomini, et interdum Sententiæ, apponi potest Substantivum ejusdem rei in eodem casu : ut,

*Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.* — OV.

*Nos consules desumus.* — CIC.

*Cogitet oratorem institui, rem arduam.* — CIC.

*Not.* — Cum duo Substantiva diversarum rerum concurrunt, alterum in Genitivo ponitur : ut,

*Recubans sub tegmine fagi.* — VIRG.

## DE RECTIONE CASUUM.

### ACCUSATIVUS.

§ 114. Accusativus est casus propioris Objecti.

*R. G. I.*—Verba Transitive regunt Accusativum propioris Objecti : ut,

*Sperne voluptates.* — HOR.

*Imprimis venerare Deum.* — VIRG.

*Percontatorem fugito.* — HOR.

*Obs. 1.* Verba quædam Neutra et Passiva Accusativum admittunt suæ operationis : ut,

*Duram servit servitutem.* — PLAUTUS.

*Claudius aleam lusit.* — SÆTTONIUS.

§ 115. *Obs. 2.* Verba Transitiva, quæ in Voce Passivâ Copulativa fiunt, duplicem habent Accusativum, unum Objectivum, alterum Prædicativum : ut,

*Ciceronem populus consulem declaravit.* — CIC.

*Hannibal Philippum hostem reddidit Romanis.* — NÆPOS.

§ 116. *Obs. 3.* Verba quædam rogandi et docendi duplicem habent Accusativum, unum personæ, alterum verò rei : ut,

*Pacem te poscimus omnes.* — VIRG.

*Quid nunc te, asine, literas doceam ?* — CIC.

Et interdum celo : ut,

*Ea ne me celet consuefeci filium.* — TER.

(*Obs.*) Eadem verba in Passivâ Voce retinent Accusativum rei : ut,

*Is primus rogatus est sententiam.* — LIV.

*Motus doceri gaudet Ionicos.* — HOR.

§ 117. *Obs. 4.* Accusativus Respectûs Græco more subijcitur tum Verbis Neutris et Passivis tum Adjectivis : ut,

*Micat auribus et tremit artus.* — VIRG.

*Inficitur teneras tota rubore genas.* — TIBULLUS.

*Germanorum feminae nude sunt brachia ac lacertos.* — TAC.

§ 118. *R. G. II.* — Accusativum regunt hæ Præpositiones :

*Ante, apud, ad, adversus,*

*Circum, circa, citra, cis,*

*Contra, inter, erga, extra,*

*Infra, intra, juxta, ob,*

*Penes, pone, post, et præter,*

*Prope, propter, per, secundum,*

*Supra, versus, ultra, trans ;*

*His, super, subter, addito,*

*Et in, sub, si fit motio.*

~~~~~  
§ 119. *R. G.* — Vocativus, Appellati Casus, regitur ab Interjectione, sive expressâ, sive intellectâ : ut,

*O Sol pulcher, O laudande.* — HOR.

*Alme Sol.* — HOR.

*Fili vel O fili.* — TER.

*Not.* — Interjectiones *en* et *ecce* regunt Accusativum et Nominativum ; *o, ah, heu, hem, proh,* Accusativum, Nominativum, et Vocativum : ut,

*En miserum hominem !* — CIC.

*Ecce noxa turba atque riza !* — CIC.

*Heu miserunde puer !* — VIRG.

*Heu vanitas humana !* — PLINIUS.

*Proh Deum atque hominum fidem !* — CIC.

*Obs.* Dativum regunt *hei* et *væ* : ut,

*Hei misero mihi!* — TER.

*Væ tibi, cauidice!* — MART.

## DATIVUS.

§ 120. Dativus est Casus remotioris Objecti. Interdum Agentem, interdum Propositum significat.

### A. DATIVUS OBJECTI.

*R. G. I.* — Omnia ferè Adjectiva et Verba, item Adverbia et Substantiva, regunt Dativum remotioris Objecti, cujus causâ est aut fit aliquid : ut,

*Non solum nobis divites esse volumus.* — CIC.

*Mihi istic nec seritur nec metitur.* — PLAUT.

*Numa virgines Vestæ legit.* — LIV.

*Urbi pater est urbiq̃ue maritus.* — LUCANUS.

*Tibi luditur.* — PERS.

*Obs. 1.* Ita *sum* possessivè significans Dativum possidentis habet : ut,

*Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.* — VIRG.

*Obs. 2.* Dativus Pronominis abundat eleganter : ut,

*Quid mihi Celsus agit?* — HOR.

*Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo.* — TER.

§ 121. *R. G. II.* — Dativum regunt plurima Adjectiva, Adverbia, et Verba, interdum etiam Substantiva, a quibus indicatur

*Commodum, communicatio,  
Comparatio, consecratio,  
Congruentia, consuetudo,  
Auxilium et aptitudo,  
Benignitas, vicinitas,  
Jucunditas, affinitas,*

*Traditio, venia, demonstratio,  
Promissio, fides, et narratio,  
Obsequium, imperium,  
Et quicquid his contrarium;  
Cum nubo, vaco : cetera  
Sub primâ stabunt regulâ.*

(1) Adjectiva : ut,

*Patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.* — JUVENALIS.

*Nil fuit unquam sic impar sibi.* — HOR.

*Est finitimus oratori poeta.* — CIC.

*Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti.* — LUCAN.

*Homini fidelissimi sunt equus et canis.* — PLIN.

*Omnibus supplex.* — CIC.

## (2) Adverbia: ut,

*Congruenter naturæ vivendum est.* — CIC.*Improbo et inertī nemini bene esse potest.* — CIC.

## (3) Verba:

## (a) Transitiva: ut,

*Culturæ patientem commodat aurem.* — HOR.*Præsentia confer præteritis.* — LUCRETIVUS.*Hunc lucum tibi dedico, Priape.* — CATULLUS.*Quod alii donat sibi detrahit.* — S. CLEMENS.*Hoc mihi confirmavit et persuasit.* — CIC.*Nobis spondet fortuna salutem.* — VIRG.

## (b) Intransitiva: ut,

*Neve mihi noceat, quod vobis semper, Achivi,**Profuit ingenium.* — OV.*Philosophia medetur animis.* — CIC.*Tibi favemus.* — CIC.*Irascor tibi.* — CATULL.*Victrix causa deis placuit, sed victa Catoni.* — LUCAN.*Parce pio generi.* — VIRG.*Anguis Sullæ apparuit immolanti.* — CIC.*O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori.* — VIRG.*Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.* — HOR.*Placitone etiam pugnabis amori?* — VIRG.*Venus nupsit Vulcano.* — CIC.*Philosophiæ semper vaco.* — CIC.

## (4) Substantiva: ut,

*Nulla fides regni sociis.* — LUCAN.*Justitia est obtemperatio legibus et institutis.* — CIC.

§ 122. Obs. 1. *Æqualis, proprius, communis, par, alienus, Dissimilis, similis, dispar, consors, sociusque, Consciis, affinis, sacer, æmulus, atque superstes, Pluraque, nunc voluere* Dativum, nunc Genitiv

ut, *Media simillima veris sunt.* — LIV.

*Deos esse similes tui putas?* — PLAUT.

*Propria est nobis mentis agitatio et solertia.* — CIC.

*Proprium est oratoris ornatè dicere.* — CIC.

(Obs.) Eadem ferè Adjectiva, item Verba et Substantiva ejusdem significationis, sequitur etiam Præpositio cum suo casu: ut,

*Hi inter se aequales et pares sunt.* — CIC.

*Hæc sunt locupletibus cum plebe communia.* — CIC.

*Homo sum : humani nihil a me alienum puto.* — TER.

*Homini cum Deo similitudo est.* — CIC.

*Senones cum Carnutibus consilia communicavere.* — CÆS.

- § 123. *Obs. 2.* Ex Adjectivis quæ affectionem animi denotant, multa capiunt Præpositiones *in, erga, adversus*, cum Accusativo : ut,

*Acer in hostem.* — HOR.

*Benignus erga te fui.* — PLAUT.

- Obs. 3.* *Natus, aptus, utilis*, cum aliis Adjectivis *commodi et congruentiæ*, Accusativo sæpè junguntur cum Præpositione *ad* : ut,

*Ad laudem et ad decus nati sumus.* — CIC.

*Thracibus promptus est ad mortem animus.* — TAC.

- § 124. *Obs. 4.* *Delecto atque juvo, jubeo, rego, lædo, guberno*, et alia quædam Verba, Accusativo contra regulam junguntur : ut,

*Multos castra juvant.* — HOR.

*Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento.* — VIRG.

- Obs. 5.* *Tempero et moderor* nunc Dativum nunc Accusativum habent : ut,

*Privignis mulier temperat innocens.* — HOR.

*Temperat ora frænis.* — HOR.

*Hic moderatur equos qui non moderabitur iræ.* — HOR.

- § 125. *R. G. III.* — Dativum fermè regunt Verba composita cum Adverbiis *bene, satis, male* ; et cum Præpositionibus, præsertim his : —

*Ad, ante, ab,*

*In, inter, de,*

*Sub, super, ob,*

*Con, post, et præ.*

- (1) Verba Transitiva : ut,

*Gigantes bellum diis intulerunt.* — CIC.

*Anatum ova gallinis sæpè supponimus.* — CIC.

*Deus animum præfecit corpori.* — CIC.

- (2) Verba Intransitiva : ut,

*Ceteris satisfacio semper ; mihi nunquam.* — CIC.

*Sicilia quondam Italiæ adhæsit.* — JUSTINUS.

*Vir mihi semper abest.* — OV.

*Impendent hominibus varia genera mortis.* — CIC.

*Squamis intermicat aurum.* — CLAUDIANUS.

*Lucumo superfuit patri.* — LIV.

*Vitia nobis sub virtutum nomine obrepunt.* — SEN.

*Obs.* Multa ex his variant constructionem : ut,  
*Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt.* — CÆS.  
*In amore hæc insunt vitia.* — TER.

## B. DATIVUS AGENTIS.

- § 126. *R. G.* — Dativus Agentis sequitur Verbalia in *bilis*, et Gerundivum in *dus*; interdum Participia perfecta; rarè Verba Passiva : ut,  
*Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit.* — HOR.  
*Restat Chremes qui mihi exorandus est.* — TER.  
*Magnus civis obit et formidatus Othoni.* — JUV.  
*Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli.*  
 — OV.

*Obs.* Verba et Participia Passiva plerumque habent Ablativum Agentis cum Præpositione *a* vel *ab* : ut,  
*Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.* — HOR.  
*Mors Crassi est a multis defleta.* — CIC.

## C. DATIVUS PROPOSITI.

- § 127. *R. G.* — Dativus Propositi additur Verbo *sum* et multis aliis, vel pro Nominativo vel pro Accusativo : ut,  
*Exemplo est magni formica laboris.* — HOR.  
*Nucleum amisi; reliquit pignori putamina.*  
 — PLAUT.

*Obs.* Sæpè etiam duplex admittitur Dativus, alter Objecti, alter autem Propositi : ut,  
*Exitio est avidum mare nautis.* — HOR.  
*Quod aliis vitio vertis, tibi laudi ne duxeris.* — SEN.



## GENITIVUS.

- § 128. Genitivus vel Subjectivus est, vel Objectivus.

A. Subjectivus : ut,

*Crassi defensio.* (scil. oratio quâ Crassus defendit.)

B. Objectivus : ut,

*Defensio Gabinii.* (scil. oratio quâ defensio est Gabinii.)

Interdum uterque Genitivus ab eodem Substantivo pendet : ut,

*Repentina erat Crassi defensio Gabinii.* (scil. oratio quâ Crassus Gabinium defendit.) — CIC.

*Sic metus hostium, amor Dei, et similia, duplici sensu dici possunt.*

§ 129. A. GENITIVUS SUBJECTIVUS est in primis Auctoris et Possessoris; item Qualitatis, et Distributionis.

R. G. I. — Genitivus Auctoris et Possessoris sequitur omnia ferè Substantiva, necnon Verba *sum, facio, fio*, per ellipsin Substantivi : ut,

*Polycleti signa planè perfecta sunt.* — CIC.

*Singulorum opes sunt divitiæ civitatis.* — CIC.

*Omnia, quæ mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt.* — CIC.

*Scipio Hispaniam Romanæ ditionis fecit.* — LIV.

§ 130. Obs. 1. Est Impersonale præponitur Genitivo, si intelligitur  
*Indoles, indicium, | Munus aut officium.*

ut, *Cigusvis hominis est errare.* — CIC.

*Improbi hominis est mendacio fallere.* — CIC.

*Honoris amplissimi est miseros defendere.* — CIC.

*Est adolescentis majores natu vereri.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. Fit etiam ellipsis aliorum Nominum ante Genitivum : ut,

*Hectoris Andromache.* (supple *uxor.*) — VIRG.

*Deiphobe Glauci.* (supple *filia.*) — VIRG.

*Ventum erat ad Vestæ.* (supple *templum.*) — HOR.

*Hujus video Byrrhiam.* (supple *servum.*) — TER.

§ 131. Obs. 3. Genitivi *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, objectivè tantum usurpantur : subjectivè ponuntur Possessiva *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester* : ut,

*Si tibi cura mei, sit tibi cura tui.* — OV.

*Quoniam nostri tibi cura recessit?* — STAT.

*Venatum puer ire parat, mea maxima cura.* — VIRG.

*Nicias vehementer tuâ sui memoriâ delectatur.* — CIC.

(Obs. 1.) Genitivus Personalis in Possessivo inclusus recipit alterum Genitivum sibi concordantem vel appositum : ut,

*Respublica meâ unius operâ salva erat.* — CIC.

*Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest.* — CIC.

*Aves factus adultos suæ ipsorum fiducia permittunt.* — QUINT.

*Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos.* — OV.

*Studium tuum adolescentis perapezi.* — CIC.

(Obs. 2.) *Nostri, vestri*, objectivè, *nostrâ, vestrâ*, partitivè ponuntur.

§ 132. R. G. II. — Genitivus Qualitatis sequitur Substantiva et Verba Copulativa : ut,

*Ingenui vultus puer ingenuique pudoris. — JUV.  
Claudius erat somni brevissimi. — SUETONIUS.*

Obs. Qualitas etiam in Ablativo ponitur : ut,

*Senex promissâ barbâ, horrenti capillo. — PLIN.*

§ 133. R. G. III. — Vocabula Partitiva, Numeralia, Comparativa et Superlativa, regunt Genitivum rei distributæ.

Not. — Adjectivum vel Pronomen plerumque erit in eodem genere cum Genitivo : Genitivus erit in Plurali Numero, nisi sit nomen collectivum.

1. Adjectiva et Pronomina Partitiva :

*Alius, alter, uter, ullus,  
Plerique, pauci, multi, nullus,  
Solus, atque singuli,  
Ceteri, et reliqui ;*

*Hic, is, ille, qui, et quis,  
Tot, quot ; cum Compositis ;  
Et si quod aliud Adjectivum  
Acquirit sensum partitivum :*

ut, *Virtutum in aliâ alius excellit. — CIC.*

*Multæ harum arborum meâ manu sunt satæ. — CIC.*

*Elephanto belluarum nulla est prudentior. — CIC.*

*Stultorum quisnam beatus ? — CIC.*

*Utroque vestrum delector. — CIC.*

*Lecti juvenum. — STAT.*

*Sequimur te, sancte deorum. — VIRG.*

2. Numeralia, sive Cardinalia, sive Ordinalia, item *princeps, medius* : ut,

*Homini uni animantium luctus est datus. — PLIN.*

*Sulla centum viginti suorum amisit. — EUTROPIUS.*

*Sicilia prima omnium nationum provincia est appellata. — CIC.*

*Nunc juvenum princeps, deinde future senum. — OV.*

*Roma regionum Italiæ media est. — LIV.*

3. Comparativa et Superlativa : ut,

*Major Neronum. — HOR.*

*Gallorum fortissimi sunt Belgæ. — CÆS.*

4. Adverbia Superlativa : ut,

*Hoc ad te minimè omnium pertinet. — CIC.*

5. Substantiva Partitiva et partitivè posita : ut,

*Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit. — PLIN.*

*Piscium feminae majores quàm mares. — PLIN.*



§ 134. *Obs.* 1.—Distributionem etiam efficiunt Præpositiones *ex, in, inter, ante, de* : ut,

*Nihil ex his, quæ videmus, manet.*—SEN.

*Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit.*—CIC.

*Inter Scythiæ amnes amænissimus Borysthenes.*—MELA.

*Ante omnes Turnus pulcherrimus.*—VIRG.

*Una de multis fuit in parentem*

*Splendidè mendax.*—HOR.

§ 135. *Obs.* 2.—Hi Genitivi, *gentium, terrarum*, aliique, sequuntur Adverbia localia, *huc, ed, quò, ubi*, similia : ut,

*Migrandum aliqùd terrarum arbitròr.*—CIC.

*Vir bonus, ubicumque erit gentium, a nobis diligitur.*—CIC.

*Perseus perfugium sibi nusquam gentium esse ait.*—LIV.

*Huccine rerum venimus?*—PERS.

§ 136. *R. G. IV.*—Substantiva, Adverbia, item Neutra Adjectiva et Pronomina, Quantitatem significantia, regunt Genitivum rei demensæ : ut,

*Justitia nihil expetit præmii.*—CIC.

*Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum.*—SALL.

*Aliquid pristini roboris conservat.*—CIC.

*Dimidium facti qui bene cœpit habet.*—HOR.

*Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei.*—JUV.

§ 137. *B. R. G. I.*—GENITIVUM OBJECTIVUM regunt multa Substantiva, in quibus transitiva quædam vis est : ut,

*Insitus est menti cognitionis amor.*—CIC.

*Obs.* Hic Genitivus aliquando Præpositionis cum casu vicem occupat : ut,

*Bellum Helvetiorum.* (scil. cum Helvetiis.)—CÆS.

§ 138. *R. G. II.* Genitivum Objectivum regunt Verbalia in *az*, Participia quædam adjectivè posita, et Adjectiva significantia

*Notitiam, curam, et cupiditatem,*  
*Memoriam, metum, crimen, po-*  
*testatem,*

| Et quæ contrario sensu  
| stant;

| Poetæ multa alia dant :

ut, *Tempus edax rerum.*—OV.

*Animus alieni appetens, sui profusus.*—SALL.

*Nescia mens hominum est fati.*—VIRG.

*Omnes immemorem beneficii oderunt.*—CIC.

*Ira est impotens sui.*—SEN.

*Fraterni sanguinis insons.* — OV.

*O seri studiorum.* — HOR.

§ 139. *R. G. III.* — Verba quædam *accusandi, convincendi, absolvendi, damnandi*, regunt, cum Accusativo personæ, Genitivum rei : ut,

*Cicero Verrem avaritiæ arguit.* — CIC.

*Condemnamus haruspices stultitiæ.* — CIC.

*Ne quem innocentem capitis arcessas.* — CIC.

*Obs. 1.* Pro hoc Genitivo ponitur Præpositio, præsertim *de*, cum suo casu : ut,

*Accusatur inter sicarios et de veneficiis.* — CIC.

*Obs. 2.* Sine Præpositione usurpantur hi Ablativi, *crimine, lege, scelere, capite*, et alii nonnulli : ut,

*Themistocles crimine proditionis absens damnatus est.* — NEP.

*Legibus ambitûs interrogatus penas dedit.* — CIC.

*Fulvium capite anquirendum subclamant.* — LIV.

*Obs. 3.* Similiter Verba *monendi*, cum Accusativo personæ, regunt Genitivum rei : ut,

*Res adversæ admonent nos religionum.* — LIV.

(*Obs.*) Vel Ablativum cum Præpositione *de* : ut,

*Terentiam de testamento moneatis.* — CIC.

§ 140. *R. G. IV.* — *Memini, recordor, reminiscor, obliviscor*, nunc Genitivum regunt, nunc Accusativum : ut,

*Jubet mortis te meminisse Deus.* — MART.

*Dulces moriens, reminiscitur Argos.* — VIRG.

§ 141. *R. G. V.* — *Misereor, miseresco*, Genitivo junguntur ; *miseror, commiseror*, Accusativo : ut,

*Nil nostri miserere.* — VIRG.

*Arcadii, quæso, miserescite regis.* — VIRG.

*Agesilaus commiseratus est fortunam Græciæ.*

— NEP.

§ 142. *Not. 1.* — Genitivus interdum ponitur post Verba *desinendi, potiendi, regnandi* : ut,

*Desine mollium tandem querelarum.* — HOR.

*Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt.* — SALL.

*Darius agrestium regnavit populorum.* — HOR.

*Not. 2.* — Rariores sunt Genitivi Causæ, Respectûs, Propinationis : ut,

*Laudabat leti juvenem.* — SIL.

*Animi pendeo.* — CIC.

*Da noctis mediæ (supple poculum).* — HOR.

## ABLATIVUS.

§ 143. Ablativus est Casus qui circumstantia actionis definit.

R. G. I.—Adjectiva, Verba, et aliquando Substantiva, admittunt Ablativum significantem rei aut actionis causam, vel instrumentum, vel modum, vel materiam, vel limitationem qualemcunque.

§ 144. A. ABLATIVUS CAUSÆ sequitur Adjectiva, Verba, et præsertim Participia : ut,

*Cæptis immanibus effera Dido.* — VIRG.

*Oderunt peccare mali formidine pœnæ.* — HOR.

*Animus pravis cupidinibus captus.* — SALL.

§ 145. B. ABLATIVUS INSTRUMENTI sequitur Verba : ut,

*Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit.* — HOR.

*Hî jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.* — VIRG.

§ 146. C. ABLATIVUS MODI plerumque sequitur Verba : ut,

*Injuria fit duobus modis, vi aut fraude.* — CIC.

Obs. Persæpè capit Præpositionem *cum* : ut,

*Magnâ cum curâ atque diligentîâ scripsit.* — CIC.

*Cum veniâ facito, quisquis es, ista legas.* — OV.

§ 147. D. (a) ABLATIVUS MATERIÆ sequitur Verba *construendi, consistendi*, et similia : ut,

*Animo constamus et corpore.* — CIC.

Obs. Vel cum Præpositione *ex* : ut,

*Beata vita constat ex rectis actionibus.* — SEN.

(b) *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior*, Ablativum regunt : ut,

*Fungar vice cotis.* — HOR.

*Cum victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit.* — FLORUS.

*Numidæ ferinâ carne vescebantur.* — SALL.

*Auro vi potitur.* — VIRG.

Obs. Hæc Verba antiquitus Accusativum habebant : ut,

*Functus est officium boni viri.* — TER.

§ 148. (c.) Adjectiva et Verba, quæ ad *copiam egestatemve* pertinent, Ablativum regunt; multa etiam Genitivum : ut,

*Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus.*—PLAUT.  
*Numquam animus motu vacuus est.*—CIC.  
*Turpe est diffluere luxuriâ.*—CIC.  
*Vacare culpâ maximum est solatium.*—CIC.  
*Dives opum, dives pictai vestis et auri.*—VIRG.  
*Mancipiis locuples eget æris Cappadocum rex.*  
 —HOR.  
*Vis consilii expers mole ruit suâ.*—HOR.  
*Hæ res vitæ me saturant.*—PLAUT.

- (d) *Opus et usus Ablativum regunt: ut,*  
*Ubi res adsunt, quid opus est verbis?*—SALL.  
*Usus est filio viginti minis.*—PLAUT.
- (e) *Dignus, indignus, præditus, fretus, item Verbum dignor, Ablativum regunt: ut,*  
*Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori.*—HOR.  
*Lentulus est singulari modestiâ præditus.*—CIC.  
*Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.*—VIRG.

§ 149. E. ABLATIVUS LIMITATIONIS latè patet.

- (a) *Ablativus Respectûs jungitur præsertim Adjectivis, item Verbis et Substantivis: ut,*  
*Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis.*—OV.  
*Oculis capti fodere cubilia talpæ.*—VIRG.  
*Agasilaus fuit claudus altero pede.*—NEP.  
*Et corde et genibus tremit.*—HOR.  
*Quid hoc homine facies?*—CIC.

- § 150. *Obs. Huc referuntur Ablativi illi, domo, natione, numero, similes; item ætate et natu: ut,*  
*Domo Carthaginienses sunt.*—PLAUT.  
*Mardonius natione Medus.*—NEP.  
*Non grandis natu est, sed tamen jam ætate proventus.*—CIC.  
*Ennius fuit major natu quàm Plautus et Nævius.*—CIC.

- § 151. (b) *Ablativus Pretii sequitur Verba et Adjectiva significantia emptionem, venditionem, vel æstimationem: ut,*  
*Ego spem pretio non emo.*—TER.  
*Plurimus auro vënit honos.*—PROPERTIUS.  
*Multorum sanguine victoria stetit.*—LIV.  
*Quod non opus est, asse carum est.*—SEN.

*Obs. 1.* Per Ellipsin usurpantur, omissâ voce *pretio*, hi Ablativi, *vili, parvo, minimo, nimio, magno, plurimo, duplo*, et *dimidio* : ut,

*Parvo fames constat, magno fastidium.* — SEN.

*Obs. 2.* *Æstimatio* rei plerumque Genitivum habet, præsertim ellipticos illos, *magni, parvi, minimi, pluris*, atque *plurimi* : ut,

*Sapiens dolorem nihili facit.* — CIC.

*Voluptatem virtus minimi facit.* — CIC.

*Pluris est oculatus testis unus, quàm auriti decem.* — PLAUT.

(*Obs.*) Tam Pretium quàm *Æstimationem* significant, *pluris, minoris, tanti, quanti, maximi* : ut,

*Emit hortos tanti, quanti Pythius voluit.* — CIC.

§ 152. (*c*) Ablativus Differentiæ jungitur Adjectivis, Adverbiis, et Verbis comparativæ et superlativæ significationis : ut,

*Sol multis partibus major est quàm luna.* — CIC.

*A Cynicis tunicâ distantia dogmata.* — HOR.

*Obs.* In primis Ablativi elliptici :

*Altero, hoc, eo, quo,*

*Nihilo et nimio,*

*Dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto,*

*Paulo, multo, aliquanto :*

ut, *Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa major.* — CIC.

*Tanto pessimus omnium poeta,*

*Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus.* — CATUL.

*Nihilo aliter sum atque fui.* — TER.

§ 153. (*d*) Ablativus Comparisonis regitur a Comparativis, sive Adjectivis, sive Adverbiis.

*Nota.* — Hic Ablativus ponitur pro Conjunctione *quàm* cum Nominativo vel Accusativo.

(1) Pro *quàm* cum Nominativo : ut,

*Nihil est amabilius virtute.* — CIC.

*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.* — HOR.

(2) Pro *quàm* cum Accusativo : ut,

*Puto mortem dedecore leviozem.* — CIC.

*Neminem Lycurgo utiliozem Lacedæmon genuit.* —

VALERIUS MAXIMUS.

*Obs. 1.* *Quàm* duobus Comparativis eleganter interponitur : ut,

*Triumphus Camilli clarior erat quàm gratior.* — LIV.

*Obs. 2.* *Quàm* eleganter omittitur post *plus, amplius, minus* : ut,

*Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi.* — TER.

*Obs. 3.* Comparisoni inserviunt etiam Præpositiones *ante, præter, supra, præ* : ut,

*Pygmalion, scelere ante alios immanior omnes.* — VIRG.  
*Cruz præter ceteras altior.* — SÆT.

§ 154. R. G. II. — Ablativum regunt hæ Præpositiones :

<i>A, ab, absque, coram, de,          Palam, clam, cum, ex, et e,          Sine, tenus, pro, et præ :</i>	<i>His subter, super, addito,          Et in, sub, si fit statio.</i>
---	---

Obs. 1. Præpositio in Compositione eundem nonnunquam Casum regit, quem et extra Compositionem regebat : ut,

*Detrudunt naves scopulo.* — VIRG.

*Te nunc alloquor, Africane.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. Eleganter iteratur eadem Præpositio : ut,

*E corpore excedit animus.* — CIC.

(Obs.) Vel importatur nova : ut,

*Alto defluxit ab æthere tabes.* — LUCAN.

Obs. 3. Verba *discedendi, separandi, arcendi, removendi*, et similia, omissâ quoque Præpositione, regunt Ablativum : ut,

*Cedes coemptis saltibus et domo.* — HOR.

*Populus Atheniensis Phocionem patriâ pepulit.* — NEP.

(Obs.) Huc refer Ablativum post Verba et Participia Originis : ut,

*Atræus Tantalo prognatus, Pelope natus.* — CIC.

*Sate sanguine divum.* — VIRG.

Obs. 4. *Tenus* vel Genitivum pluralem vel Ablativum regit, et post suum Casum ponitur : ut,

*Crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent.* — VIRG.

*Antiochus Tauro tenus regnare jussus est.* — CIC.

Obs. 5. *Cum* ita subjungitur casibus Pronominum Personalium, et plerumque Relativi, ut ex duobus vocibus una fiat : ut, *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum* pro *quocum, quibuscum*.

#### A. DE ABLATIVO ABSOLUTO.

§ 155. R. G. — Substantivum et Participium conjunctim ponuntur in Ablativo, quem Absolutum vocant : ut,

*Regibus exactis consules creati sunt.* — LIV.

*Cesare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem.* — MART.

*Pereunte obsequio imperium etiam intercidit.* — TAC.

Obs. 1. Absolutè etiam ponitur Substantivum cum Substantivo vel Adjectivo, ubi intelligitur Participium *existendi* : ut,

*Nil desperandum est, Teucro duce et auspice Teucro.* — HOR.

*Jamque cinis, vivis fratribus, Hector erat.* — OV.

**Obs. 2.** Aliquando cum Ablativo Participii absolutè ponitur continuata Locutio pro Ablativo Substantivi: ut,

*Excepto quod non simul esses, cetera latus.* — HOR.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONE TEMPORIS.

§ 156. **R. G. I.** — Definitio Temporis in Ablativo ponitur, si rogatur *quando* vel *intra quantum tempus*: ut,

*Hieme omnia bella conquiescant.* — CIC.

*Quicquid est, biduo sciemus.* — CIC.

**Obs. 1.** In definiendo Tempore multus est Præpositionum usus: ut,

*Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit.* — CIC.

*De die.* (id est, ante finem diei.) — HOR.

*De nocte.* (id est, ante finem noctis.) — HOR.

*De multâ nocte.* (id est, multo ante finem noctis.) — CIC.

*Sub vesperum.* (id est, appropinquante vespero.) — CÆS.

*Diem ex die expecto.* — CIC.

**Obs. 2.** Quanto tempore abhinc, antè vel pòst, interdum per Ablativum, interdum per Accusativum dicitur: ut,

*Comitia jam abhinc triginta diebus erant habita.* — CIC.

*Hoc factum est fere abhinc biennium.* — PLAUT.

**R. G. II.** — Duratio temporis, ubi rogatur *quamdium*, frequentius in Accusativo ponitur, rarius in Ablativo: ut,

*Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Athenis.* — CIC.

*Imperium Assyrii mille trecentis annis tenuere.* — JUST.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS LOCI ET SPATII.

§ 157. **A. R. G. I.** — Locus, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, vel sine Præpositione, vel longè frequentius cum Præpositione *in*: ut,

*Ibam forte Viâ Sacrà.* — HOR.

*In Lemno uxorem ducit.* — TER.

**Obs. 1.** Oppidi nomen, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, modò sit vel tertie Declinationis, vel pluralis Numeri: ut,

*Alexander Babylone mortuus est.* — CIC.

*Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis.* — CIC.

**Obs. 2.** Sed in Genitivo ponitur, si et Declinationis est primæ vel secundæ, et singularis Numeri: ut,

*Quid Romæ faciam? mentiri nescio.* — JUV.

*Is habitat Miletî.* — TER.

§ 158. R. G. II. — Loci Nomen a Præpositione ferè regitur post Verbum motûs : ut

*Profectus est in Galliam.* — CÆS.

*Ab Europâ petis Asiam.* — CURTIUS.

Obs. 1. Oppidi nomen, ad quod itur, in Accusativo sine Præpositione ferè ponitur : ut,

*Regulus Carthaginem rediit.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. Oppidi nomen, a quo itur, in Ablativo sine Præpositione ferè ponitur : ut,

*Demaratus fugit Corintho.* — CIC.

Obs. 3. Sed et Oppida sæpè capiunt, et alia Nomina omittunt, Præpositionem post Verba motûs : ut,

*A Brundisio nulla fama venerat.* — CIC.

*Pars Scythiam et rapidum Creta veniemus Oaxen.* — VIRG.

§ 159. Obs. 4. *Humus, domus, et rus* oppidorum constructionem imitantur : ut,

*Cadmus spargit humi, mortalia semina, dentes.* — OV.

*Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.* — CIC.

*Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ.* — VIRG.

*Video rure redeuntem senem.* — TER.

§ 160. B. R. G. I. — Spatium Distantiæ frequentius in Accusativo, interdum in Ablativo ponitur : ut,

*Aberam ab Amano iter unius diei.* — CIC.

*Æsculapii templum quinque millibus passuum ab Epidaurō distat.* — LIV.

R. G. II. — Spatium Progressionis in Accusativo ponitur : ut,

*Millia tum pransi tria repimus.* — HOR.

R. G. III. — Spatium Dimensionis frequentissimè in Accusativo, interdum in Ablativo, interdum in Genitivo ponitur : ut,

*Erant muri Babylonis ducenos pedes alti.* — PLIN.

*Longum sesquipede, latum pede.* — PLIN.

*Areas latas pedum denūm facito.* — COLUMELLA.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM IMPERSONALIU.

§ 161. R. G. I. — *Libet, licet, liquet*, et pleraque Impersonalia, regunt Dativum : ut,

*Ne libeat tibi quod non licet.* — CIC.

*Sævis inter se convenit ursis.* — JUV.



- R. G. II. — *Piget, pudet, pœnitet, tædet atque miseret, regant* Accusativum Personæ, cum Genitivo Rei, vel cum Infinitivo : ut,

*Miseret te aliorum : tui te nec miseret, nec pudet.* — PLAUT.

*Me civitatis morum piget tædetque.* — SALL.

*Eos partim scelerum, partim ineptiarum pœnitet.* — CIC.

*Quem pœnitet peccasse, pœnè est innocens.* — SEN.

- R. G. III. — *Delectat, juvat, decet, dedecet*, impersonaliter posita, Accusativum cum Infinitivo postulant : ut,

*Oratorem irasci minimè decet.* — CIC.

*Me juvat in primâ coluisse Heliconæ juventâ.* — PROP.

- R. G. IV. — *Oportet* vel Accusativum cum Infinitivo regit, vel Nominativum cum Subjunctivo, Conjunctione *ut* omissâ : ut,

*Legem brevem esse oportet.* — CIC.

*Me ipsum ames oportet, non mea.* — CIC.

- R. G. V. — *Pertinet, attinet*, Præpositionem *ad* cum Accusativo sumunt : ut,

*Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari.* — CIC.

*Profundat, perdat, pereat, nihil ad me attinet.* — TER.

- R. G. VI. — *Interest et rēfert* Genitivum admittunt : ut,

*Interest omnium rectè facere.* — CIC.

*Rēfert compositionis, quæ quibus anteponas.* — CIC.

- Obs. 1. Cum his Verbis junguntur, loco Pronominum Personalium, Ablativi feminini, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*, subaudita voce *re* : ut,

*Et tuâ et meâ interest te valere.* — CIC.

*Quid rēfert meâ, cui serviam ?* — PHÆDRUS.

- Obs. 2. Adduntur his Verbis Genitivi Æstimationis, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris* : ut,

*Utriusque nostrûm magni interest, ut te videam.* — CIC.

*Hoc non pluris rēfert, quàm si imbrem in cribrum geras.* — PLAUT.

- Not. 1. — Verba Neutra in Passivâ Voce impersonaliter usurpantur pro quibuslibet personis, Ablativo personæ cum Præpositione *ab* vel expresso vel intellecto : ut,

*Ab omnibus reclamatum est.* (scil. omnes reclamârunt.) — CIC.

*Quid agitur ? statur.* (scil. statur a nobis, sive stamus.) — TER.

- Not. 2. — *Capit, debet, desinit, potest, solet, incipit*, Infinitivis Impersonalium præposita, ipsa fiunt Impersonalia : ut,

*Figere eum facti capit.* — JUST.

*Perveniri ad summa, nisi ex principiis, non potest.* — QUINT.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM PASSIVORUM.

§ 162. *R. G.* — Activa sententia ferè omnis ita in Passivam converti potest, ut Nominativus Activæ sententiæ fiat in Passivâ Ablativus Agentis.

A. Si Activæ sententiæ Verbum Accusativum habet propioris Objecti, Verbum in Passivâ personale erit, Accusativo Activæ in Nominativum Passivæ transeunte : ut,

ACT. *Egregiè consul rem gessit.*

PASS. *Egregiè ab consule res gesta est.* — LIV.

B. Sin minus, Verbum Passivæ impersonale erit, et vel sine casu stabit, vel eundem casum reget, quem in Activâ regebat : ut,

ACT. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*

PASS. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.* — CÆS.

ACT. *Medicinæ nos indigemus.* — CIC.

PASS. *Medicinæ a nobis indigetur.*

ACT. *Mihi isti nocere non possunt.*

PASS. *Mihi ab istis noceri non potest.* — CIC.

ACT. *Litibus et jurgiis supersedere vos æquum est.*

PASS. *Litibus et jurgiis supersederi a vobis æquum est.* — CIC.

Obs. Ubi nihil ambigui esse potest, supprimitur Ablativus Agentis post Impersonalia Passiva : ut,

*Itur in antiquam silvam.* — VIRG.

*Non potest jucundè vivi, nisi cum virtute vivatur.* — CIC.

Not. 1. — Hinc apparet, eosdem casus a Passivis Verbis regi, atque ab Activis, præterquàm unum Accusativum propioris Objecti, Exempla pete suprâ : B.

Not. 2. — *Vapulo, veneo, exulo, liceo, fio*, cum aliis quibusdam, vi Passivâ construuntur : ut,

*Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit.* — QUINTILLIANUS.

*Malo a cive spoliari, quàm ab hoste vñire.* — QUINT.

*Torqueor, infesto ne vir ab hoste cadat.* — OV.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONE PARTICIPIORUM.

§ 163. *R. G.* — Participia, quæ Verbi Adjectiva sunt, cum Substantivis attribuantur, tum etiam regunt casus Verborum a quibus oriuntur, Activa Activorum, Deponentia Deponentium, Passiva Passivorum,

[(Obs. 1.) Participii Præteriti usus in Verbis Passivis atque in Deponentibus accuratè distinguendus est: in Passivis enim Activè usurpari nunquam potest: in Deponentibus plerique solùm Activè usurpatur: ex Deponentibus tamen Transitive multa sunt, quorum Participia Præterita tam Passivè quàm Activè significant.

(Obs. 2.) *Canatus, pransus, fisus, jervatus, et ausus, Gavius, solitus*, ceu Deponentia rectè Construimus, licet Activis orientia Verbis; His etiam *exosus, pertusus, et adde perosus*.

(Obs. 3.) Participium in *du* Passivè semper significat.]

ut, *Cernimus ire suis parentia finibus astra.* — MANILIUS.  
*Virgo compositos ostentatura capillos.* — AUSONIUS.  
*Nubiferi montes et saxa minantia calo.* — SILIUS.  
*Nil oriturum alias, nil ortum tale falemur.* — HOR.  
*Duces functos virtute canemus.* — HOR.  
*Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti.* — VIRG.  
*Omnia ei quasita, meditata, evigilata erant.* — GELLIUS  
*Male parva male dilabuntur.* — CIC.  
*Paridem solitus contendere contra.* — VIRG.  
*Oculos exosa viriles.* — OV.  
*Pueris sententias ediscendas damus.* — SEN.  
*Vita data est utenda, datur sine fœnore nobis*  
*Mutua, nec certo persolunda die.* — OV.

## DE INFINITIVO SUBSTANTIVE POSITO, ET DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS GERUNDIORUM, GERUNDIVI, ET SUPINORUM.

§ 164. Infinitivus cum Gerundiis et Supinis Substantivum Verbi efficit.

R. G. I. — Infinitivus Nominativi vel Accusativi loco sæpè ponitur: ut,

*Invidere non cadit in sapientem.* — CIC.  
*Dulce et decorum est pro patriâ mori.* — HOR.  
*Velle suum cuique est.* — PERS.  
*Mori nemo sapiens miserum dixerit.* — CIC.  
*Multum interest inter dare et accipere.* — SEN.

§ 165. R. G. II. — Gerundia pro casibus Infinitivi ponuntur, et ipsa regunt casus suorum Verborum; sed sine casu frequentius apparent.

- A. Pro Accusativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *dum* post Præpositiones *ad*, *inter*; rariùs post *ob*, *in*, *ante*: ut,  
*Breve tempus satis est longum ad bene vivendum.* — CIC.  
*Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt.* — QUINT.
- B. Pro Genitivo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *di* post Adjectiva Genitivum regentia, et post multa Substantiva: ut,  
*Epaminondas studiosus erat audiendi.* — NEP.  
*Cupidus sum satisfaciendi reipublicæ.* — CIC.  
*Thucydides omnes dicendi artificio vincit.* — CIC.  
*Scribendi rectè sapere est et principium et fons.* — HOR.
- C. Pro Dativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *do* post Adjectiva Commodi et Congruentiæ, item post Verba nonnulla: ut,  
*Crassus disserendo par esse non potuit.* — CIC.  
*Epidicum operam quærendo dabo.* — PLAUT.
- D. Pro Ablativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *do* Causam, Instrumentum, aut Modum significans, vel cum Præpositionibus *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, *cum*: ut,  
*Nihil agendo homines male facere discunt.* — COLUM.  
*P. Scipio Latinè loquendo cuius erat par.* — CIC.  
*Jovem a juvando nominamus.* — CIC.  
*Multa de bene beatèque vivendo a Platone disputata sunt.* — CIC.

§ 166. *Not.* — Gerundia Activè significant: si verò Transitive sunt, eorum constructio Passivè repræsentari potest, imò frequentius repræsentatur, per Participium in *us*, quod inde Gerundivi nomen accipit.

- R. G. III. — Gerundiva constructio ejusmodi est, ut Substantivum in Gerundii casum trahatur, cum quo concordet Gerundivum: ut,

*E terrâ ignem elicimus ad colendos agros.* — CIC.  
*Occasio videbatur rerum novandarum.* — LIV.  
*M. Antonius fuit triumvir reipublicæ constituendæ.* — NEP.  
*Exercenda est memoria ediscendis veterum scriptis.* — CIC.  
*Brutus in liberandâ patriâ est interfectus.* — CIC.

§ 167. R. G. IV. — Ad Necessitatem Passivè significandam Gerundivum in Neutro Genere impersonaliter adhibetur ita, ut, cum Dativo vel Ablativo Agentis, sive expresso sive intellecto, sui etiam Verbi constructionem habeat: ut,

*Suo cuique judicio utendum est.* — CIC.  
*Civium bonis est a vobis consulendum.* — CIC.  
*Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.* — JUV.  
*Eudoxus opinatur, Chaldæis minimè esse credendum.* — CIC.

*Obs.* In Verbis Transiſivis rarior eſt Impersonalis constructio, eſt tamen ubi obviâ fit: ut,

*Æternas quoniam pœnas in morte timendum.* — LUCR.

Gerundivum enim ipſum, Adjectivè poſitum, ſuâpte vi Neceſſitatem exprimit: ut,

*Deus et diligendus eſt et timendus.* — TERTULLIANUS.

*Agnoscenda et amplectenda ſunt beneficia divina.* — S. CYPRIANUS.

§ 168. *R. G. V.* — Supinum in *um*, vi Activâ præditum, ſui Verbi caſum regit; poſtponitur autem, ut Accuſativus, Verbis motum ſignificantibus, ad Actionis finem indicandam: ut,

*Aſt ego non Graiis ſervitum matribus ibo.* — VIRG.

*Coriolanus in Volſcos exſulatum abiit.* — LIV.

*Spectatum veniunt, veniunt ſpectentur ut ipſæ.* — OV.

*Scitatum oracula Phœbi mittimus.* — VIRG.

*Obs.* Ex Supino in *um* et Impersonali Infinitivo *iri* conficitur Futurum Infinitivi Paſſivi: ut,

*Audierat non datum iri filio ſuo uxorem.* — TER.

*R. G. VI.* — Supinum in *u*, vi Paſſivâ præditum, poſtponitur, ut Ablativus Reſpectûs, tum multis Adjectivis, tum Subſtantivis *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*: ut,

*Nil dictu fœdum viſuque hæc limina tangat*

*Intra quæ puer eſt.* — JUV.

*Ecce (nefas viſu) ſerpens altariſus exit.* — OV.

*Not.* — Supina formam habent Subſtantivorum Quartæ Declinationis.

## DE ADJECTIVORUM USU.

§ 169. (a) *Primus* et *extremus*, *poſtremus* et *ultimus*, *imus*, *intimus* et *medius*, ſic *ſummus* et *inſimus*, atque *Ceterus* et *reliquus*, partitivè attribuuntur:

ut, *Primâ luce ſummus mons a Labieno tenebatur.* — CÆS.

(b) Neutra Adjectiva utriuſque Numeri ponuntur interdum Adverbialiter, præſertim apud poetas: ut,

*Serviet æternum, qui parvo nesciet uti.* — HOR.

*Aſper, acerba tuens, retrò redit.* — VIRG.

(c) Adjectivum sæpè ita attribuitur, ut Anglicè per Adverbium reddi neceſſe ſit:

*Tum tu iſiſte audax muris.* — LIV.

*Caſtris ſe pavidus tenebat.* — LIV.

§ 170. Superlativum ita usurpatur, ut non modò altissimum omnium gradum, sed etiam præaltum quemcunque designet: ut,

*Ego sum miserior quàm tu, quæ es miserrima.* — CIC.

Obs. Pronomen *quisque* Superlativo distribuendo adhibetur: ut,

*Epicureos doctissimus quisque contemnit.* — CIC.

*Maxima cuique fortuna minimè credendum est.* — LIV.

## DE NUMERALIUM USU.

§ 171. A. Cardinalia.

(a) *Unus* non, nisi cum Emphasi, ponitur: ut,

*Matronæ annum, ut parentem, Brutum luxerunt.* — LIV.

*Amicitia vis est in eo, ut unus quasi animus fiat ex pluribus.* — CIC.

Obs. *Unus* sæpè vim habet Superlativam, sæpè Superlativorum vim augeat: ut,

*Demosthenes unus eminet inter omnes oratores.* — CIC.

*P. Nigidius, unus omnium doctissimus.* — CIC.

(b) *Mille* nunc Substantivè, nunc Adjectivè, usurpatur: *millia* Substantivè tantùm: ut,

*Amplius mille hominum cecidit.* — NEP.

*Mille greges illi.* — OV.

*Quattuor millia hominum Capitolium occupavère.* — LIV.

B. Ordinalia in Temporum Rationibus usurpantur: ut,

*Plato uno et octogesimo anno scribens mortuus est.* — CIC.

*Octavus annus est ex quo Britanniam vicistis.* — TAC.

Obs. 1. Ad Ordinalia distribuenda usurpatur *quisque*: ut,

*Quinto quoque anno Sicilia tota censetur.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. *Alter* nunc ut *secundus* nunc ut *unus* e duobus ponitur: ut,

*Alter ab undecimo tum me jam ceperat annus.* — VIRG.

*Quidquid negat alter, et alter.* — HOR.

C. Distributiva efficiunt ut, quod fiat, cuique e pluribus, vel a quoque, vel quoque tempore factum esse appareat: ut,

*Militibus quinì viceni denarii dati sunt.* — LIV.

*Verberibus mulcant, sexageni singulos.* — TAC.

*Ursæ pariunt plurimùm quinos.* — PLIN.

§ 172. D. (a) *As Romanus*, sive *Libra*, antiquissimis temporibus æneus erat: unde Genitivus *æris* ellipticè ponitur aliquando, *Assibus* omissis: ut,

*Millibus æris quinquaginta census est.* — LIV.

- (b) Nummus Romanus, qui antiquissimè binos Asses cum Semisse continebat, hinc *Sestertius* (semis-tertius) vocatus, Siglum habebat HS, corruptum ex IIS ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ ): ut,  
*Tiberius populo trecentos nummos viritum dedit.* — Suet.  
*Pretium constitutum est in singulos modios HS terni.* — Cic.
- (c) *Sestertium* continebat mille Sestertios, et ipsum interdum Siglo HS designatur: ut,  
*Ducena sestertia singulis dedit.* — Tac.  
*Candidati HS quingena deposuerunt.* — Cic.
- Obs. Adverbia Numeralia, *decies* et quæ majora sunt, ubi numerum Sestertiorum definiunt, suppleri sibi volunt *centena millia*: ut,  
*Vicies HS (Sestertii, Sestertiūm), id est, 2,000,000 Nummūm.*  
*Ter et quadragies HS - - - 4,300,000 Nummūm.*

## DE PRONOMINUM USU.

### § 173. A. Personalia et Possessiva.

- (a) Pronomina Pluralia, *nos, noster*, pro Singularibus *ego, meus*, sæpè ponuntur: ut,  
*Nōris nos, inquit, docti sumus.* — Hor.  
*Ad nostra me studia referam literarum.* — Cic.
- (b) *Sui et suus* Reflexiva sunt, et referuntur ad Subjectum tertię Personæ: ut,  
*Senatui populus moderandi sui potestatem tradidit.* — Cic.  
*Themistocles domicilium Magnesiæ sibi constituit.* — Nep.  
*Sentit animus se vi suā, non alienā, moveri.* — Cic.  
*Homerum Colophonii civem esse dicunt suum.* — Cic.

Obs. 1. Referri possunt Reflexiva ad Objectum, si ipsa Subjecto appendent, si Subjectum primæ est aut secundæ Personæ, si denique nullus ambiguitati locus est; quod ubi fit, Objecto plerumque postponitur Reflexivum: ut,

*Scipionem impellit ostentatio sui.* — Cæs.  
*Cæsarem sua natura mitiorem facit.* — Cic.  
*Apibus fructum restituo suum.* — Plin.  
*Suis flammis delete Fidenas.* — Liv.  
*Multa sunt civibus inter se communia.* — Cic.

- (Obs.) Sed Pronominis quisque casibus Reflexivum præponitur: ut,  
*Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam.* — Nep.  
*Longius aut propius mors sua quemque manet.* — Propert.
- Obs. 2. Referuntur etiam Reflexiva ad Personam indefinitam: ut,  
*Subsequitur cæcus Amor sui.* — Hor.  
*Deforme est de se prædicare.* — Cic.  
*Difficile est sui vitia nosse.* — Cic.

Obs. 3. Ubi Reflexivo non est locus, usurpatur Demonstrativum, præsertim is: ut,

*Aranti Quintio nuntiatum est eum dictatorem factum* — CIC.  
*Condiunt Egyptii mortuos et eos domi servant.* — CIC.  
*Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu.* — CIC.

Obs. 4. Pro Reflexivi casibus, si in his futura est ambiguitas, Pronominis ipse casus obliqui ponuntur: ut,

*Cæsar milites incusavit, cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent.* — CÆS.

§ 174. B. (a) Pronomina Demonstrativa ita ferè distinguenda sunt: is est de quo mentio facta est; hic mihi propior; iste alteri propior: ille qui ab utroque remotus est.

Obs. 1. Iste cum contemptu quodam sæpè dicitur: ut,

*Quid sibi isti miseri volunt?* — CIC.

*Errare malo cum Platone, quàm cum istis vera sentire.* CIC.

Obs. 2. Ille famam aut dignitatem nonnunquam innuit: ut,

*Veneramini illum Jovem, custodem hujus urbis.* — CIC.

Obs. 3. Cum hic et ille ad duo anteposita respiciunt, hic refertur ad id quod vel posterius in sententiâ, vel prius est in animo narrantis; ille ad id quod vel prius in sententiâ, vel posterius est in animo narrantis: ut,

*Idem et docenti et discenti propositum esse debet, ut ille proficere velit, hic proficere.* — SEN.

*Melior est certa pax quàm sperata victoria; hæc in tua, illa in deorum manu est.* — LIV.

§ 175. (b) Ipse est omnium Personarum, et vim auget cum Substantivorum, tum Pronominum, quibus apponi solet: ut,

*Ipse Pater dextrâ molitur fulmina.* — VIRG.

*Tardè nosmet ipsos cognoscimus.* — CIC.

*Sibi ipsa improbitas cogit fieri injuriam.* — SYRUS.

*Me ipse consolor.* (Id est, nemo alius me consolatur, verùm ego; ubi emphasis est in Subjecto.) — CIC.

*Me ipsum consolor.* (Id est, neminem alium ego consolor, verùm me; ubi emphasis est in Objecto.)

Obs. 1. Ipse pro ultrò vel sponte suâ ponitur aliquando: ut,

*Ipsæ veniunt ad mulctra capellæ.* — VIRG.

Obs. 2. Ipse præstantissimam Personam interdum significat: ut,

*Pythagorei respondere solebant; Ipse dixit (scil. Pythagoras).* — CIC.

Obs. 3. Ipse tempori exactè definiendo adhibetur: ut,

*Athenis decem ipsos dies fui.* — CIC.

*Nunc ipsum sine te esse non possum.* — CIC.

C. Pronomina Interrogativa sunt quis, quisnam, substantivè usurpata; qui, quinam, adjectivè: ut,

*Quid præclarum non idem arduum?* — CIC.

*O qui tuarum, corvæ, pennarum est nitor?* — PHÆD.

*Quæ fuerit in republicâ tempestas quis nescit?* — CIC.



- § 176. D. Indefinita, *quis* et *qui*, sequuntur plerumque Particulas quales sunt *ne*, *si*, *sive*, *nisi*, *qui*, *quod*, *quàm*, *quum*, *unde*, *ubi*, *ut*, *an*, *num*. *Aliquis* et *aliqui* ponuntur vel sine Particulis, vel cum Particulis, sensu minus indefinito *quàm* *quis* et *qui*; ut significetur is, quem existere credimus, sed nondum novimus: ut,

*Oppida cæperunt munire et ponere leges,  
Ne quis fur esset, neu latro, neu quis adulter. — HOR.  
Si mala condiderit in quem quis carmina, jus est. — HOR.  
Semper aliqui anquirendi sunt quos diligamus. — CIC.  
Si superest aliquis post funera sensus. — OV.*

- § 177. Obs. 1. *Aliquis* interdum pro *eximio* ponitur: ut,

*Sese aliquem credit. — PERS.*

- Obs. 2. *Quidam* definitius est *quàm* *aliquis*; ut significetur is, quem novimus quidem, sed non nominamus: ut,

*Accurrit quidam, notus mihi nomine tantum. — HOR.*

- (Obs.) Hinc cum contemptu ponitur aliquando: ut,

*Habitant hic quædam mulieres pauperculæ. — TER.*

## DE CONJUNCTIONIBUS COPULATIVIS ET DISJUNCTIVIS.

- § 178. Conjunctiones Copulativæ et Disjunctivæ similes Casus, Modos, et Tempora connectunt: ut,

*Miratur portas, strepitumque, et strata viarum. — VIRG.  
Virtus nec eripi nec surripi potest. — CIC.  
Amicitia conveniens est ad res vel secundas vel adversas.  
— CIC.*

- Nisi alia Constructionis ratio intercedat: ut,

*Pompeius Dyrrachii, Apollonia, omnibusque oppidis maritimis  
hiemare constituit. — CÆS.*

- Obs. 1. Conjunctiones Copulativæ per Asyndeton omittuntur: ut,  
*Ex cupiditatibus odia, dissidia, seditiones, bella nascuntur. — CIC.*

- Obs. 2. Comparationi inserviunt *ac*, *atque*, interdum *et*, *que*, *ut*, post Adjectiva vel Adverbia Similitudinis et Dissimilitudinis:

*Par, dispar, alius, similis, diversus, et idem,  
Proinde, perinde, pro eo, contra, contrarius, æquè,  
Queis aliter, pariter, juxta, secus adde, simulque:*

- ut, Dissimulatio est, quum alia dicuntur ac sentias. — CIC.  
Obitum filiae tuæ pro eo ac debui graviter tuli. — CIC.  
Omnia ferè contra ac dicta sunt evenère. — CIC.  
Pro civium salute æquè ac pro meâ laboravi. — CIC.  
Simul atque natum animal est, gaudet voluptate. — CIC.*

## DE VERBI TEMPORIBUS ET MODIS.

§ 179. I. Omnis Actio in Tempore ponitur, vel Præsenti, vel Præterito, vel Futuro : ita verò, ut vel alterâ temporali relatione careat, vel habeat alteram relationem temporalem.

A. Tempora Verbalia, quæ alterâ temporali relatione carent (Aorista, Indefinita, sive Absoluta), sunt :

- a. Præsens Aoristum, *scribo*, Anglicè *I write*.
- b. Præteritum Aoristum, *scripsi*, — *I wrote*.
- c. Futurum Aoristum, *scribam*, — *I shall write*.

B. Tempora Verbalia, quæ habent alteram relationem temporalem (Relativa) sunt :

- |                                 |   |                                     |                                      |
|---------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (a) Præsens<br>cum Relatione    | { | (1) Præsenti, <i>scribo</i> ,       | Anglicè <i>I am writing</i> .        |
|                                 |   | (2) Præteritâ, <i>scripsi</i> ,     | — <i>I have written</i> .            |
|                                 |   | (3) Futurâ, <i>scripturus sum</i> , | — <i>I am about to write</i> .       |
| (b) Præteritum<br>cum Relatione | { | (1) Præsenti, <i>scribebam</i> ,    | — <i>I was writing</i> .             |
|                                 |   | (2) Præteritâ, <i>scripseram</i> ,  | — <i>I had written</i> .             |
|                                 |   | (3) Futurâ, <i>scripturus fui</i> , | — <i>I was about to write</i> .      |
| (c) Futurum<br>cum Relatione    | { | (1) Præsenti, <i>scribam</i> ,      | — <i>I shall be writing</i> .        |
|                                 |   | (2) Præteritâ, <i>scripsero</i> ,   | — <i>I shall have written</i> .      |
|                                 |   | (3) Futurâ, <i>scripturus ero</i> , | — <i>I shall be about to write</i> . |

Obs. 1. Temporum Passivorum similis est ratio.

Obs. 2. Tempus historicum in primis est Præteritum Aoristum. Multus autem in historiâ usus est Præteritorum Relativorum (b). Præsens etiam historicè usurpatur, ut legentium oculis quasi pingatur actio : ut,

*Dimisso senatu, decemviri prodeunt in concionem, abdicantque se magistratu, ingenti hominum latitiâ.* — LIV.

Obs. 3. In epistolis Romani Præterito ferè utebantur, ubi nos Præsenti utimur : ut,

*Res, quum hæc scribebam, erat in summo discrimine.* — CIC.

Obs. 4. Perfectum eleganter exprimit quæ citò vel more fiunt : ut,

*Terra tremit : fugere fera.* — VIRG.

*Qui studet optatam cursu contingere metam*

*Multa tulit fecitque puer.* — HOR.

## II. Ex Modis,

A. Indicativus enuntiat absolutè.

B. Imperativus imperat vel hortatur.

Obs. 1. Ne prohibitiva Imperativo vel Subjunctivo jungitur : ut,

*Ne qua meis esto dictis mora.* — VIRG.

*Ne conferas culpam in me.* — TER.

*Obs. 2. Pro Imperativo eleganter ponitur Futurum Simplex: ut,*

*Non verbum verbo curabis reddere. — HOR.*

*Si quid acciderit novi, facies ut sciam. — CIC.*

C. Conjunctivi triplex usus est:

(a) Potentialis; qui speciem habet vel conditionalem, vel permissivam, vel dubitativam: ut,

*Id arbitror apprimè in vitâ esse utile, ut ne quid nimis:*

*Ita sine invidiâ laudem invenias, et amicos pares. — TER.*

*Si sine pace tuâ atque invito numine Troes*

*Italiam petière, huant peccata, neque illos*

*Juveris auxilio. — VIRG.*

*Eloquar an sileam? — OV.*

*Obs. 1. Peculiaris usus est Perfecti Potentialis, ut affirmet, neget, aut vetet cum urbanitate et moderatione quâdam: ut,*

*Bruti judicium, pace tuâ dixerim, longè antepono tuo. — CIC.*

*Nil ego contulerim jucundo sanus amico. — HOR.*

*Obs. 2. Eleganter usurpari solet Futurum Perfectum pro Simplicii Futuro: ut,*

*Ah, si pergis, abiero. — TER.*

*Hoc mihi gratissimum feceris. — CIC.*

(b) Optativus; vel sine Particula, vel post Particulas *ne*, *utinam*, *O si*, *si*, *ut pro utinam*: ut,

*Valeant cives mei, sint incolumes, sint beati! — CIC.*

*Ita vivam ut maximos sumptus facio! — CIC.*

*Ne sim salvus si aliter scribo ac sentio! — CIC.*

*Utinam minùs vitæ cupidi fuissetus. — CIC.*

*O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos! — VIRG.*

*Ut illum dii deæque perdant! — TER.*

(c) Subjunctivus propriè dictus, quia Verbis et Particulis subjungitur.

D. Superiùs dictum est (§ 164.) Infinitivum quasi Substantivum Verbi esse, quod vel subjectivè vel objectivè stare posset. Jam verò Simplex Infinitivus

(a) Subjectivè jungitur Verbis Impersonalibus: ut,

*Juvat ire sub umbras. — VIRG.*

*Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum. — HOR.*

*Libet semper discere. — CIC.*

(b) Objectivè sequitur multa Verba, et in primis

(1) Verba Voluntatis, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *aveo*, *cupio*, &c.

(2) Verba Potentiæ, Officii, et Consuetudinis, *possum*, *queo*, *nequeo*, *debeo*, *soleo*, *consuesco*, &c.

- (3) Verba Actionis incipiendæ, continuandæ, vel depouendæ, *cæpi, meditor, statuo, disco, doceo, conor, pergo, desino, &c.*, ut,

*Solent diu cogitare qui magna volunt gerere.* — CIC.

*Miserè cupis, inquit, abire.* — HOR.

*Socrates parens philosophiæ jure dici potest.* — CIC.

*Intueri solem adversum nequimus.* — CIC.

*Suos quisque debet tueri.* — CIC.

*Gallinas saginare Deliaci cæpere.* — PLIN.

*Statui res gestas Romanorum perscribere.* — SALL.

*Scipiones Saguntum pergunt ire.* — LIV.

*Venæ et arteriæ micare non desinunt.* — CIC.

*Quid sit futurum cras, fuge querere.* — HOR.

- (c) Prædicativè sequitur Verba Passiva multa, quibus in Activâ subjungitur Accusativus cum Infinitivo, *videor, credor, putor, existimor, dicor, feror, narror, trador, memoror, &c.*: ut,

*Videor pios errare per lucos.* — HOR.

*Verus patriæ diceris esse pater.* — MART.

*Aristides unus omnium justissimus fuisse traditur.* —

CIC.

- Obs. 1. Post Adjectiva vel Poeticus est Infinitivus, vel Argentæ, quam vocant, *Ætatis*: ut,

*Et cantare pares et respondere parati.* — VIRG.

*Cereus in vitium flecti, monitoribus asper.* — HOR.

*Agricola fuit peritus obsequi.* — TAC.

- Obs. 2. Futuri Infinitivi, cum Activi, tum Passivi, circumlocutio sæpè fit per *fore ut, futurum esse ut*, cum Subjunctivo: ut,

*Spero fore ut in cælum migremus.* — CIC.

*Dixit futurum esse ut balnea incalescerent.* — TAC.

*Pompeius dixerat, fore uti exercitus Caesaris pelleretur.* —

CÆS.

- Obs. 3. Infinitivus Historicus locum habet in gravi narratione: ut,

*Tum verò ingenti sono cælum strepere, et inter horrendos fragores micare ignes.* — LIV.

- Obs. 4. Pro Infinitivo Præsentis eleganter usurpatur Infinitivus Perfecti; ut,

*Commisisse cave quæ mox mutare labores.* — HOR.

*Quiesce erit melius.* — LIV.

## PARS II.

### DE COMPOSITA SENTENTIA.

---

#### § 180. PREFATORY EXCURSION.

- I.** *Oratio Directa* means any statement, command, or question directly put. *Oratio Obliqua* means any statement, command, or question indirectly put, depending on some verb which stands in *Oratio Directa*. Thus, *Valeo, An valet? Vale*, are *Oratio Directa*: while *Scin' me valere? Nescio an valeat, Cura ut valeas*, contain *Oratio Obliqua*; *me valere* depending on the *Oratio Directa scin'*; *an valeat* on *nescio*; *ut valeas* on *cura*.
- II.** A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences connected together: of which one is the Principal, the others either (A.) Coordinate, or (B.) Subordinate.
- A.** A Coordinate Sentence is one which does not depend in construction upon the Principal Sentence. Coordinate Sentences are introduced by such particles as *et, que, nec; aut, vel; sed, autem; nam, enim; igitur, itaque; deinde, denique; &c.*: as, *Gyges a nullo videbatur; ipse autem omnia videbat.* — *Cic.*
- B.** A Subordinate Sentence is one which depends in construction on the Principal Sentence. Subordinate Sentences are of three kinds: —
- (1) Substantival: (2) Adverbial: (3) Adjectival.
- (1) A Substantival Sentence is one which stands, like a Substantive, as Subject, Object, or in Apposition. Substantival Sentences belong to *Oratio Obliqua*, and are of three kinds: (a) Oblique Enuntiation: (b) Oblique Petition: (c) Oblique Interrogation.
- (a) The Oblique, or Indirect Enuntiation, is formed generally by the Accusative with Infinitive Mood, sometimes by *ut* with Subjunctive, or *quod* with Indicative or Subjunctive Mood. Thus, *Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest*, is a Direct Enuntiation: whilst *Verum est, amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*, is a Compound Sentence, containing the Direct Enuntiation, *Verum est*, and the Oblique Enuntiation, *amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*; which is Substantival, being 'he Subject of the Verb *est*, and having *verum* for its Predicate. So, *Invidia gloriæ comes est*, is a Direct Enuntiation; but *Est hoc commune vitium, ut invidia gloriæ comes sit*, is a Compound Sentence, containing the Oblique Enuntiation, *ut invidia gloriæ comes sit*, in Apposition to *hoc*, the Subject of *est*, of which *commune vitium* is the Predicate. Again, *Calet ignis* is a Direct Enuntiation: *Sentimus calere ignem* a Compound Sentence, having the Direct Enuntiation *sentimus*, and the Oblique, *calere ignem*, which is the Object of *sentimus*.
- (b) The Oblique Petition is formed by the Subjunctive Mood, with

or without the Conjunction *ut* or *ne*, or by the Infinitive; following Verbs of *desire*, *command*, *endeavour*, &c. Thus *Mane in sententiâ* is a Direct Petition, which may be expressed in a Compound Sentence by *Oro ut maneas in sententiâ*, *Oro maneas in sententiâ*, or *Oro te manere in sententiâ*.

- (c) The Oblique Interrogation is formed by dependent Interrogatives, whether Pronouns or Particles, governing a Subjunctive Mood. Thus *Quis est?* is a Direct Interrogation: but *Nescio quis sit*, *incertum est quis sit*, are Compound Sentences, containing the Oblique Interrogation, *quis sit*, which is the Object of *nescio*, and the Subject of *est*.
- (2) An Adverbial Sentence is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adverb, answering the questions, *how*, *why*, *when*, &c. Adverbial Sentences are formed by Conjunctions, and are: (a) Consecutive (*so that*); (b) Final (*in order that*); (c) Causal (*because*, *since*); (d) Temporal (*when*, *while*, *until*, &c.); (e) Conditional (*if*, *unless*); (f) Concessive (*although*, *whereas*); (g) Comparative (*as if*, *as though*, &c.).
- (3) An Adjectival Sentence is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adjective or Epithet. It is formed by the Relative Pronoun *qui*, or by a Relative Particle.

The Relative Pronoun *qui quæ quod* (with its Particles) has great influence in Latin Construction. It is of all persons, and may be used compendiously as a substitute for the union of a Conjunction with a Personal Pronoun. Hence it forms Coordinate Sentences when used for *et ego*, *et tu*, *et is*, &c.; for *ego autem*, *tu autem*, *is autem*, &c.; for *ego igitur*, *tu igitur*, *is igitur*, &c.; for *ego enim*, *tu enim*, *is enim*, &c. And it forms Subordinate Sentences when used for *ut ego*, *ut tu*, *ut is*, &c.; for *quia ego*, *quia tu*, *quia is*, &c.; for *si ego*, *si tu*, *si is*, &c.; for *etsi ego*, *etsi tu*, *etsi is*, &c.

**Note.** — It is to be observed that Subordinate Sentences may have others subordinate to them, in relation to which they are therefore principal clauses. From what has been said of Substantival Sentences, it appears that such principal clauses of *Oratio Obliqua* are, mostly, either in the Infinitive or in the Subjunctive Mood. Its subordinate clauses generally take the Subjunctive; as may be seen in the subjoined example: —

**Oratio Directa.** — *Ars earum rerum est, quæ sciuntur; oratoris autem omnis actio opinionibus, non scientiâ continetur: nam et apud eos dicimus, qui nesciunt, et ea dicimus, quæ nescimus ipsi.* — CIC.

**Oratio Obliqua.** — (*Antonius apud Ciceronem docet:*) *Artem earum rerum esse, quæ sciuntur; oratoris autem omnem actionem opinione, non scientiâ, contineri: quia et apud eos dicat, qui nesciant, et ipse dicat, quod nesciat.* — QUINT.

**Oratio Directa** may be virtually oblique, when it contains the statement of an opinion or thought. Thus, the sentence, *Themistocles noctu ambulabat, quod somnum capere non posset*, implies that Themistocles alleged inability to sleep as the reason why he walked by night.

## DE SENTENTIIS SUBSTANTIVALIBUS.

## § 181. (A) Enuntiatio Obliqua.

R. G. — Infinitivus cum Accusativo sui Subjecti

- (a) Subjectivè jungitur Copulæ *est* et Verbis Impersonalibus: ut,  
*Fucinus est vinciri civem Romanum.* — CIC.  
*Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam.* — CIC.  
*Constat leges ad salutem civium inventas esse.* — CIC.

- (b) Objectivè jungitur multis Verbis, in quibus inest *sen-  
 tiendi* aut *declarandi* vis: ut,  
*Pompeios desedissee terræ motu audivimus.* — SEN.  
*Xenophanes ait lunam habitari.* — CIC.

- (c) Appositionem facit aliquando: ut,  
*Illud temerè dictum, sapientes omnes esse bonos.* — CIC.

- Obs. 1. Pro hoc Infinitivo sæpè ponitur *ut* cum Subjunctivo: ut,  
*Reliquum est ut officiis certemus inter nos.* — CIC.  
*Expedit ut civitates sua jura habeant.* — JUST.  
*Illud meū refert, te ut videam.* — CIC.

- Sæpè quòd cum Indicativo, ni poscatur Subjunctivus: ut,  
*Gratum est quòd patriæ civem populoque dedisti.* — JUV.  
*Hoc præstamus maxime feris, quòd loquimur.* — CIC.  
*Mitto quòd omnes meus tempestates subieris.* — CIC.

- (Obs.) *Oportet* et *necesse est*, Subjunctivum regentia, *ut* omittunt: ut,  
*Philosophia servias oportet, ut liber sis.* — CIC.  
*Virtus voluptatis aditus intercludat necesse est.* — CIC.

- Obs. 2. *Sperandi* et *pollicendi* Verba malunt Infinitivum Futuri: ut,  
*Sperabam id me assecuturum.* — CIC.  
*Pollicebatur pecuniam se esse redditurum.* — CIC.

- Obs. 3. Post *metuendi* formulas regunt Subjunctivum *ne* et *ut* pro  
*ne non*: ut,  
*Verendum est ne fumes in urbe sit.* — CIC.  
*O puer, ut sis vitalis metuo.* — HOR.

- Obs. 4. Indignationem notat Infinitivus Interrogans: ut,  
*Mene incepto desistere victum?* — VIAC.  
 Vel ejus vice *ut* cum Subjunctivo: ut,  
*Te ut ulla res frangat?* — CIC.

## § 182. (B) Petitio Obliqua.

R. G. — *Optandi, rogandi, hortandi, imperandi, permittendi, cu-  
 randi, enitendi, efficiendi*, similibusque formulis additur  
 Subjunctivus cum Conjunctionibus *ut, ne*, vel omissâ  
 aliquando Conjunctione:

- (a) Subjectivè: ut,  
*Postulatur ab amico ut sit sincerus.* — CIC.  
*Cavendum est ne assentatori patefacias aures.* — CIC.  
*Hæc omnia prætermittas licet.* — CIC.

- (b) Objectivè: ut,  
*Immortalia ne speres monet annus.* — HOR.  
*Potes efficere ut malè moriar, ne moriar non potes.* — PLIN.  
*Sine te exorem, mi pater.* — TER.
- (c) Per Appositionem: ut,  
*Hoc te rogo, ne demittas animum.* — CIC.  
*Vetus est lex illa, ut idem amici velint.* — CIC.
- Obs. Post multa ex his Verbis æquè placet Infinitiva constructio: ut,  
*Pompeius rem ad arma deduci studebat.* — CÆS.  
*Jubet nos Pythius Apollo noscere nosmet ipsos.* — CIC.

### § 183. (C) Interrogatio Obliqua.

R. G. — Pronominibus et Particulis interrogandi, subordinatè positis, Subjunctivus additur:

- (a) Subjectivè: ut,  
*In beneficio videndum est, quando et cui et quemadmodum et quare demus.* — CIC.
- (b) Objectivè: ut,  
*Tu quotus esse velis rescribe* — HOR.  
*Quis est, quin cernat, quanta vis sit in sensibus?* — CIC.
- (c) Per Appositionem: ut,  
*Ipse quis sit, utrum sit, an non sit, id quoque nescit.*  
 CATULL.

Not. — Talia sunt:

*Quis, quantus, qualis, qui, quot, quotus, unde, ubi, quando,*  
*Quàm, quomobrem, quare, cur, quomodò, num, nè, ut, an, utrum.*

## DE SENTENTIIS ADVERBIALIBUS.

### § 184. (A) Consecutivæ Sententiæ.

R. G. — *Ut* non, *ut* nihil, *ut* nullus, *ut* nemo, consecutivo sensu, Subjunctivum postulant.

- (a) Post Demonstrativa sic, ita, eo, tam, adeo, tot, tantus, talis, is, hic, huc: ut,  
*Quis tam demens est ut suâ voluntate mæreat?* — CIC.  
*Titus ita facilis fuit ut nulli quidquam negaret.* — EUTR.  
*Tantus terror fuit ut egredi nemo sit ausus.* — NEP.  
*Decoris vis ea est ut ab honesto non queat separari.* — CIC.
- (b) Suppresso Demonstrativo: ut,  
*Arboribus consita Italia est, ut tota pomarium videatur.*  
 — VARRO.
- (c) Post Comparativum et quàm: ut,  
*Isocrates majore ingenio est quàm ut cum Lysiâ comparetur.* — CIC.



*Obs. Tantum abest duas sententias sibi subordinatas habet, primam Substantivalem, alteram Adverbialem: ut,*

*Tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes. — CIC.*

§ 185. (B) Finales Sententiæ.

*R. G. — Ut, ne, ut ne, finali sensu, Subjunctivum postulant: ut,*  
*Ut jugulent homines, surgunt de nocte latrones. — JUV.*  
*Legum idcirco servi sumus, ut liberi esse possimus. — CIC.*  
*Ne vana urbis magnitudo sit, Romulus asyllum aperit. — LIV.*  
*Scipio rus abiit, ne ad causam dicendam adesset. — CIC.*  
*Exercenda est animadversio ut ne quid temere agamus. — CIC.*

§ 186. (C) Causales Sententiæ.

*R. G. I. — Quum, causali sensu, Subjunctivum plerumque regit; sed interdum Indicativum: ut,*  
*Quæ quum ita sint, in alia omnia abeo. — CIC.*  
*Quum in Matii familiaritatem venisti, gaudeo. — CIC.*  
*R. G. II. — Quòd, quando, quia, quandoquidem, quoniam, siquidemque, causali sensu, Indicativo gaudent, nisi opus sit Subjunctivo: ut,*  
*Adsunt propterea quòd officium sequuntur. — CIC.*  
*Tacent, quia periculum metunt. — CIC.*  
*Dicite, quandoquidem in molli consedimus herbâ. — VIRG.*  
*Quoniam jam nox est, discedite. — LIV.*

§ 187. (D) Temporales Sententiæ.

*R. G. I. — Quum, quando, quoties, simul, ut, simul atque, ubi, postquam, Conjunctiones Temporis, Indicativum plerumque post se habent, interdum Subjunctivum: ut,*  
*Tua res agitur, paries quum proximus ardet. — HOR.*  
*Ut veni coram, non sum permulta locutus. — HOR.*  
*Miserum est fodere, ubi sitis fauces tenet. — PLAUT.*  
*Zenonem, quum Athenis essem, audiebam frequenter. — CIC.*  
*Decessit Agesilaus, quum in portum venisset. — NEP.*  
*R. G. II. — Dum, donec, quoad, antequam, priusquam, pro sententiâ loci, nunc Indicativum, nunc Subjunctivum capiunt: ut,*  
*Homines, dum docent, discunt. — SEN.*  
*Expectate dum consul fiat Kæso. — LIV.*  
*Cato, quoad vixit, virtutum laude crevit. — NEP.*  
*Oppetire quoad scire possis, quid tibi agendum sit. — CIC.*  
*Antequam opprimit lux, erumpamus. — LIV.*  
*Providentia est, per quam animus aliquid videt, antequam factum sit. — CIC.*

## § 188. (E) Conditionales Sententiæ.

R. G. I. — *Si, nisi*, nunc Indicativo, nunc Coniunctivo, pro re natâ præmittuntur: ut,

*Si vales, bene est.* — CIC.

*Sincerum est nisi vas, quodcunque infundis acescit.* — HOR.

*Si quod erat grande vas, læti afferebant.* — CIC.

*Si noles sanus, curres hydropicus.* — HOR.

*Sume, catelle: negat: si non des, optet.* — HOR.

*Si foret in terris, rideret Democritus.* — HOR.

*Si id scissem, nunquam huc tulissem pedem.* — TER.

*Si Atheniensis esses, clarus nunquam fuisses.* — CIC.

R. G. II. — *Modò, dum, dummodo, modò ut*, conditionali sensu, Subiunctivum regunt: ut,

*Manent ingenia senibus, modò permaneat industria.* — CIC.

*Caligula jactabat illud: Oderint dum metuant.* — SUET.

*Scies, modò ut tacere possis.* — TER.

## § 189. (F) Concessivæ Sententiæ.

R. G. I. — *Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi*, pro re natâ nunc Indicativum, nunc Coniunctivum capiunt: ut,

*Etsi culpâ tenemur, scelere liberati sumus.* — CIC.

*Obtundis, tametsi intelligo.* — TER.

*Etiamsi non is esset Cæsar qui est, tamen ornandus videretur.* — CIC.

R. G. II. — *Quamquam, utut*, Indicativo gaudent: ut,

*Quamquam festinas, non est mora longa.* — HOR.

*Utut erga me est meritis, mihi cordi est tamen.* — PLAUT.

R. G. III. — *Quamvis, quantumvis, licet, ut, quum, ne*, concessivo sensu, Subiunctivum regunt: ut,

*Quod turpe est, quamvis lateat, non fiet honestum.* — CIC.

*Licet vitium sit ambitio, causa virtutum est.* — SEN.

*Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.* — OV.

*Phocion fuit pauper, quum divitissimus esse posset.* — NEP.

*Ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certè est.* — CIC.

Obs. 1. *Quamvis* cum Indicativo reperitur apud historicos et poetas: ut,

*Quamvis ingenio non valet, arte valet.* — OV.

Obs. 2. Eleganter excidunt Coniunctiones *si, etsi*: ut,

*Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes.* — VIRG.

*Naturam expellas furcâ, tamen usque recurret.* — HOR.

## § 190. (G) Comparativæ Sententiæ.

R. G. — Comparativæ Particulæ *quasi, tanquam, ceu, velut*, cum similibus, Subiunctivum regunt: ut,

*Parvi primo ortu jacent, tanquam sine animo sint.* — CIC.

*Tum verò attoniti, ceu templo irrumperet hostis,*

*Exsiluere patres.* — SIL

## DE SENTENTIIS ADJECTIVALIBUS.

- § 191. *R. G. I.* — Relativum, *qui quæ quod*, Indicativo jungitur, nisi opus sit Subjunctivo: ut,  
*Quis fuit, horrendos primus qui protulit enses?* — *OV.*  
*Obs.* Itidem Correlativa *qualis, quantus, quot*; et Universalia *quisquis, quicumque, quocumque*, cum similibus.
- § 192. *R. G. II.* — *Qui*, causali sensu, Subjunctivo gaudet: ut,  
*Miseret tui me, qui hunc facias inimicum tibi.* — *TER.*  
*Obs.* Ita non quo, pro non quod: ut,  
*Non quo quenquam plus amem eo feci.* — *TER.*  
*Not.* — Similiter construitur *non quin* pro *non quia non*.
- § 193. *R. G. III.* — *Qui*, concessivo sensu, Subjunctivo gaudet: ut,  
*Egommet, qui leviter Græcas literas attigissem, tamen Athenis commoratus sum.* — *CIC.*
- § 194. *R. G. IV.* — *Qui*, finali sensu, Subjunctivum regit: ut,  
*Literas misi, quibus et placarem eum et monerem.* — *CIC.*  
*Obs.* Hinc quo pro ut eo Subjunctivum regit: ut,  
*Ager novatur, quo meliores fetus edat.* — *CIC.*
- § 195. *R. G. V.* — *Qui*, consecutivo sensu, Subjunctivum regit:
- (a) Post Demonstrativa, *talīs, is* pro *talīs, tantus, tam, adeo*, similia: ut,  
*Non is sum qui his rebus delecter.* — *CIC.*  
*Nihil tanti est quo vendamus libertatem.* — *CIC.*
  - (b) Omisso Demonstrativo: ut,  
*Audies ex me quod non omnes probent.* — *CIC.*
  - (c) Post Comparativum et *quàm*: ut,  
*Majora deliquerant quàm quibus ignosci posset.* — *LIV.*
  - (d) Post *dignus, indignus, idoneus, aptus*: ut,  
*Dignus est qui imperet.* — *CIC.*
  - (e) Ubicunque significat *talīs ut*: sic enim construitur
    - (1) Post *est, sunt, invenio, reperio, habeo*, similia: ut,  
*Est qui vinci possit.* — *HOR.*  
*Inventus est qui flammis imponeret manum.* — *LIV.*  
*Habes qui assideat, fomenta paret.* — *HOR.*
    - (2) Post *aliquis, pauci, multi, solus*, similia, indefinitè posita: ut,  
*Est aliquid quod non oporteat, etiamsi licet.* — *CIC.*  
*Solus es, Cai Cæsar, cujus in victoriâ nemo ceciderit nisi armatus.* — *CIC.*

- (3) Post *nemo, nihil, nullus*, similia, item post Interrogativa negationem expectantia: ut,

*Nihil est quod tam deceat quàm constantia.* — CIC.

*Quis est qui non oderit protervum pueritium?* — CIC.

- Obs. Relativæ Particulæ *quo, quâ, quomodo, quare, ubi, unde, cur*, cum similibus, iisdem ferè regulis, quibus Relativum *qui quæ quod*, Indicativum vel Subjunctivum postulant: ut,

*Perge quo cœpisti.* — CIC.

*Digna res est ubi nervos intendas.* — TER.

*Erat nihil cur properato opus esset.* — CIC.

- § 196. Not. 1. *Quominus*, post Verba quæ quid *impedimenti* continent, Subjunctivum regit inceptæ, sed *impeditæ* actionis: ut,

*Senectus non impedit quominus literis utamur.* — CIC.

*Non recusavit quominus pœnam subiret.* — NEP.

*Per Afranium stetit quominus dimicaretur.* — CÆS.

- (Obs.) *Ne* post eadem Verba prohibet actionem: ut,

*Pontus erat vetitus ne mergeret æquore terram.* — MANIL.

*Sulpicius intercesserat ne exules reducerentur.* — CIC.

- Not. 2. *Quin* (qui-ne, quî-ne) Subjunctivum regit:

- (a) Pro *qui non* post Negativa et Interrogativa: ut,

*Nihil est quin male narrando possit depravari.* — TER.

*Nullum intermisi diem quin scriberem.* — CIC.

*Quis fundum colit, quin sues habeat?* — VARRO.

- (b) Pro *quid non, ut non*, post negationem vel interrogationem *dubitationis, abstinentiæ, impedimenti, causæ*, et similibus: ut,

*Non dubito quin fuerint ante Homerum poetæ.* — CIC.

*Nec requies quin mox pomis exuberet annus.* — VIRG.

*Facere non possum quin quotidie ad te mittam.* — CIC.

*Prorsus nihil abest quin sim miserrimus.* — CIC.

*Quin ad diem decedam nulla causa est.* — CIC.

*Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiæ positæ sint?* — CIC.

*Quid est causæ quin decemviri coloniam in Janiculum possint deducere?* — LIV.

## DE ALIIS QUIBUSDAM PARTICULIS.

- § 197. (A) *Nedum* Subjunctivo jungitur: ut,

*Mortalia facta peribunt,*

*Nedum sermonum stet honos et gratia vivax.* — HOR.

- (B) *Ne...quidem* negativam vim auget, interpositâ inter *ne* et *quidem* eâ parte sententiæ, in quâ fit *emphasis*:

- (a) Præcedente Verbo cum alterâ Negativâ: ut,

*Non prætereundum est ne id quidem.* — CIO

- (o) Sequentē Verbo sine alterâ Negativâ: ut,  
*Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo.* — CIC.

C. (a) *Nē, an*, interrogativæ particulæ, dubitanter interrogant: *num* responsionem expectat negativam: *nonne*, *annon* affirmativam: ut,

*Qualis est tua mens? potesne dicere?* — CIC.

*An tu me tristem esse putas?* — PLAUT.

*Num negare audes?* — CIC.

*Canis nonne similis lupo est?* — CIC.

- (b) In Duplici Interrogatione sunt hæc varietates:

1. *Utrum* sequente *an*: ut,

*Hæc utrum abundantis an egentis signa sunt?* — CIC.

2. *Num* sequente *an*: ut,

*Num duas habetis patrias an est illa patria communis?* — CIC.

3. *Nē* sequente *an*: ut,

*Romane venio an hic maneo an Arpinum fugio?* — CIC.

4. Particula omissa, sequente *an* aut *nē*: ut

*Interrogatur tria pauca sint an multa?* — CIC.

*Queram justum sit necne poema?* — HOR.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS ORATIONIS OBLIQUÆ.

§ 198. R. G. I.—Sententia, quæ subordinatur Orationi Obliquæ, sive Relativo sive Conjunctione intercedente, Subjunctivum exigit: ut,

*Ais, quoniam sit natura mortalis, immortalem etiam esse oportere.* — CIC.

*Scito me, postquam in urbem venerim, redisse cum libris in gratiam.* — CIC.

*Fateor me oratorem, si modò sim, ex Academiæ spatiis exstitisse.* — CIC.

*Simile veri est, non ex iisdem semper populis exercitus scriptos, quanquam eadem semper gens bellum intulerit.* — LIV.

*Sapientissimum esse dicunt eum, cui, quod opus sit, ipsi veniat in mentem; propius accedere illum, qui alterius bene inventis obtemperet.* — CIC.

*Cæsar ad me scripsit, gratissimum sibi esse quod quieverim.* — CIC.

§ 199. R. G. II.—Sententia Subordinata, quæ opinionem cujuspian vel cogitationem indicat, sive Relativo sive Conjunctione intercedente, Subjunctivum exigit : ut,

*Laudat Africanum Panætius quòd fuerit abstinens.*—CIC.

*Alium rogantes regem misère ad Jovem,*

*Inutilis quoniam esset qui fuerat datus.*—PHÆDR.

*Sapiens non dubitat, si ita melius sit, migrare de vitâ.*—

CIC.

*Darius ejus pontis, dum ipse abesset, custodes reliquit.*

—NEP.

*Etsi nihil habeat in se gloria, cur expetatur, tamen virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur.*—CIC.

*In Hispaniâ prorogatum veteribus imperatoribus est imperium cum exercitibus quos haberent.*—LIV.

*Quum abessem, quotiescunque patria in mentem veniret, hæc omnia occurrebant, colles, campique, et Tiberis, et hoc cælum, sub quo natus educatusque essem.*—LIV.

§ 200. R. G. III.—Relativum vel Conjunctio, quum subordinatur Subjunctivo, Subjunctivum regit : ut,

*Tanta est caritas patriæ, ut vestris etiam legionibus sanctus essem, quòd eam a me servatam esse meminissent.*

—CIC.

*Equidem illud molior, ut mihi Cæsar concedat, ut absim, quum aliquid in senatu contra Cnæum agatur.*—CIC.

*Erat in Hortensio memoria tanta, ut, quæ secum commentatus esset, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, quibus cogitavisset.*—CIC.

Not.—Oratio Obliqua longè excurrit apud Historicos; Enuntiationes in primis, tum etiam his adpersæ Petitiones Interrogationesque : ut,

*Orat Tarquinius Veientes, ne se extorrem egentem ex tanto modò regno cum liberis adolescentibus ante oculos suos perire sinerent : alios peregrè in regnum Romam accitos ; se regem, augentem bello Romanum imperium, a proximis sceleratâ conjuratione pulsum : . . . patriam se regnumque suum repetere, et persequi ingratos cives velle : ferrent opem, adjuvarent ; suas quoque veteres injurias ultum irent, toties casas legiones, agrum ademptum.*—LIV.

*Docebat Cæsar, quàm veteres quàmque justâ causa necessitudinis ipsis cum Æduis intercederent ; quæ senatûs consulta, quoties, quàmque honorifica in eos facta essent ; ut omni tempore totius Galliæ principatum Ædúi tenuissent, prius etiam quàm nostram amicitiam appetissent : populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modò sui nihil deperdere, sed gratiâ, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse : quod verò ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id iis eripi quis pati posset ?*—C.MA.

## PROSODIÆ COMPENDIUM.

---

- § 201. De Syllabarum quantitate disserit,  
Et de Metrorum legibus, Prosodia.
- 

### DE SYLLABARUM QUANTITATE.

#### DEFINITIONES.

1. Mensura Tempus eloquendæ est syllabæ:  
Quod et vocatur Quantitas.  
*Obs.* Vocalis observetur : in vocalium  
Stat quantitate syllabarum quantitas.
  2. *Longi* (—) *brevisque* (∪) Temporis notas habes.  
*Obs.* 1. Singulis longis brevibusque binis  
Par est eademque potestas.  
*Obs.* 2. *Communis* audit illa, quæ interdum brevis,  
Et rursus eadem longa vocalis sonat.  
*Not.*— *H* non habetur consonans, nullamque vim  
Exercet in Prosodiâ.
- 

#### REGULÆ QUANTITATIS GENERALES.

- § 202. *R. G. I.* — Omnis Diphthongus contractaque Syllaba longa est:  
Ut *praēs*, *heū*, *gaūdens* : cōāgo fit cūgo, nīhīl nīl;  
Pro bōvibus bōbus ; mōmentum pro mōrtimentum.  
*Obs.* At tu vocali *præeuntem* corripies *præ*.
- § 203. *R. G. II.* — Dant Derivatis proprium Primaria tempus :  
Sic *sāliceta* *sālix*, *pōmum* *pōmaria* format.  
*Obs.* Fit tamen in multis aliter : sic *āret* *arena*,  
Sic *hūmanus* *hōmo* est ; sic *lūcet* parva *lūcerna*.  
*R. G. III.* — Nec non Simplicium tempus Composita sequuntur :  
A *pūto* sic *repūto*, sic a *mēmor* *immēmor* exstat.  
*Obs.* Sunt excepta tamen : sic *nūbo* *pronūba* format.
- § 204. *R. G. IV.* — Prævia vocali vocalis corripitur : ceu  
*Principium*, *prōhibe* :  
*Obs.* 1. Sed multa hinc excipe Græca : ut,  
*Chālonis*, *Ænēas*, *Clio*, *Myrtūus*, *Enjō*.

- Obs. 2.* *A* longam Primæ priscus Genitivus habebit :  
*Terrâi, auldî* ; sic format Quinta, *diêi* :  
 Scribe tamen *rêi* atque *rêi, fidêi* atque *fidêi*.
- Obs. 3.* Longa Vocativo est penultima vocis in *aius*,  
 Aut *eius* ; *Câi, Pompêi*, hâc lege sonantur.
- Obs. 4.* *I* Verbi *fio* longa est, nisi cùm comes est *er* ;  
 “ *Omnia nunc fient, fieri quæ posse negabam.* ”
- Obs. 5.* *I* dat communem Genitivus in *ius* : ut *ille*  
*Illius illiusque* facit : sic *ius iusque*  
*Totus et unus* habent, *ipse isteque, nullus et ullus* :  
*Alterius* semper breviam ; producit *alius*.
- Obs. 6.* Nunc *Diana* feras agitat, nunc *dîa Diana*.  
 Sic *ðhe* vel *ðhe* ; sed semper dicimus *êheu*.

§ 205. *R. G. V.*—Longa situ vocalis erit, quam bina sequetur  
 Consona ; sic, *pállôr tristis* : seu voce in eâdem  
*J* subit, *x*, aut *z* ; sic, *Ajâx, âxîs, Anâzon*.

*Obs.* Excipe *quadrijugus, bijugus*, quæ corripiunt *i*.

*Not.* — Vocalis, vi curta suâ, communis erit, si  
 Consona postponens liquidam sibi muta sequetur :  
 Sic rectè *lugûbre* melos vel *lugûbre* dices :  
*Dûplex* sive *dûplex*, *Těmessam* sive *Těmessam*.

(*Obs. 1.*) *N* post *g* longam dat semper : ut *âgnus* et *ignis*.  
 Nec minus *m* post *g* ; *těgmen* quod monstrat et *âgmen*.

(*Obs. 2.*) Syllaba si liquidam diviserit altera mutâ,  
 Longa prior semper : quod *sûh-ruit, âb-lue*, monstrant.

§ 206. *R. G. VI.* — Perfecti brevis est geminati syllaba prima :  
 Ut, *pěpuli, didici, pûpugi, cēcidi*, atque *cēcidi*.

*R. G. VII.* — Efficiunt primam Perfecta disyllaba longam,  
 Ut, *vûli, lêgi, mōvique*. Sed excipis octo :  
*Bîbi, dēdi, fûi, fidi,*  
*Stēti, stîti, tûli, scîdi*.

*R. G. VIII.* — Primam producuntque disyllaba ritè Supina,  
 Ut, *visum, lōtum, mōtumque*. Sed excipis octo :  
*Itum, citum, dātum, litum,*  
*Rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum*.

## DE QUANTITATE SYLLABARUM FINALIUM.

§ 207. *R. I.* — Pleraque produces Monosyllaba, qualia *mē, vēr*.

*Obs.* Corripiuntur in *l, b, d, t*, ut, *vêl, sûb, id, êt, stât* :  
*Es* cum compositis, ut *adês* : *quê, vê*, quumque rogat, *nê*.  
*Fâc, nêc, ân, fêr, pêr, iêr, côr, quîs, bis, is* et cts.



§ 208. *R. II.*—Producuntur in *A*; ceu *frustrā, intrāque, parāque.*

*Obs.* Sed casus rectos et quartos excipe: quales,  
*Carminā Musā canit; resonant Amaryllidā sylvæ.*  
 Atque vocativos plerosque, ut *Orestā, Thyestā:*  
*Ejā, iā* particulas, cumque his *quid,* quæ breviant *a.*

§ 209. *R. III.* — Corripiuntur in *E*: ceu *legē timetē carcerē.*

*Obs.* *E* longam Primæ casus Quintæque requirunt,  
 Ut *Thisbē, speciē*: quæ derivantur ab illis,  
 Ut *quarē* atque *hodiē*: contractaque, qualia *Tempē*:  
 Verba in eo primi numeri Mandantia, ut *audē*:  
 (Sed *cavē* sive *cavē* scribendi est æqua potestas)  
 Ex Adjectivis Adverbia ducta Secundæ,  
 Ut *miserē*: jungantur *ohē, fermēque, ferēque.*

§ 210. *R. IV.* — Producuntur in *I*: ceu *dicī, orbīque, dolīque.*

*Obs.* Attamen hinc multos Græcorum deme Dativos  
 Atque Vocativos, ut *Thyrsidī, Phyllidī, Chlorī*:  
*dicubī, necubī* deme, nisi et *quasi*, queis brevis est *i.*  
 (At *mihi, ubi, tibi, ibi, sibi*, communem faciunt *i.*)

§ 211. *R. V.* — Producuntur in *O*: ceu *virgō, ultrōque, juvōque.*

*Obs.* At *putō* finalem, *sciō, nesciō*, corripiunt *O*:  
 Adde *modō* et compōsta, *duō, octō, egō*, queis *citō* junge.  
*O* proprium claudens nomen communis habetur,  
 Ut *Matho*, (sed longa est in Græcis semper, ut *Argō*).  
 Quædam Flaccus habet communia, plurima Naso,  
 Plura poetarum corruptior addidit ætas.

*R. VI.* — Producuntur in *U*: sic *tū, dictūque, diūque.*

*R. VII.* — Corripiuntur in *Y*: sic dant *chelŷ, Tiphŷ*, poetæ.

§ 212. *R. VIII.* — In *C* producuntur, ut *illāc* (excipe *doncc*).

*R. IX.* — Corripe in *L, D, T*: sic *Hannibāl, illūd, amavīt.*

*R. X.* — Corripiuntur in *N*: ceu *culmēn.*

(At excipe Græca  
 Multa, ut *Hymēn, Acrōn*, vocali prædita longā.)

*R. XI.* — Corripiuntur in *R*: ceu *calcār, amabitūr, Hectōr.*

*Obs.* Græca tamen, *cratēr, æthēr*, producis, et *aēr.*

§ 213. *R. XII.* — Producuntur in *As*: ut *terrās.*

(Excipe Græca,  
 Queis Genitivus *-ādis*, ceu *Pallās*: et excipe casus  
 Cræcentūm quartos, ceu *lampadās*: his *andēs* adde.)

**R. XIII. — Producentur in *Es*, ut *sedēs* atque *viderēs*.**

*Obs.* Excipienda tamen quæ Græci corripunt; ut  
*Troadēs*: excipias etiam *penēs*, excipiasque  
 Crescentis brevis est penultima queis Genitivi,  
 Ut *agēs* (at *pariēs* semper producit, atque  
*Pēs* cum compositis: *abiēs*, *ariēsque*, *Cerēsque*).

**§ 214. R. XIV. Corripiuntur in *Is*: ceu *dicētis*, *utilis*, *ensis*.**

*Obs.* Obliqui casus plurales excipiuntur,  
 Ut *terris*, *vobis*: etiam persona secunda  
 In primo numero Quartæ Præsentis, ut *audis*:  
 Composita a *vis*, *sis*: *malis*, *noctisque*, *vellisque*.  
 (Sed *ris* Præteriti et persona secunda Futuri  
 Activæ Vocis rectè communis habetur;  
*Feceris*, *addideris*, *tuleris*.) Et nomina produc  
 Crescentis longa est penultima queis Genitivi,  
 Ut *Samnis*: itidem *Simōis*, *gratissque*, *fortissque*.

**§ 215. R. XV. — Producentur in *Os*: ut *ventōs* atque *sacerdōs*.**

*Obs.* Corripienda tamen quæ Græci corripunt, ut  
*Phasidōs*, *Argōs*, *epōs*. Sic *compōs* et *impōs*, *ōs*, *exōs*.

**R. XVI. — Corripiuntur in *Us*: ceu *tempūs*, *amamūs*, et *intūs*.**

*Obs.* Hinc Quartæ casus contractos excipe, ut *artūs*:  
 Longaque crescentis penultima queis Genitivi,  
 Ut *tellūs incūsque*, *juventūs* atque *senectūs*:  
 Producta a Græcis, ut *Sapphūs* atque *Melampūs*,  
 Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen *Iesūs*.

**R. XVII. — Corripiuntur in *Ys*: *chelys* ut, *chlamys*, *Othrys*,  
*Erinnys*.**

*Not.* — Ducit ab *Auctorum* scriptis ea syllaba tempus,  
 Regula quam longam nulla brevemve facit.

**DE METRORUM LEGIBUS.****DEFINITIONES.**

- § 216. 1. In proferendis syllabis *Arsin* voca  
 Elationem vocis (huic *Ictus* comes);  
*Thesis*que contra vocis est depressio.  
*Pes* syllabarum est certa consecutio:  
 Pedumque certa consecutio *Rhythmus*:  
 Apud poetas *Versus* est nomen Rhythmi;  
 Certumque Versuum ordinem *Carmen* voca  
*Metrum*ve: et audit certa pars Versus *Metrum*.
- § 217. 2. Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur *Iambus*: ◡ -  
 Quod si longa brevi præcesserit, ille *Trocheus*: - ◡  
*Pyrrhichius* brevibus voluit consistere binis: ◡ ◡

*Spondeus* binis voluit consistere longis : --

*Dactylus* efficitur longâ brevibusque duabus : -- ∪ ∪

Postque breves binas *Anapestus* simplice longâ : ∪ ∪ --

*Tribrachyn* huc brevibus formatum subijce ternis. ∪ ∪ ∪

Not. 1. — Quem Thesis incipiat, dices *ascendere* Rhythmum :

Quale tuus specimen versus, Iambe, dabit :

Cœperit ex Arsi contra, *descendere* dices ;

Dactyle, tu talem, tuque, Trochæe, facis.

Not. 2. — *Metrum* in Dactylico carmine singuli,

At bini in reliquis constituunt pedes.

Not. 3. — Complendis metris cui syllaba deficit una,

Hic Versus Catalecticus audit.

Complendis metris cui deerit syllaba duplex,

Ille Brachycatalecticus audit.

Syllaba cui superest completis unica metris,

Versus Hypercatalecticus audit.

Cui nihil aut deest aut superest, teres atque rotundus,

Versus is Acatalecticus audit.



## DE SCANSIONE ET FIGURIS SCANSIONIS.

§ 218. *Scansio*, | quam vari|â con|cinnant | arte Fi|guræ,  
Distribu|it Ver|sum | pro rati|one Pe|dum.

A. Vocalem elidit *Synalœpha* in limite vocis,

Si Vocalis erit subnexæ in limine vocis ;

*Phyllid' am' | ant' ali|us : nam | me dis|cedere | flevit.*  
(pro *Phyllida, amo, ante.*)

Obs. 1. Interdum legem *Synalœphæ* infringit *Hiatus* :

*Ter sunt | cona|fi im'ponere | Pelid' | Ossam.*

Obs. 2. *Hæu, O, et ah* nunquam vocalis proxima delet.

B. *Ecthlipsis* Vocalem atque *m* de limite trudit,

Si Vocalis erit subnexæ in limine vocis ;

*O cu|ras homin' | O quant' | est in | rebus in|ane.*  
(pro *hominum, quantum.*)

§ 219. C. Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæresis* audit,

Ut monstrant *deest, dein, aureos, alvearia, Thesei.*

Obs. Apud poetas jura consonantium

Subinde sumit *I* vel *U* :

*" Fluviorum rex Eridanus. Labat æriete murus.*  
*Gænua tremunt. Pectunt et tēnuia vellera Seres."*

D. Una sed in binas divisa *Diæresis* audit :

Quod tibi *Naiades* monstrant flavique *Suævi.*

Obs. Ponitur *U* pro *V* : *siliās, solūitque* videbis.

- § 220. E. Ante pedum finem *Cæsura* vocabula finit:  
 “*Lumina, labentem || cælo || quæ ducitis annum.*”—VIRG.  
*Obs.* Quam fecit natura brevem, vocalis in Arsi  
 Longa fit interdum, *Cæsura* Ictuque favente:  
 “*Pectoribus || inhians spirantia consulit exta.*”  
 F. Secernit vocemque pedemque *Dialysis* unâ:  
 “*Lumina || labentem cælo quæ || ducitis || annum.*”  
*Not.*—Ultima communis censetur syllaba versûs.

## DE VERSIBUS DACTYLICIS.

### I. DE HEXAMETRO SIVE SENARIO DACTYLICO.

- § 221. Hexameter pedibus senis concluditur: horum  
 Dactylus est quintus: sextâ statione locatur  
 Spondeus; reliquisque locis reperitur utervis.  
*Obs.* 1. Quintâ| sede lo|cat re|rum gravi|tas spon|deum.  
*Obs.* 2. Hexametrum *Cæsura* solet distinguere, quâ pes  
 Tertius aut quartus || sese || discernit in Arsi.  
 (*Obs.* 1.) Post Thesin interdum *Cæsura* est unica Versûs:  
 “*Impiger, iracundus, || inexorabilis, acer.*”—HOR.  
 (*Obs.* 2.) Damnaris versum, *Cæsura* qui vacet omni.  
*Obs.* 3. Efficit Hexametri de more disyllaba finem  
 Sive trisyllaba vox, rarò polysyllaba, rarò,  
 Altera nî præeat, claudit monosyllaba versum.  
*Obs.* 4. Ultima perrarò sorbetur syllaba versûs:  
 Quod quum contingit, tum versus *Hypermæter* audit:  
 “*Omnia | Mercuri|o simi|lis, vo|cemque co|loremque,*  
*Et cri|nes fla|vos et |membra de|cora ju|venta.*”—VIRG.

### II. DE PENTAMETRO DACTYLICO.

- § 222. Pentameter partes binas habet: utraque binis  
 Procedit pedibus, sequitur quos syllaba longa.  
 Primam pro lubitu Spondeus, Dactylus, intrans:  
 Dactylicis tantum pedibus pars altera gaudet.  
*Obs.* 1. Pentametri primam partem *Cæsura* secundâ  
 Separat: atque loco Synalœpha excluditur illo.  
 “*Quamvis| ingeni|o || non valet, | arte va|let.*”  
*Obs.* 2. Pentametri format de more disyllaba finem.  
 (*Obs.*) Est licet ad finem, si fit Synalœpha, remitti:  
 “*Invi|tis ocu|lis || litteræ | lecta tu|a est.*”  
 Vel si vox anteit monosyllaba, qualis in illo:  
 “*Premia | si studi|o || consequor | ista, eat | est.*”  
*Obs.* 3. Ne partis primæ sit vox monosyllaba finis,  
 Nî vox præcedat monosyllaba, qualis in illo:  
 “*Magna ta|men spes | est || in boni|tate De|i.*”  
 Vel vox interdum brevibus confecta duabus:  
 “*Hæc præ|stat sine | vi || sceptræ tre|menda Jo|vi.*”

### III. DE CARMINE HEROICO ET DE CARMINE ELEGIACO.

§ 223. Hexametris gaudet solis Heroica Musa :  
Hexametros Elegi Pentametrosque ligant.

Obs. Disticha perfectum malunt includere sensum :  
Nec simplicis sententiæ  
Constructionem distichis scindi placet.



### § 224. HEXAMETRI DACTYLICI

(QUI ET VERSUS MEMORIALES SUNT DE VOCUM DIFFERENTIA).

Cantat *acanthis* avis, sed floret *acanthus* in agris.  
In silvīs *ācer* est : equus *ācer* Olympia vincit.  
Qui fert *arma humeris*, *armo* dux fertur equino.  
Mel *vaga* condit *āpis* : deus est *Ægyptius Apis*.  
Vexat *asilus* equos ; miseros excepit *asylum*.  
Qui sculpit, *cælat*, qui servat condita, *celat*.  
Voce *cānes* ; duc eja *cānes*, nisi tempora *cānes*.  
Tenduntur nexi *casses* ; nitet *aerea cassis*.  
*Casside* cinge caput : capiuntur *cassibus* apri.  
*Cēdo* facit *cessi* ; *cecīdi cado* ; *cædo cecidi*.  
*Clava* ferit : *clavus* firmat ; *clavisque* recludit.  
Fert ancilla *cōlum* ; penetrat res humida *cōlum*.  
Rusticus arva *cōlit*, sed *cōlat* turbida vina.  
*Cominus* ense feris ; jactā cadis *eminus* hastā.  
Ut placeas *cōmiti*, mores *cōmes* indue *cōmes*.  
*Cōmædi scenam*, *cōmēdones* quærite *cœnam*.  
Consule doctores ; sic tu *tibi consulis* ipsi.  
Bellandi *cupīdo* nocuit sua sæpè *cupīdo*.  
Carmina *dicuntur*, Domino dum templa *dicantur*.  
Solvere *diffidit*, nodum qui *diffidit* ense.  
Uxorem ducit vir ; nubit sponsa marito.  
*Edūcat* hic catulos, ut mox *edūcat* in apros.  
Si tibi non est *æs*, *ēs* inops, et pingua non *ēs*.  
Fallit sæpè *frētum* placido nimis æquore *frētum*.  
*Fructus* arboribus, *fruges* nascuntur in agris.  
Sol nubes *fūgat*, et *fūgit* irreparabile tempus.  
Ales *hirundo* volat ; nat *hirudo* ; vernat *arundo*.  
Per quod quis peccat, per *idem* mox plectitur *idem*.  
Difficilis *lābor* est, cujus sub pondere *lābor*.  
Frons pueri est *lēvis*, *lēvis* autem lingua puellæ.  
In silvis *lēpōres*, in verbis quære *lēpōres*.  
Non licet asse *mihi*, qui *me* non asse licetur.  
*Mālo* ego *māla* meā bona quā *māla* frangere *mālā*.  
*Merr* vēnit, mercesque vēnit quæsitā labore.  
*Mulcet* amante manu, dum *mulget* Sylvia vaccam.

Carus eris Domino, *miseris* si *miseris* aurum.  
*Nūtere*, parve puer, cupies quicumque *nūtere*.  
*Oblīta* quæ fuco rubet, est *oblīta* decori.  
*Occidit* ille dolo turpi, quem *occidit* amicus.  
*Opperior* Caium qui pullo *operitur* amictu.  
*Os* (ōris) *mandat*, sed *os* (ossis) *manditur* ore.  
*Uxoris pārere* et *pārere*, *pārere* mariti est.  
*Pārentes* pueri faciunt gaudere *pārentes*.  
 Nī *pendere vōles*, non debita *pendere nōles*.  
*Lude pilā*: *pilum* torquetur: *pila* columna est.  
 Pro reti et regione *plāga* est; pro verberare *plāga*.  
 Sunt cives urbis *pōpulus*; est *pōpulus* arbor.  
 Si vitare *pōtes*, ne plus duo pocula *pōtes*.  
*Prora* prior, *puppis* pars postera, et ima *carina*.  
*Tribula* grana terunt; *tribuli* nocuere novali.  
*Spondet vas* (*vadis*), at *vas* (*vasis*) continet escam.  
*Vas* caput, at nummos tantum *præs* præstat amicē.  
 Si transire *vēlis* maris undas, utere *vēlis*.

## ELEGORUM EXEMPLA

(QUI ET VERBA MEMORIALES SUNT).

*Fidē*, sed ante *vidē*: qui *fidit*, nec benè *vidit*,  
 Fallitur: ipse *vidē* ne capiare *fidē*.  
*Forfice* sartores, tonsores *forcipe* gaudent;  
 At faber ignitum *forcipe* prensat opus.  
*Consortes* fortuna eadem, *socios* labor idem,  
 Unum *collegas* efficit officium:  
 At caros faciunt schola, ludus, mensa, *sodales*:  
 Sulcus agri *lira* est: dat *lyra* tacta modos.  
 Ne sit *securus*, qui non est *tutus* ab hoste;  
 Ad flumen *ripas*, ad mare *littus* habes.  
 Sunt ætate *senes*; *veteres* vixere priores:  
 Quod non est *simulo dissimuloque* quod est.  
*Ungula* conculcat; lacerat, tenet, arripit *unguis*;  
*Ūlva* tenax stagno nascitur, *alga* mari.  
*Vallamus* proprie castra, at *sepimus* ovile,  
 Hasta *teres* dici, sphaera *rotunda* potest.  
 Quod scriptum est *dele*, sed flammam *exstingue* lucernæ;  
 Lingua cibum *gustat*, qui bene cunque *sapit*.  
 Est in carne *cutis*, detracta e corpore *pellis*;  
*Tergum* pandit homo; bellua *tergus* habet.  
 Pistor habet *furnum*; *fornace* hypocausta calescent:  
 Hæc *nōta* Grammatici non mihi *nōta* fuit.  
 Anne *nōvi* quid habes? Alium pete: nil ego *nōvi*.  
 Quod minimè *rēfert* garrulus ille *rēfert*.  
 Si quā fortè *sēdes*, atque est tibi commoda *sēdes*,  
 Illā *sēdē sēdē*; fōrs nova tuta parum est.

## TRANSLATIONS

OF THE

## LATIN RULES AND EXAMPLES.

## § 17.

Poema, <i>a poem</i> , n.	Æquōr, <i>a smooth surface (sea)</i> , n.
Mare, <i>a sea</i> , n.	Marmōr, <i>marble (sea)</i> , n.
Leo, <i>a lion</i> , m.	Cor, <i>the heart</i> , n.
Natio, <i>a nation</i> , f.	Fulgūr, <i>lightning</i> , n.
Caro, <i>flesh</i> , f.	Ebūr, <i>ivory</i> , n.
Ordo, <i>order</i> , m.	Jecūr, <i>the liver</i> , n.
Virgo, <i>a virgin</i> , f.	Ætas, <i>age</i> , f.
Homo, <i>a man</i> , c.	Vās, <i>a vessel</i> , n.
Nemo, <i>no man</i> , c.	Vas, <i>a surety</i> , m.
Turbo, <i>a whirlwind</i> , m.	Mas, <i>a male</i> , m.
Ligo, <i>a spade</i> , m.	As, <i>a pound</i> , n.
Macedo, <i>a Macedonian</i> , m.	Nubes, <i>a cloud</i> , f.
Lac, <i>milk</i> , n.	Milēs, <i>a soldier</i> , c.
Sōl, <i>the sun</i> , m.	Segēs, <i>standing corn</i> , f.
Mel, <i>honey</i> , n.	Quiēs, <i>rest</i> , f.
Fel, <i>gall</i> , n.	Obsēs, <i>a hostage</i> , c.
Rēn, <i>the kidney</i> , m.	Præsēs, <i>a president</i> , c.
Sindōn, <i>fine linen</i> , f.	Pēs, <i>a foot</i> , m.
Lumen, <i>light</i> , n.	Mercēs, <i>hire</i> , f.
Calcār, <i>a spur</i> , n.	Herēs, <i>an heir</i> , c.
Juhār, <i>a sunbeam</i> , n.	Æs, <i>copper</i> , n.
Far, <i>meal</i> , n.	Præs, <i>a surety</i> , m.
Carcēr, <i>a prison</i> , n.	Avīs, <i>a bird</i> , f.
Vēr, <i>spring</i> , n.	Amnis, <i>a river</i> , m.
Patēr, <i>a futher</i> , m.	Lapīs, <i>a stone</i> , m.
Imber, <i>a shower</i> , m.	Cinīs, <i>ashes</i> , m.
Itēr, <i>a journey</i> , n.	Pulvīs, <i>dust</i> , m.
Latēr, <i>a brick</i> , m.	Lis, <i>strife</i> , f.
Honōr, <i>honour</i> , m.	Samnis, <i>a Samnite</i> , m.
Arbōr, <i>a tree</i> , f.	Quirīs, <i>a Roman</i> , m.

Dis, *Pluto*, m.  
 Sanguis, *blood*, m.  
 Glis, *a dormouse*, m.  
 Dōs, *a dowry*, f.  
 Flōs, *a flower*, m.  
 Os, *a mouth*, n.  
 Custos, *a guardian*, c.  
 Bōs, *an ox*, c.  
 Os, *a bone*, n.  
 Virtūs, *virtue*, f.  
 Palūs, *a marsh*, f.  
 Pecus, *a beast*, f.  
 Tellūs, *earth*, f.  
 Rūs, *the country*, n.  
 Mūs, *a mouse*, m.  
 Grus, *a crane*, f.  
 Sus, *a swine*, c.  
 Vulnūs, *a wound*, n.  
 Tempūs, *time*, n.  
 Pecūs, *cattle*, n.  
 Laus, *praise*, f.  
 Fraus, *deceit*, f.  
 Puls, *pulse*, f.  
 Frons, *a brow*, f.  
 Pars, *a part*, f.  
 Frons, *a leaf*, f.  
 Glans, *an acorn*, f.  
 Trabs, *a beam*, f.

Stirps, *a trunk*, f.  
 Hyems, *winter*, f.  
 Cælebs, *a bachelor*, m.  
 Princeps, *chief*, c.  
 Caput, *a head*, n.  
 Pax, *peace*, f.  
 Fax, *a torch*, f.  
 Judex, *a judge*, c.  
 Vibex, *a weal*, f.  
 Vervex, *a wether*, m.  
 Nex, *death*, f.  
 Lex, *law*, f.  
 Grex, *a flock*, m.  
 Remex, *a rower*, m.  
 Senex, *an old person*, c.  
 Supellex, *furniture*, n.  
 Cornix, *a crow*, f.  
 Calix, *a cup*, m.  
 Strix, *a screech-owl*, f.  
 Nix, *snow*, f.  
 Vox, *a voice*, f.  
 Nox, *night*, f.  
 Nux, *a walnut-tree*, f.  
 Lux, *light*, f.  
 Conjux, *a spouse*, c.  
 Phryx, *a Phrygian*, m.  
 Lynx, *a lynx*, m.  
 Arx, *a citadel*, f.

§ 21. (Dant) The following nouns make (*im pro em*) *im* instead of *em* (Accusativo) in the Accusative case; (*i pro e*) and *i* instead of *e* (in Ablativo) in the Ablative: buris, *a ploughtail*; cucumis, *a cucumber*; amussis, *a carpenter's rule*; ravis, *hoarseness*; sitis, *thirst*; vis, *force*; (et) and tussis, *a cough*; (et) and (flumina) names of Rivers (quæ claudit *is*) which end in *is*; (ut) as Albis, *the Elbe*; Liris, *the Garigliano*; Tiberis, *the Tiber*.\* (Sumunt) The following take (*im vel em*) either *im* or *em* (Accusativo) in the Accusative case, (*i vel e*) and either *i* or *e* (in Ablativo) in the Ablative: neptis, *a grand-daughter*; febris, *a fever*; messis, *a harvest*; clavis, *a key*; puppis, *a ship's stern*; pelvis, *a pan*; restis, *a rope*; navis, *a ship*; securis, *an axe*; turris, *a tower*; (adde his) add to these, sementis, *seed-time*; (atque) and strigilis, *a flesh-brush*.†

\* Also some nouns of Greek origin in *is*; as, Syrtis, Charybdis, poesis.

† The following nouns sometimes have Abl. Sing. in *i*: amnis, anguis, avis, civis, classis, finis, fustis, ignis, unguis, imber, supellex. Notice ruri, *in the country*; vesperi, *at eventide*.



(Neutra) Neuter Nouns (quæ exeunt) which end (in *al*, *ar*, *e*), in *al*, *ar*, and *e*, (gaudent) prefer (ingere) to form (*i* Singularis Ablativi) *i* in the Ablative Singular, (*ia* Pluralis Nominativi) and *ia* in the Nominative Plural. (His excepta sunt) From these are excepted (in *ar*) the following in *ar*: *baccar*, *a kind of plant*; *nectar*, *nectar*; *jubar*, *a sunbeam*; *far*, *corn or meal*.

(Quæ efferunt) Those which form (*ium* pro *um*) *ium* instead of *um* (Plurali Genitivo) in the Genitive case Plural (sunt) are, 1. (*i* formantia Ablativo) Nouns forming *i* in the Ablative Singular; 2. (non crescentia Genitivo) Nouns not increasing in the Genitive case; 3. (pleraque) most Nouns (in *x* vel *s*) ending in *x* or *s* (positis post consonantem) following a consonant\*; 4. (cum aliis Monosyllabis) with other Nouns of One Syllable; *mas*, *a male*; *mus*, *a mouse*; *nix*, *snow*; *nox*, *night*; *os*, gen. *ossis*, *a bone*; *cos*, *a whetstone*; *sal*, *salt*; *sol*, *the sun*; *cor*, *the heart*; *pax*, *peace*; *glis*, *a dormouse*; *lis*, *strife*; (et) and *dos*, *a dowry*. (His excipienda sunt) From these must be excepted (quæ *um* libenter efferunt) the following, which prefer to form *um*: *vates*, *a prophet*, *prophetess*, *poet*, or *poetess*; *senex*, *an old man*; *pater*, *a father*; *panis*, *bread*; (et) and *accipiter*, *a hawk*; (et) and *canis*, *a dog*; *frater*, *a brother*; *mater*, *a mother*; *juvenis*, *a youth*; (et sæpius) and generally *apis*, *a bee*; *volucris*, *a bird*.†

§ 70. (Viri) Names of Men, (Populi) names of Peoples, (et) and (Divi) names of Gods, (Venti) names of Winds, (Menses) names of Months, (Montes) names of Mountains,

\* Many nouns in *as* either take or reject *i* in Gen. Pl., *as*, *parens*, *parentium*, or *parentum*. So all Present Participles.

Nouns in *as* *ātis*, *is* *Itis*, *as* *ācis*, *ix*, *icis*, often form Gen. Pl. in *ium*; *as* *civitas*, *civitatum*.

Several monosyllables and other nouns of this Declension fluctuate in the formation of the Gen. Pl., and the student must observe the usage of writers.

† All Adjectives following the 3d Decl. form Acc. Sing. Masc. in *em*. Parisyllabic adjectives form Abl. Sing. in *i*; *as*, *tristis*, *tristi*; imparisyllables in *i* or *e*; and of these, Participles and Comparatives prefer *e*; others *i*, except a few which take *e*; *as* *dives*, *pauper*, *sospes*, *superstes*. Adjectives of this Declension form Nom. Pl. Neut. in *ia*, except the Comparatives, and *vetus*, *vetera*. And those which form Nom. in *ia* form Gen. Pl. in *ium*, except *celer*, *dives*, *inops*, *pauper*, and some others. *Memor*, *uber*, *degener*, have no Neut. Pl., and form Gen. Pl. in *um*.

(Rivi) names of Rivers, (sunt) are (Generis Masculini) of the Masculine Gender. (Plantæ) Names of Plants, (Divæ) names of Goddesses, (Feminæ) names of Women, (Terræ) names of Countries, (Urbes) names of Cities, (Insulæ) names of Islands, (sunt, are) (Generis Feminini) of the Feminine Gender. \* (Vox indeclinabilis) Any undeclined Word (est) is (Neutrius Generis) of the Neuter Gender. (Sunt) The following are (Communis Generis) of the Common Gender : civis, *a citizen* ; hostis, *an enemy* ; juvenis, *a young person* ; testis, *a witness* ; iudex, *a judge* ; artifex, *an artizan* ; auctor, *an author* ; exsul, *an exile* ; opifex, *an artificer* ; comes, *a companion* ; heres, *an heir* ; hospes, *a guest or host* ; dux, *a leader* ; obses, *a hostage* ; interpres, *an interpreter* ; conjux, *a husband or wife* ; incola, *an inhabitant* ; sacerdos, *a priest or priestess* ; vindex, *an avenger* ; adolescens, *a young man or woman* ; infans, *an infant* ; index, *an informer* ; parens, *a parent* ; præsul, *a president* ; par, *a mate* ; custos, *a guardian* ; municeps, *a burgess* ; satelles, *a body-guard* ; bos, *an ox or cow* ; miles, *a soldier* ; vates, *a seer or poet* ; augur, *a soothsayer* ; grus, *a crane* ; canis, *a dog* ; tigris, *a tiger* ; serpens, *a serpent* ; sus, *a swine* ; (jungimus) we add dama, *a deer* ; talpa, *a mole*. †

§ 71. (A et e) Words ending in *a* and *e* (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine ; (as et es) words ending in *as* and *es* (sunt) are (Masculina) Masculine.

(Masculorum nomina in *a*) The names of Males ending in *a* (sunt) are (Masculina) Masculine : (ut) as, nauta or navita, *a sailor* ; verna, *a slave born in his master's house* ; (et) and poeta, *a poet* ; scurra, *a buffoon* ; scriba, *a notary* ; (et) and propheta, *a prophet*.

\* Winds follow the Gender of ventus, months of mensis, mountains of mons, rivers of fluvius, plants of arbor. Some rivers are Fem., as Styx, Lethe, Allia. Many names of Mountains are Fem., as Ossa, Œta, Ætna, Rhodope, Alpes, &c. ; some Neuter, as Soracte, Pelion. Some names of Plants are Masculine, as oleaster, *a wild olive* ; some Neuter, as siler, *a withy*. Some names of Cities are Masculine, as Sulmo, Selinus ; and those in *i*, as Delphi, Veii ; some Neuter, as Tibur, Anxur, Tarentum, Præneste.

† Those names of Animals which are found in only one gender are called Epicæna ; and the words mas or femina must be used when it is necessary to distinguish the sex : as Masc. passer, *a sparrow* ; passer femina, *a hen-sparrow* ; Fem. vulpes, *a fox* ; vulpes mas or mascula, *a dog-fox*.

§ 72. (*Us et er*) The terminations *us* and *er* belong (Masculinis) to Masculine Nouns; (*um*) the termination *um* (tribuitur) is assigned (Neutris) to Neuter Nouns.

(In *us*) The following Nouns in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: *alvus, the belly*; *arctus, the Bear constellation*; *carbasus, canvass*; *colus, a distaff*; *humus, the ground*; *methodus, a method*.\* *Virus, poison*; *pelagus, the sea*; (Neutra) are Neuter. *Vulgus, the common people*, (*fere sit*) may generally be (Neutrum) Neuter: (subinde) now and then (fit Masculum) it is made Masculine.

§ 73. (Masculis) Among Masculine words (*inseritur*) is placed (*quod claudit o, or, os, vel er*) any Noun which ends in *o, or, os, or er*; (*et*) and (Nomen) any Noun (*desinens in es*) ending in *es*, (*si*) if (*flectit casus impares*) it forms imparisyllabic cases [that is, if it increases in the Genitive case Singular].

(*Illa*) Those Nouns (*quæ desinunt in do et go*) which end in *do* and *go* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine; (*sed*) but (*manent*) the following remain (Masculina) Masculine: *cardo, a hinge*; *ligo, a spade*; *ordo, order*; (*atque*) and *margo, a margin*.

(In *io*) Nouns in *io* (*sunt*) are (Feminina) Feminine: (*illa*) those (*tantum*) only (Masculina) are Masculine, (*quæ*) which (*vel spectabis*) you may either see (*oculis*) with your eyes (*vel tu tractabis*) or you may touch (*manibus*) with your hands.†

*Caro, gen. carnis, flesh* (*mavult*) prefers (*addere se*) to be added (Femininis) to Nouns feminine.

(*Pauca in or*) A few Nouns in *or* (*sunt Neutra*) are Neuter: *æquor, the level of the sea or of a plain*; *ador, parched corn*; *marmor, marble, or the smooth sea*; *cor, the heart*. *Arbor, a tree*, (*est Femininum*) is Feminine.

*Cos, a whetstone*, (*et*) and *dos, a dowry*, (*sunt Feminina*) are Feminine: (*utrumque os*) the two words, *os ossis, a bone*; and *os oris, a mouth*; (Neutra) are Neuter.‡

(*Multa in er*) Many Nouns in *er* (*sunt*) are (Neutra) Neuter: *verber, a stripe*; *siler, a withy*; *acer, a maple*; *ver, spring*; *tuber, a wen*; *uber, a teat*; (*et*) and *cadaver*,

\* Also, *vannus, a winnowing-fan*, is fem.

† As *papilio, a butterfly*; *scipio, a staff*. Numerals in *io* are masc., as *ternio, senio*.

‡ The Greek words *chaos, epos, melos*, are Neuter.

*a carcass*; piper, *pepper*; iter, *a journey*; (et) and papaver, *a poppy*.

(Æs), *brass* or *copper*, (est neutrum) is neuter; (sex in *es*) six Nouns in *es* (quæ) which (flectunt casus impares) form imparisyllabic cases (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine: compes, *a fetter*; teges, *a mat*; merces, *reward*, *hire*; merges, *a cornsheaf*; quies, *rest*; seges, *standing corn*.\*

§ 74. (Inseras Femininis) You must place among Feminine words (quæ claudunt *is*, *x*, *aus*, et *as*) those which end in *is*, *x*, *aus*, and *as*, (*s* cum consonante nexa) in *s* immediately following a consonant, (*es* æqualiter inflexa) and *es* forming parisyllabic cases [that is, not increasing in the Genitive case Singular].

(Multa) Many Nouns (quæ claudit *is*) which end in *is* (sunt) are (Masculini Generis) of the Masculine Gender: amnis, *a river*; axis, *an axle*; callis, *a path*; collis, *a hill*; caulis, *a stalk*; cucumis, *a cucumber*; (et) and follis, *a leathern bag* or *bellows*; fascis, *a bundle*; funis, *a rope*; fustis, *a cudgel*; finis, *an end* or *boundary*; ignis, *fire*; orbis, *a circle*; (atque) and crinis, *hair*; panis, *bread*; piscis, *a fish*; postis, *a doorpost*; ensis, *a sword*; sentis, *a bramble*; corbis, *a basket*; torquis, *a chain*; mensis, *a month*; torris, *a firebrand*; unguis, *a nail* or *talon*; (et) and canalis, *a conduit*; vectis, *a lever*; vermis, *a worm*; (et) and sodalis, *an intimate companion*; cassis, *a net*; cinis, *ashes*; glis, *a dormouse*; (et) and anguis, *a snake*; lapis, *a stone*; pulvis, *dust*; (atque) and sanguis, *blood*. †

(Pleraque) Most Nouns (quæ claudit *ex*) which end in *x* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine, (ut) as grex, *a flock*; (sed) but (manent) the following remain (Feminina) Feminine: nex, *death*; supellex, *furniture*; ilex, *the scarlet oak*; carex, *sedge*; lex, *a law*. ‡

(In *ix*) The following in *ix* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine: fornix, *an arch* or *vault*; phoenix, *the fabulous bird so called*; (et) and calix, *a cup*. §

(In *as*) The following words in *as* (Masculina sunt) are

\* Ales, *a bird*, is Common.

† Anguis, callis, corbis, cinis, pulvis, torquis, are sometimes Feminine. Casses, *nets*, is Masculine; cassis, *helmet*, Feminine.

‡ Fæx, forfex, forpex, vibex, are Feminine. Cortex, imbrex, obex, punex, rumex, silix, are sometimes Feminine.

§ Bombyx, onyx, are Masculine; also the parts of the *As* in *x*, as quincunx.

**Masculine :** *vas, vasis, a personal surety ; gigas, a giant ; elephas, an elephant ; as, assis, a Roman coin and weight ; mas, a male ;* (et) and *adamas, adamant ;* (Neutra) the following are Neuter ; *vas, vasis, a vessel ; nefas, sin ; fas, right.*

(Adde) Add (Masculinis) to Masculine words : *mons, a mountain ; fons, a fountain ;* (et) and *torrens, a torrent ; gryps, a griffin ;* (et) and *pons, a bridge ; rudens, a cable ; hydrops, dropsy ; dens, a tooth ;* (et) and *bidens, a two-pronged fork ; oriens, the east ; occidens, the west ;* (et) and *tridens, a trident.\**

(In *es*) The following in *es* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine ; *verres, a boar-pig ;* (et) and *acinaces, a scimitar.*

§ 75. (Neutra claudunt) Neuter words of the 3d declension end in *a* (et) and *e, ar, ur, us, c, l, n,* (et) and *t.*

(In *ur*) The following words in *ur* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine : *furfur, bran ; turtur, a turtle-dove ; vultur, a vulture ; fur, a thief.*

(In *us*) The following in *us* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine : *lepus, Gen. lepōris, a hare ;* (et) and *mus, a mouse.*

(In *us*) The following in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine : *virtus, virtue ;* (atque) and *servitus, slavery ; juvenus, youth ; incus, an anvil ;* (atque) and *palus, a marsh ; senectus, old age ; tellus, earth ;* (atque) and *salus, health ;* (quibus *u*) in which *u* (manet longa) remains long (in transitu Genitivi) in passing to the Genitive case.

(Et) Also *pecus, Gen. pecūdis, a beast, (est)* is (Feminini Generis) of the Feminine Gender.

(In *l*) The following in *l* (Mascula sunt) are Masculine : *mugil, a sea-mullet ; consul, a consul ; sal, salt ; sol, the sun ;* (atque) and *pugil, a pugilist.*

(Masculina sunt) The following are Masculine : *ren, a kidney ; splen, the spleen ; pecten, a comb ; delphin, a dolphin ; attagen, a woodcock.*

(In *on*) The following in *on* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine : *Gorgon, a Gorgon ; sindon, muslin ; halcyon, a king-fisher.*

§ 76. (In Quarta) In the Fourth Declension (tribuimus *us*) we assign the termination *us* (Masculis) to Nouns Masculine ; (Neutris *u*) the termination *u* to Nouns Neuter.

(Quartæ in *us*) The following of the Fourth Declension in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine : *domus, a house ; porticus,*

\* The parts of the *As* in *us* are Masculine ; *as, triens, quadrans.*

*a porch* ; *acus*, *a needle* ; *Idus*, *the Ides in a Roman month* ; (*atque*) and *manus*, *a hand* ; *tribus*, *a tribe* ; *nurus*, *a daughter-in-law* ; *socrus*, *a mother-in-law* ; *anus*, *an old woman*.

§ 77. (Inseres Femininis) You will place among Feminine words (Nomina Quintæ) Nouns of the Fifth Declension (in *es*) ending in *es*.

*Dies*, *a day*, (*est*) is (in Singulo) in the Singular Number (*mas*) Masculine (*vel*) or (*Femininum*) Feminine ; (in Plurali Numero) in the Plural Number (*semper*) always (*Masculinum*) Masculine.

§ 78. (Singularis Numerus) The Singular Number (*deest*) is wanting (*multis Nominibus*) to many Nouns : (*ut*) *as*, *manes*, *the spirits of the dead* ; *loculi*, *a purse* ; *penates*, *household deities* ; *cunæ*, *a cradle* ; *thermæ*, *warm baths* ; *nugæ*, *trifles* ; *grates*, *thanks* ; *arma*, *arms* ; *viscera*, *bowels* ; *magalia*, *cottages* ; (*cum deum Festis*) with Festivals of the gods, (*ut*) *as*, *Floralia*, *the festival of Flora*. \*

\* The following is a further list of Substantives wanting the Singular Number : —

## FIRST DECLENSION.

*Angustiæ*, *straits*.  
*Argutiæ*, *refinements*.  
*Higæ*, *a chariot and pair*.  
*Clitellæ*, *panniers*.  
*Deliciæ*, *delight, daintiness*.  
*Divitiæ*, *riches*.  
*Epulæ*, *a feast*.  
*Excubiæ*, *a night watch*.  
*Exequiæ*, *a funeral*.  
*Exuviæ*, *spoils*.  
*Facetiæ*, *pleasantries*.  
*Feriæ*, *a holiday*.  
*Habenæ*, *reins*.  
*Induciæ*, *a truce*.  
*Inferiæ*, *offerings to the dead*.  
*Insidie*, *an ambush*.  
*Lapidicinæ*, *a stone quarry*.

*Minæ*, *threats*.  
*Minutiæ*, *details*.  
*Nundinæ*, *market-day*.  
*Nuptiæ*, *a bridal*.  
*Phaleræ*, *horse-trappings*.  
*Prestigiæ*, *jugglery*.  
*Primitiæ*, *first-fruits*.  
*Quisquilie*, *rubbish*.  
*Reliquiæ*, *remnants*.  
*Salebræ*, *roughnesses*.  
*Salinæ*, *a salt-work*.  
*Scalæ*, *a staircase*.  
*Scopæ*, *a besom*.  
*Tenebræ*, *darkness*.  
*Triciæ*, *intricacies, trifles*.  
*Valvæ*, *foldiing-doors*.  
*Vindiciæ*, *a claim, defence*.

Also *Calendæ*, *the Calends* ; *Nonæ*, *the Nones of a month* ; *Athenæ*, *Thebæ*, *Syracusæ*, with other towns.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

## (a) Masculine.

*Cancelli*, *a lattice*.  
*Cani*, *white hairs*.  
*Codicilli*, *writing tablets*.  
*Fasti*, *annals*.  
*Fori*, *the hatches*.

*Inferi*, *the Gods below*.  
*Liberi*, *children*.  
*Posteri*, *posterity*.  
*Superi*, *the Gods above*.

(*Multa*) Many Substantives (*quæ*) which (carent Plurali) are destitute of a Plural Number (apparent) appear (*lectitantibus*) to students. \*

(*Nonnulli Casus*) Some Cases (*absunt his*) are wanting to these Nouns : *fas*, *right* ; *frugis*, *fruit* ; *dapis*, *a feast* ; *opis*, *help* ; *vis*, *force* ; (*et*) and (*multa*) many Nouns (*præter hæc*) besides these (apparent) appear, (*quæ*) which (carent) are destitute of (*Casibus nonnullis*) some Cases.†

(b) *Neuter.*

*Bellaria*, dainties.

*Crepundia*, toys.

*Cunabula*, a cradle.

*Extæ*, entrails.

*Iusta*, funeral offerings.

*Lamenta*, lamentations.

*Munia*, duties.

*Præcordia*, the midriff.

*Tesquæ*, wild places.

Also names of People and Places, as *Volsci*, *Delphi*, *Leuctra*, &c.

THIRD DECLENSION.

(a) *Masculine and Feminine.*

*Antes*, the outer pillars.

*Cervices*, the neck (also sing. in poetry).

*Cœlites*, the Gods above.

*Fides*, a fate (also sing. in poetry).

*Fores*, a door.

*Lemures*, goblins.

*Majores*, ancestors.

*Minores*, posterity.

*Proceres*, nobles.

Also names of People, Places, &c., as *Brigantes*, *Cyclades*, &c.

(b) *Neuter.*

*Brevia*, shallows.

*Mœnia*, city walls.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

*Artus*, limbs.

*Idus*, the Ides.

\* Among the many words which are not used in the Plural Number, notice : — (1) *Materialia* : as, *aurum*, *gold* ; *argentum*, *silver* ; *lac*, *milk* ; *sanguis*, *blood*. (2) *Abstracta* : as, *letum*, *death* ; *senectus*, *old age* ; *fames*, *hunger* ; *pietas*, *piety*. (3) *Collectiva* : as, *vulgus*, *the common people* ; *supellex*, *furniture*. (4) And the following : *aer*, *the atmosphere* ; *æther*, *the sky* ; *humus*, *the ground* ; *pontus*, *pelagus*, *the sea* ; *tellus*, *earth* ; *ævum*, *time* ; *ver*, *spring* ; *vesper*, *evening*.

† Nouns defective in Case are numerous. Those having only one case in a Number are called *Monoptota* ; those having two, *Diptota* ; three, *Triptota*, &c.

(1) Many Nouns have only the *Nom.* and *Accus.* in one or both Numbers : —

(a) Greek Neuters in *os* in *Sing.* and *Plur.*, as *melos*, *melē*.

(b) *Fas*, *nefas*, *instar*, *nil*, *necesse*, *opus* (*need*), in *Sing.* only, having no *Plur.*

(Quæ efferunt) Those which form (Numerum Pluralem) the Plural Number (in *a* vel *i*) in *a* or *i* (sunt) are: *frenum*, *a bit*; *carbasus*, *canvas*; (et) and *locus*, *a place*\*; *rastrum*, *a rake*; *sibilus*, *a hiss*; (et) and *jocus*, *a jest*†; *Tartarus*, *hell*, (fit) becomes (in Plurali) in the Plural Number *Tartara*; (et) and *cælum*, *heaven*, *cœli*.

(Quædam) Some Substantives (abundant Casibus) are

(c) *Bura*, *mella*, *farra*, *tura*, *murmura*, *metus*, *situs*, *spes*, &c., in Plur., which form Sing. fully.

(2) Many Verbals of the Fourth Decl. are used in Dat. Sing. or Abl. Sing. only; as, Dat. *despicatui*, *derisui*, *ostentui*, &c.; Abl. *injussu*, *rogatu*, *permissu*, *promptu*, *procinctu*, *natu*, &c.

(3) Various words are used in single Cases with an adverbial force; as, Abl. *noctu*, *gratis*, *ingratiis*, *fortuitu*, &c.: Accus. *infitias* (*ire*), *to deny*; (ad) *incitas* (*redigere*), *to reduce to extremity*; *venum* (*tradere*), *to offer for sale*; *suppetias* (*ferre*), *to lend succours*; Gen. *dicis* (*causa*), *for form's sake*; *nauci* (*facere*), *to hold cheap*, &c.

(4) Observe especially the following Defectives:—

(*Ambages*, *a circuit*) has Abl. Sing. and full Plur.

*Astus*, *cunning*, Nom. and Abl. Sing., Nom. and Acc. Plur.

(*Cassis*, *a net*), Acc. Abl. Sing. (both rare), full Plur.

(*Compes*, *a fetter*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

(*Daps*, *a feast*), has all but Nom. Sing., full Plur.

(*Ditio*, *sway*), has all but Nom. Sing., no Plur.

(*Faux*, *a jaw*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

*Fors*, *chance*, Nom. Abl. Sing., no Plur.

(*Frux*, *fruit*), has all but Nom. Sing., full Plur.

*Grates*, *thanks*, Nom. Acc. Plur.

*Iniquies*, *restlessness*, Nom. Sing.

(*Juger*, *an acre*), Abl. Sing., Dat. Abl. Plur.; other forms from *jugerum*, i.

*Mane*, *morning*, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing., no Plur.

*Nemo*, *nobody*, Gen. *nullius*, Dat. *nemini*, Acc. *neminem*, Abl. *nullo*.

(*Obex*, *a bolt*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

(*Ops*, *help*), Gen. Acc. Abl. Sing., full Plur.

*Pondo*, *pounds*, indeclin. Plur.

(*Prex*, *prayer*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

(*Repetundæ*, sc. *pecuniæ*, *extortion*), Gen. Abl. Plur.

(*Spons*, *inclination*), Abl. Sing.

(*Verber*, *a stripe*), Gen. Abl. Sing., full Plur.

Gen. *viciis*, Acc. *vicem*, Abl. *vice*, *change*. no Nom. S., full Plur.

*Vis*, *force*, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing., full Plur., *vires*, *virium*, &c.

*Frugi*, the old Dat. of *frux*. is used Adjectively; as, *homo frugi*, *an honest man*. So *nequam*, *worthless*, is of all cases.

\* *Loca*, *spots*; *loci*, *spots or places in books, topics*.

† *Ostrea*, *an oyster*; Pl. *ostreae* and *ostrea*.



redundant in Cases: (ut) *as*, domus, *a house*; *laurus*, *a laurel*; *Œdipus*, *Œdipus*. \*

\* Declension of Domus: —

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Domus.	domus.
Gen. Domūs.	domuum or domorum.
Dat. Domui.	domibus.
Acc. Domum.	domus or domos.
Abl. Domu or domo.	domibus.

The Gen. Domi is used to signify *at home*; *as*, domi meæ, *at my home*.

Laurus, cupressus, colus, ficus, pinus, follow the 2d Declension, but also take from the 4th the Cases in *us* and *u*; Œdipus, Gen. Œdipodis and Œdipi. There are many Substantives with a two-fold Declension; *as*, juventa and juvenus; vespera and vesper, eri (which forms Abl. vespero, vespere, or vesperi); duritia and durities, &c. Many Adjectives have also double forms, *as* bijugus and bijugis.

Vas makes Gen. Pl. vasorum, Dat. vasis. So anciliorum from ancile, *a shield*. Greek Nouns in *ma*, Gen. *tis*, have Dat. Pl. *tis*; *as*, poema, Dat. Pl. poematis.

The following Substantives change their signification in the Plural Number: —

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Ædes, <i>a temple</i> ;	ædes, <i>a house</i> .
Aqua, <i>water</i> ;	aque, <i>medicinal springs</i> .
Auxilium, <i>help</i> ;	auxilia, <i>auxiliary forces</i> .
Bonum, <i>a good</i> ;	bona, <i>goods, effects</i> .
Carcer, <i>a prison</i> ;	carceres, <i>a starting-place</i> .
Castrum, <i>a fort</i> ;	castra, <i>a camp</i> .
Cera, <i>wax</i> ;	cerae, <i>a waxen tablet</i> .
Comitium, <i>the Assembly-place</i> ;	Comitia, <i>the Assembly at Rome</i> .
Copia, <i>plenty</i> ;	copiæ, <i>forces</i> .
Epulum, <i>a sacred feast</i> ;	epulæ, <i>a banquet</i> .
Facultas, <i>a faculty</i> ;	facultates, <i>means</i> .
Finis, <i>an end</i> ;	fines, <i>boundaries</i> .
Fortuna, <i>fortune</i> ;	fortunæ, <i>the gifts of fortune, a fortune</i> .
Gratia, <i>favour</i> ;	gratiæ, <i>thanks</i> .
Hortus, <i>a garden</i> ;	horti, <i>a pleasure-garden</i> .
Impedimentum, <i>a hindrance</i> ;	impedimenta, <i>baggage</i> .
Littera, <i>a letter of the alphabet</i> ;	litteræ, <i>an epistle, or literature</i> .
Ludus, <i>play</i> ;	ludi, <i>public games</i> .
Lustrum, <i>a term of five years</i> ;	lustra, <i>lair of wild beasts</i> .
Natalis, <i>a birth-day</i> ;	natales, <i>origin</i> .
Opera, <i>exertion</i> ;	operæ, <i>workmen</i> .
Opis (Gen.), <i>help</i> ;	opes, <i>power, wealth</i> .
Pars, <i>a portion</i> ;	partes, <i>a part in a play</i> .
Rostrum, <i>a beak</i> ;	rostra, <i>the pulpit for speaking in the Roman forum (adorned with the beaks of captured ships)</i> .
Sal, <i>salt</i> ;	sales, <i>wit</i> .
Tabula, <i>a board</i> ;	tabulæ, <i>writing tablets</i> .

§ 79.\* (Verborum prima conjugatio) the first conjugation of verbs, (cui *o, as, āre*, terminatio) the termination of which is *o, as, āre*, (fit *avi* in Perfecto) becomes in the Preterperfect Tense *avi*; (subjicit *atum* Supino) and makes its Supine end in *atum*.

(Hinc excipienda sunt) From this rule must be excepted (quæ efferunt) verbs which form (*ui itum*) *ui* in the Preterperfect, and *itum* in the Supine.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
crepo, <i>I utter a sound</i> ;	crepui,	crepitum.
cubo, <i>I lie down</i> ;	cubui,	cubitum.
sono, <i>I sound</i> ;	sonui,	sonitum.
domo, <i>I tame</i> ;	domui,	domitum.
veto, <i>I forbid</i> ;	vetui,	vetitum.
tono, <i>I thunder</i> ;	tonui,	tonitum.
Seco, <i>I cut</i> ;	secui,	sectum.
frico, <i>I rub</i> ;	fricui,	frictum.
Juvo, <i>I help</i> ;	jūvi,	jutum.
lāvo, <i>I wash</i> ;	lāvi,	lōtum;

(et vindicat) and it takes also *lāvatum*.

Do, <i>I give</i> ;	dēdi,	dātum.
sto, <i>I stand</i> ;	stēti,	stātum.

Mico, *I glitter*, (dat Perfectum micui) makes its Preterperfect micui; Plico, *I fold*; (dat Perfectum plicui) makes its Preterperfect plicui; (Mico fert) mico takes (nullum supinum) no supine; (*atum* dat vel *itum* Plico) Plico makes plicatum or plicitum.

§ 80. (Verborum altera conjugatio) the second conjugation of Verbs, (cui *eo, es, ēre*, terminatio) the termination of which is *eo, es, ēre*, (fit *ui* in Perfecto) becomes in the Preterperfect Tense *ui*, (subjicit *itum* Supino) and makes its Supine end in *itum*.

(Hinc excipienda sunt) From this rule must be excepted (quæ efferunt) Verbs which form (*evi, etum*) *evi* in the Preterperfect, and *etum* in the Supine; (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
neo, <i>I spin</i> ;	nevi,	netum.
deleo, <i>I blot out</i> ;	delevi,	deletum.
(Adde his) Add to these: —		
fleo, <i>I weep</i> ;	flevi,	fletum.
pleo, <i>I fill</i> ;	plevi,	pletum.
oleo, <i>I grow</i> ;	olevi,	oletum. †

(cum Compositis) with their compounds.

\* Translate et, atque, ac, and; dat, facit, format, efficit, makes; suscipit, vindicat, takes; fit, becomes; stat, stands.

† Aboleo, Sup. abolitum: adoleo (or adoleasco), Sup. adultum.

(His) In the following, (Perfectum) the Preterperfect Tense (stat in *di*) stands in *di*; (*sum* Supinum terminat) the Supine ends in *sum*:

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
prandeo, <i>I dine</i> ;	prandi,	pransum.
sēdeo, <i>I sit</i> ;	sēdi,	sessum.
vīdeo, <i>I see</i> ;	vīdi,	visum.
(Sed) But,		
spondeo, <i>I promise</i> ;	spōpondi,	sponsum.
tondeo, <i>I shear</i> ;	tōtondi,	tonsum.
mordeo, <i>I bite</i> ;	mōmordi,	morsum.
pendeo, <i>I hang</i> ;	pēpendi,	pensum.

(His) In the following (Perfectum) the Preterperfect Tense (fit) is formed (in *si*) in *si*, (*sum* Supinum exigit) the Supine requires *sum*:

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
jubeo, <i>I command</i> ;	jussi,	jussum.
mulceo, <i>I soothe</i> ;	mulsi,	mulsum.
(Itidemque) and similarly,		
mulgeo, <i>I milk</i> ;	mulsi,	mulsum.
tergeo, <i>I wipe</i> ;	tersi,	tersum.
ardeo, <i>I burn</i> ;	arsī,	arsum.
rīdeo, <i>I laugh</i> ;	rīsi,	risum.
suadeo, <i>I persuade</i> ;	suasi,	suasum.
maneo, <i>I remain</i> ;	mansi,	mansum.
hæreo, <i>I stick</i> ;	hæsi,	hæsum.
(Sic et) So also,		—
algeo, <i>I am chill</i> ;	alsi,	—
fulgeo, <i>I shine</i> ;	fulsi,	—
(Item) also,		—
urgeo, <i>I push</i> ;	ursi,	—

(Sed) But (his) in these (Supinum) the Supine (deficit) is wanting.

(Dant *si* et *tum*) These two make the Preterperfect in *si*, and the supine in *tum*:

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Indulgeo, <i>I indulge</i> ;	indulsi,	indultum.
torqueo, <i>I twist</i> ;	torsi,	tortum.
Sed (But),		
Augeo, <i>I increase</i> ;	auxi,	auctum.
frigeo, <i>I am cold</i> ;	frixi,	—
lugeo, <i>I mourn</i> }	(dant) make luxi.	
luceo, <i>I shine</i> }		

(Sed) But (non generant) these three latter do not form (Supinum) a Supine.

(Hæc) The following (volunt) will have (*vi* suffici) *vi* to be added (Perfecto) to the Preterperfect Tense, (*tum* Supino) and *tum* to the Supine: —

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
cāveo, <i>I beware</i> ;	cāvi,	cautum.
fāveo, <i>I favour</i> ;	fāvi,	fautum.
fōveo, <i>I cherish</i> ;	fōvi,	fōtum.
mōveo, <i>I move</i> ;	mōvi,	mōtum.
vōveo, <i>I vow</i> ;	vōvi,	vōtum.*

(His) In the following (*ui stat*) *ui* stands (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect Tense, (*tum Supinum terminat*) *tum* is the termination of the Supine :

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
doceo, <i>I teach</i> ;	docui,	doctum.
misceo, <i>I mingle</i> ;	miscui,	mistum.
sorbeo, <i>I suck in</i> ;	sorbui †,	sorptum.
teneo, <i>I hold</i> ;	tenui,	tentum.
torreo, <i>I roast</i> ;	torrui,	tostum.

(His) In the following (Præteritum) the Preterperfect (scribitur) is written (Passivè) Passively, (Præsens) the Present (Activè) Actively :

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
audeo, <i>I dare</i> ;	ausus sum.	_____
gaudeo, <i>I rejoice</i> ;	gavisus sum.	_____
soleo, <i>I am wont</i> ;	solitus sum.	_____

§ 81. (Verborum tertia conjugatio) the third conjugation of Verbs, (cui *o, is, ere, terminatio*) the termination of which is *o, is, ere*, (dat Perfectum) makes its Preterperfect Tense (*variæ formæ*) of diverse form ; (*tum vel sum*) *tum* or *sum* (*stat*) stands (Supino) in the Supine.

§ 82. (*Bo, po, habent*) *Bo* and *po* have (*psi additum Perfecto*) *psi* to end the Preterperfect, (*ptum Supino*) and *ptum* the Supine : (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
nubo, <i>I marry</i> ;	nupsi,	nuptum. ‡

(Tamen) But,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
rumpo, <i>I break</i> ;	rupi,	ruptum.
bibo, <i>I drink</i> ;	bibi,	bibitum.
strepo, <i>I roar</i> ;	strepui,	strepitum.

(Sic declino *co, go, ho, quo*) I thus decline *co, go, ho, quo* ; (*xi Perfecto*) *xi* in the Preterperfect ; (*ctum Supino*) *ctum* in the Supine : (ut) as,

\* *Paveo, pavi* ; *ferveo, fervei*.

† Also *sorpsi*.

‡ *Lambo, I lick, lambi* : *eumbo, I lie down, cubui, cubitum*.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
duco, <i>I lead</i> ;	duxi,	ductum.
sugo, <i>I suck</i> ;	suxi,	suctum.
rego, <i>I rule</i> ;	rexī,	rectum.
veho, <i>I carry</i> ;	vexi,	vectum.

(*Sco jubet*) *Sco* desires (*vi subijci*) *vi* to end (Perfecto) its Preterperfect, (*tum Supino*) and *tum* its Supine : (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
cresco, <i>I grow</i> ;	crevi,	cretum.
suesco, <i>I am habituated</i> ;	suevi,	suetum.
quiesco, <i>I rest</i> ;	quievi,	quietum.
nosco, <i>I know</i> ;	nōvi,	nōtum.*
pasco, <i>I feed</i> ;	pāvi,	pastum.
compesco, <i>I restrain</i> ;	compeseui.	—
posco, <i>I require</i> ;	poposci.	—
disco, <i>I learn</i> ;	didici.	—
Ico, <i>I strike</i> ;	ici,	ictum.
vinco, <i>I conquer</i> ;	vici,	victum.
linquo, <i>I leave</i> ;	liqui,	lictum.
Parco, <i>I spare</i> ;	peperci, †	parsum.
Spargo, <i>I sprinkle</i> ;	sparsi,	sparsum.
mergo, <i>I dip</i> ;	mersi,	mersum.
tergo, <i>I wipe</i> ;	tersi,	tersum.
Ago, <i>I do</i> ;	egi,	actum.
frango, <i>I break</i> ;	fregi,	fractum.
tango, <i>I touch</i> ;	tetigi,	tactum.
pango, <i>I covenant</i> ;	pepigi,	pactum ;
(sed Composita) but its Compounds make - <i>pegi</i> , - <i>pactum</i> .		
pungo, <i>I prick</i> ;	pupūgi, ‡	punctum.
jungo, <i>I join</i> ;	junxi,	junctum.
lego, <i>I read or gather</i> ;	lēgi,	lectum ;
(compositum) when compounded ( <i>sæpè lexi dat</i> ) it often forms <i>lexi</i> .§		

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Figo, <i>I fix</i> ;	fixi,	fixum.
fingo, <i>I frame</i> ;	finxi,	fictum.
pingo, <i>I paint</i> ;	pinxi,	pictum.
stringo, <i>I tie</i> ;	strinxi,	strictum.

(*Do jubet*) *Do* requires (*si suffici*) *si* to be joined (Perfecto) to its Preterperfect, (*sum Supino*) and *sum* to its Supine :

\* Of its compounds, agnosco makes Sup. agnitus ; cognosco, cognitum.

† Compareo, comparsi.

‡ Compounds of pungo make Preterp. punxi.

§ Of the compounds of lego, *I gather*, diligo forms dilexi ; intelligo, intellexi ; negligo, neglexi. The others form lēgi, as colligo collegi ; so do the compounds of lego, *I read*, as perlego, perlegi.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
lædo, <i>I hurt</i> ;	læsi,	læsum.
(Verum) But,		
cedo, <i>I yield</i> ;	cessi,	cessum.
(Sic) So,		
illido, <i>I beat on</i> ;	illisi,	illisum.
divido, <i>I divide</i> ;	divisi,	divisum.

(Flecte) Form (vertendo) by changing (*do* in *di*) *do* into *di* (quæ exeunt) those which end (in *ando*, *endo*) in *ando*, *endo*.\*

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
pendo, <i>I weigh</i> ;	pependi,	pensum.
tendo, <i>I stretch</i> ;	tetendi,	tensum.
(tamen) but,		
findo, <i>I cleave</i> ;	fidi,	fissum.
scindo, <i>I cut</i> ;	scidi,	scissum.
fundo, <i>I pour</i> ;	fûdi,	fûsum.
tundo, <i>I hammer</i> ;	tutûdi,	tusum.
cudo, <i>I fashion</i> ;	cudi,	cusum.
cado, <i>I fall</i> ;	cecidî,	casum.
cædo, <i>I beat or kill</i> ;	cecidî,	cæsum.
êdo, <i>I eat</i> ;	êdi,	êsum.

Abdo, *I hide* ; addo, *I add* ; condo, *I store up* ; credo, *I trust* ; obdo, *I block up* ; perdo, *I lose* ; reddo, *I restore* ; edo, *I utter* ; prodo, *I betray* ; trado, *I deliver* ; vendo, *I sell* ; dedo, *I give up* ; (quæ) which (composita sunt a do) are compounded of do, *I give* ; (-*didi*, -*ditum*, efferunt) form -*didi*, -*ditum* : (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
edo,	edidi,	editum.
dedo,	dedidi,	deditum.*
flecto, <i>I bend</i> ;	flexi,	flexum.
necto, <i>I twine</i> ;	nexi,	nexum.
pecto, <i>I comb</i> ;	pexi †,	pexum.
peto, <i>I seek</i> ;	petivi,	petitum.
meto, <i>I mow</i> ;	messui,	messum.
mitto, <i>I send</i> ;	misi,	missum.
verto, <i>I turn</i> ;	verti,	versum. ‡

(Verbum) A verb (quod fit a sisto) which is formed from sisto (sufficit -*stîti* Perfecto) joins to its Preterperfect -*stîti*.

§ 83. (*So, sivi, situm, fit*) *So* makes *sivi, situm* ; (sic formatur) thus is formed :—

\* As scando, scandi, scansum ; defendo, defendi, defensum.

† Also, nexui, pexui.

‡ Sterto, *I snore*, stertui.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
arcesso, <i>I send for</i> ;	arcessivi,	arcessitum.
laccio, <i>I provoke</i> ;	laccessivi,	laccessitum.
viso, <i>I visit</i> ;	visi,	-----
pinso, <i>I pound</i> ;	pinsui,	pistum. *

§ 84. *Texo, I weave*, (stat) stands (unum in *xo*) the only verb in *xo*, (quod vindicat) which takes *texui*, *textum*.

§ 85. *Lo, lui, tum* : (sic flectitur) thus is formed

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Consulo, <i>I consult</i> ;	consului,	consultum.
occulo, <i>I hide</i> ;	occului,	occultum.
(Sed) But,		
colo, <i>I cultivate</i> ;	colui,	cultum.
molo, <i>I grind</i> ;	molui,	molitum.

(A cello verba cellui) Verbs compounded from *cello, I impel*, make *cellui* : (sed) but (conjugabis) you will form,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
percello, <i>I strike</i> ;	percului,	perculsum.
pello, <i>I drive</i> ;	pepuli,	pulsum.
vello, <i>I pluck</i> ;	velli and vulsi,	vulsum.
fallo, <i>I deceive</i> ;	fefelli,	falsum.
psallo, <i>I sing or play</i> ;	psalli,	-----
sallo, <i>I salt</i> ;	-----	salsum.

*Tollo, I raise*, (formatum) formed in the Preterperfect *sustuli*, (fit) becomes (in *Supino*) in the Supine *sublatum*.

(*Mo, mui, mitum fit*) *mo* forms *mui, mitum* ; (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
fremo, <i>I bellow</i> ;	fremui,	fremitum.
gemo, <i>I groan</i> ;	gemui,	gemitum.
tremo, <i>I tremble</i> ;	tremui,	-----
(Supino carens) Which has no supine.		
como, <i>I deck</i> ;	comsi,	comtum.
promo, <i>I produce</i> ;	promsi,	promtum.
(Sic flectuntur) So are formed,		
sumo, <i>I take</i> ;	sumsi,	sumtum.
demo, <i>I take away</i> ;	demsī,	demtum.
(Sed) But,		
emo, <i>I buy</i> ;	ēmi,	emtum.
premo, <i>I press</i> ;	pressi,	pressum.

(Latini) Latin writers (sæpè ponunt *p*) often interpose *p* (inter *m* et *s* vel *t*) between *m* and *s* or *t*. (Sic fiunt) Thus are formed *sumpsi*, *dempsi*, *demptum*, *comptum*, *promptum*, *sumptum*, *emptum*, &c.

\* Also *pinsum*.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Cano, <i>I sing</i> ;	cecini,	cantum ;
(composita) its compounds make -cinui, -centum.		
pono, <i>I place</i> ;	posui,	positum.
gigno, <i>I beget</i> ;	genui,	genitum.
temno, <i>I despise</i> ;	temsi, or tempsi,	temtum.
sterno, <i>I strew</i> ;	stravi,	stratum.
sperno, <i>I despise</i> ;	sprevi,	spretum.
cerno, <i>I discern</i> ;	crevi,	cretum.
lino, <i>I anoint</i> ;	lēvi,	litum.
sino, <i>I allow</i> ;	sīvi,	situm.
verro, <i>I brush</i> ;	verri,	versum.
curro, <i>I run</i> ;	cucurri,	cursum.
quæro, <i>I seek</i> ;	quæsiui,	quæsitum.
tero, <i>I rub</i> ;	trivi,	tritum.
uro, <i>I burn</i> ;	ussi,	ustum.
gero, <i>I carry on</i> ;	gessi,	gestum.
fero, <i>I bear</i> ,	tuli,	latum.
særo, <i>I sow, or plant</i> ;	sevi,	satum.
Sero (dat) makes serui, sertum, (si stat) if it stands (cum vi nec-tendi) with the meaning of joining.		

## § 86.

Facio, <i>I make</i> ;	feoi,	factum.
jacio, <i>I cast</i> ;	jeci,	jactum.
(Dant a lacio) Compounds of		
lacio, <i>I tice</i> ; make	lexi,	lectum.*
(Et a specio) and compounds of		
specio, <i>I spy</i> ;	spexi,	spectum.
fodio, <i>I dig</i> ;	fōdi,	fossam.
fugio, <i>I fly</i> ;	fūgi,	fūgitum.
capio, <i>I take</i> ;	cēpi,	captum.
rapio, <i>I snatch</i> ;	rapui,	raptum.
pario, <i>I bring forth</i> ;	peperi,	partum.†
cupio, <i>I desire</i> ;	cupivi,	cupitura.
quatio, <i>I shake</i> ;	—	quassum.

(Sed) But (in Compositis) in the Compounds (dat) it forms -cussum.

## § 87. (Uo format) Uo forms ui, utum : (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
tribuo, <i>I afford</i> ;	tribui,	tributum.‡
(Vo inflectit) Vo forms vi and utum : (ut) as,		
solvo, <i>I loose, or pay</i> ;	solvi,	solutum.
volvo, <i>I roll</i> ;	volvi,	volutum.

\* As allicio, allexi : but elicio, elicui, elicium.

† Fut. Part. pariturus.

‡ Ruo, Sup. rūtum ; Fut. Part. raiturus.



(Tamen) but,

Present.  
Fluo, *I flow* ;  
struo, *I build* ;  
vivo, *I live* ;  
stinguo, *I quench* ;

Preterp.  
fluxi,  
struxi,  
vixi,  
stinxi,

Supine.  
fluxum.  
structum.  
victum.  
stinctum.\*

§ 88. (Verborum quarta conjugatio) the fourth conjugation of Verbs, (cui *io, is, ire*, terminatio) the termination of which is *io, is, ire*, (fit) becomes (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect Tense *ivi*, (Supino *itum* sufficit) and makes its Supine end in *itum*.

Present.  
Sancio, *I ratify* ;  
(nec respuit) nor does it reject  
vincio, *I bind* ;  
fulcio, *I prop* ;  
sarcio, *I darn* ;  
farcio, *I stuff* ;  
amicio, *I clothe* ;  
salio, *I dance* ;

Preterp.  
sanxi,  
(nec respuit) nor does it reject sancivi, sancitum.  
vinxi,  
fulsi,  
sarsi,  
farsi,  
amisui,  
salui or salii,

Supine.  
sanctum :  
vincitum.  
fultum.  
sartum.  
fartum.  
amictum.  
saltum.

At (but)

singultio, *I sob* ;  
sepelio, *I bury* ;  
venio, *I come* ;  
vëneo, *I am sold*† ;  
sepio, *I fence in* ;  
aperio, *I open* ;  
comperio, *I find out* ;  
reperio, *I find* ;  
haurio, *I drain* ;  
sentio, *I perceive* ;

singultivi,  
sepelivi,  
vëni,  
vëniî,  
sepsi,  
aperui,  
comperi,  
repperi,  
hausi,  
sensi,

singultum.  
sepultum.  
ventum.  
—  
septum.  
apertum.  
compertum.  
reperitum.  
haustum.  
sensum.

§ 89. (Flexeris) You must form (Deponentia) Deponent Verbs (ex regulis) according to the rules (Activorum) of Active Verbs : (nam) for (Præteritum Passivum) the Preterperfect Passive (est) is (Derivativum) a Derivative (Supini) of the Supine.

(1.) Reor, *I think* ;  
miseror, *I pity* ;  
fateor, *I confess* ;

(flecte sis) form (-fessus in Compositis) -fessus in the Compounds.

Preterp.  
ratus sum  
misertus sum.†  
fassus sum :

(2.) Labor, *I fall* ;  
utor, *I use* ;

lapsus sum.  
usus sum.

\* Only known in its compounds *distinguo, extinguo*.

† Veneo is from *venum-eo*, as *vendo* from *venum-do*.

‡ Also *miseritus sum*.

Present.	Preterp.
loquor, <i>I speak</i> ;	locutus sum.
sequor, <i>I follow</i> ;	secutus sum.
nitor, <i>I strive</i> ,	nisus, or nixus, sum.
irascor, <i>I am angry</i> ;	iratus sum.
queror, <i>I complain</i> ;	questus sum.
gradior, <i>I step</i> ;	gressus sum.
pator, <i>I suffer</i> ;	passus sum :
(et) and (- <i>pessus</i> in Compositis)	- <i>pessus</i> in its Compounda.
ulciscor, <i>I avenge</i> ;	ultus sum.
apiscor, <i>I acquire</i> ;	aptus sum.
(Sed) but	
adipiscor, <i>I acquire</i> ;	adeptus sum.
proficiscor, <i>I go</i> ;	profectus sum.
expergiscor, <i>I awake</i> ;	experrectus sum.
obliscor, <i>I forget</i> ;	oblitus sum.
commiscor, <i>I imagine</i> ;	commentus sum. *
(Sed) but	
nanciscor, <i>I find</i> ;	nactus sum.
paciscor, <i>I covenant</i> ;	pactus sum.
moriator, <i>I die</i> ;	mortuus sum. †
nascor, <i>I am born</i> ;	natus sum.
orior, <i>I arise</i> ;	ortus sum. ‡
(Queis Futura) The Future Participles of which last three Verbs are moriturus, nasciturus, oriturus.	
(Quartæ) of the fourth conjugation,	
Present.	Preterp.
Metior, <i>I measure</i> ;	mensus sum.
ordior, <i>I begin</i> ;	orsus sum.
At (but)	
experior, <i>I try</i> ;	expertus sum.
opperior, <i>I wait for</i> ;	oppertus sum.

§ 90. (Flexeris) You must conjugate. (Inceptiva) Inceptive Verbs (ducta a Verbis) derived from Verbs (ut Primitiva) as their Primitives ; (sic) thus

Present.	Preterp.
exardesco, <i>I begin to blaze</i> ;	exarsi (from ex, ardeo).
obsolesco, <i>I grow out of date</i> ;	obsolevi (from obs, oleo).
tremisco, <i>I begin to tremble</i> ;	tremui (from tremo).
rescisco, <i>I begin to know</i> ;	rescivi (from scio).

\* Commiscor, and reminiscor (which has no Supine), are Compounds of an obsolete verb meniscor.

† Morior, Infin. mori, and sometimes moriri.

‡ Orior is partly declined after the 3d Conjugation, partly after the 4th. Pres. Orior, oreris, oritur, orimur, &c. But Infin. Oriri ; Imperf. Conj. Orirer.

So Potior, *I obtain*. Pres. Potior, potiris and poteris, potitur and potitur, &c. Imperf. Subj. Potirer and potèrer, potireris and potèreris, &c. Preterp. Potitus sum. Infin. Potiri.

(*U*i terminus) *U*i is the termination (Perfecto) to the Preterperfect (factorum) of those formed (ex Nominibus) from Nouns : (sic) thus,

Present.  
evanesco, *I vanish* ;  
consanesco, *I get well* ;

Preterp.  
evanui (from e, vanus).  
consanui (from cum, sanus).

(Plurima) Very many (carent Supinis) have no Supines ; (multis) in many (Perfecta) Preterperfects (non apparent) do not appear. \*

(Flexeris) you must form (Impersonalia) Impersonal Verbs (ex regulis) according to the rules (Personalium) of Personals.

Present.  
pudet, *it shames* ;  
pœnitet, *it repents* ;

But,  
miseret, *it affects with pity* ;  
libet, *it pleases* ; §  
tædet, *it wearies* ;  
piget, *it irks* ;

Preterp.  
puduit. †  
pœnituit.  
  
misertum est. ‡  
libuit and libitum est.  
pertæsum est and tæduit.  
pigitum est and piguit. ||

(In operibus Latinis) in Latin works (apparent) appear (lectitantibus) to readers (multa Verba) many Verbs

- \* The following are the only Inceptive Verbs which have Supines :—  
Abolesco, adolesco, obsolesco, exolesco, coalesco, congelasco, exardesco, concupisco, convalesco, indolesco, obdormisco, inveterasco, scisco, revivisco.

The following have neither Supine nor Preterperfect :—

Ægresco, arboresco, albescio, ditiesco, dulcesco, grandesco, hebesco, herbesco, ignesco, incurvesco, juvenesco, mitesco, mollesco, pinguesco, plumesco, puerasco, silvesco, sterilesco, tenerasco, fatisco, augesco, hisco, labasco, renidesco.

Most of the others have Preterperfects, but no Supines.

† Or puditum est.

‡ Or miseritum est.

§ Also written lubet. Its compound is collibet, collibuit, and collibitum est.

|| Add also licet, *it is lawful*, licuit and licitum est.

Pudet and licet have the Active Future Participles, puditurus, liciturus. Pudet, piget, pœnitet, have Gerunds and Passive Participles in dus, pudendi, &c., pigendi, &c., pœnitendi, &c.

Many Verbs have the 3d Person Singular used impersonally : as, delectat and juvat, *it delights* ; constat, *it is acknowledged* ; præstat, *it is better* ; restat, *it remains* ; apparet, *it appears* ; accidit, contingit, *it happens* ; sufficit, *it is enough* ; evenit, *it comes to pass* ; expedit, *it is expedient* ; tonat, *it thunders* ; pluit, *it rains* ; and numerous others.

(quæ carent Supinis) which have no Supines, (multa quæ Perfecto) and many which have no Preterperfect. \*

§ 91. (Converteris) You must change (*a* in *e*) *a* into *e* (horum in Compositis) in the Compounds of the following Verbs: arceo, *I exclude*; carpo, *I crop*; damno, *I condemn*; lacto, *I entice*; fatiscor, *I am weary*; fallo, *I deceive*; farcio, *I stuff*; jacto, *I toss or boast*; gradior, *I step*; patior, *I suffer*; partior, *I divide*; tracto, *I treat*; pario, *I bring forth*; patro, *I perform*; (atque) and cando, *I inflame*; sacro, *I devote*; spargo, *I sprinkle*; (atque) and scando, *I climb*. †

(Converteris) You must change (*a* in *i*) *a* into *i* (horum in Compositis) in the compounds of the following Verbs: ago, *I act*; cado, *I fall*; cano, *I sing*; frango, *I break*; habeo, *I have*; lateo, *I lie hid*; fateor, *I confess*; pango, *I*

\* The Verbs which have no Supines are: —

The Compounds of *nuo* and *gruo* (as *abnuo*, *ingruo*); the Compounds of *cado* (except *oceido*); Neuter Verbs in *-ueo*, as *paveo*; Neuter Verbs in *-eo*, *-ui* (except *caleo*, *careo*, *doleo*, *jaceo*, *lateo*, *mereo*, *noceo*, *oleo*, *pareo*, *placeo*, *taceo*, *valeo*); also, *algeo*, *timeo*, *urgeo*, *lugeo*, *fulgeo*, *frigeo*, *turgeo*, *luceo*, *strideo*, *ango*, *clango*, *disco*, *posco*, *compesco*, *dego*, *lambo*, *mico*, *refello*, *metuo*, *psallo*, *respuo*, *tremo*, *sapio*, *gestio*, *ineptio*, and some others.

The Verbs which have neither Preterperfect nor Supines, besides the Inceptives, are: —

Desiderativa in *-urio* (except *parturio*, *esurio*); also, *ægreo*, *flaveo*, *caneo*, *hebeo*, *scateo*, *liveo*, *renideo*, *polleo*, *vegeo*, *humeo*, *aveo*, *lacteo*, *moreo*, *ambigo*, *furo*, *ferio*, *labo*, *vergo*, *plecto*, *vado*, *reminiscor*, *diffiteor*, *ringor*, *medeor*, *vescor*, *liquor*, *liquet*, and some others.

† *Areco*: comp. *coerceo*, *exerceo*.

*Carpo* . . . *dacerpo*, *excerpo*, *discerpo*.

*Damno* . . . *condemno*.

*Lacto* . . . *delecto*, *oblecto*.

*Fatiscor* . . . *defetiscor*.

*Fallo* . . . *refello*.

*Farcio* . . . *confercio*, *differcio*, *infercio*, *refercio*.

*Jacto* . . . *disjecto*, *objecto*, &c.

*Gradior* . . . *aggredior*, *congregior*, *egredior*, *ingredior*, *prægregior*, *progredior*, *transgredior*, *digredior*.

*Patior* . . . *perpetior*.

*Partior* . . . *dispartior*, *impertior*.

*Tracto* . . . *attracto*, *contracto*, *detrecto*, *obtracto*.

*Patro* . . . *impetro*, *perpetro*.

*Cando* . . . *accendo*, *incendo*, *succendo*.

*Sacro* . . . *consecro*, *desecro*, *exsecro*, *obsecro*.

*Spargo* . . . *adspergo*, *conspergo*, *dispergo*, *inspergo*, *respergo*,

*scando* . . . *adscendo*, *conscendo*, *descendo*, *transcendo*.

*fasten* ; *salio*, *I dance or leap* ; *statuo*, *I decree* ; (atque) and *tango*, *I touch* ; *capio*, *I take* ; *rapio*, *I snatch* ; *sapio*, *I am wise* ; *facio*, *I do* ; *jacio*, *I cast* ; *lacio*, *I entice* ; *placeo*, *I please* ; *taceo*, *I am silent*. \*

(Excepta) The following are excepted : *perago*, *I perform* ; *perplaceo*, *I please thoroughly* ; (et) and *facio*, *I do*, (mistum cum Adverbis) compounded with Adverbs.

(Convertito) Change (*a* in *u*) *a* into *u* (ex) in Verbs compounded of *calco*, *I tread* ; *salto*, *I dance* ; *quatio*, *I shake*.†

(Converteris) You must change (*e* in *i*) *e* into *i* (horum in

- \* *Ago* : comp. *abigo*, *adigo*, *exigo*, *transigo*, *ambigo*. But *circumago*, *perago*, *satago* : (-ēgi, -actum).  
*Cado* . . . *accido*, *concido*, *decido*, *excido*, *incido*, *occido*, *procido* : (-cidi, -casum).  
*Cano* . . . *accino*, *concino*, *occino*, *præcino*, *recino*, *succino* : (cinui, -centum).  
*Frango* . . . *confringo*, *diffingo*, *effringo*, *infringo*, *perfringo*, *præfringo*, *refringo* : (-fregi, -fractum).  
*Habeo* . . . *adhibeo*, *exhibeo*, *inhibeo*, *perhibeo*, *prohibeo*. But *posthabeo*.  
*Lateo* . . . *deliteo*.  
*Fateor* . . . *confiteor*, *profiteor*, *diffiteor* : (-fessus).  
*Pango* . . . *compingo*, *impingo*, *oppingo* : (-pegi, -pactum). But *repango*.  
*Salio* . . . *adsilio*. So *circumsilio*, *desilio*, *dissilio*, *exsilio*, *insilio*, *præsilio*, *prosilio*, *resilio*, *subsilio*, *transilio* : (-silui or -silii, -sultum).  
*Statuo* . . . *constituo*, *destituo*, *instituo*, *restituo*, *substituo*.  
*Tango* . . . *attingo*, *contingo*, *pertingo* : (-tigi, -tactum).  
*Capio* . . . *accipio*, *concipio*, *decipio*, *excipio*, *incipio*, *percipio*, *præcipio*, *recipio*, *suscipio* : (-cepi, -ceptum).  
*Rapio* . . . *abripio*, *arripio*, *corripio*, *deripio*, *diripio*, *eripio*, *præripio*, *proripio*, *surripio* : (-ripui, -reptum).  
*Sapio* . . . *desipio*, *resipisco*.  
*Facio* . . . *afficio*, *conficio*, *deficio*, *efficio*, *inficio*, *perficio*, *præficio*, *proficio*, *reficio*, *sufficio* : (-feci, -fectum). But *benefacio*, *malefacio* : (feci, factum).  
*Jacio* . . . *abjicio*, *adjicio*, *conjicio*, *disjicio*, *ejicio*, *injicio*, *objicio*, *projicio*, *rejicio*, *subjicio*, *transjicio* : (-jeci, -jectum).  
*Lacio* . . . *allicio*, *elicio*, *illicio*, *pellicio*.  
*Placeo* . . . *displaceo*. But *perplaceo*, *complaceo*.  
*Taceo* . . . *conticeo*, *reticeo*.  
† *Calco* : comp. *conculco*, *inculco*, *proculco*.  
*Salto* . . . *adsulto*, *exsulto*, *insulto*, *resulto*.  
*Quatio* . . . *decutio*, *discutio*, *excutio*, *incutio*, *percutio*, *recutio*, *succutio* : (-cussi, -cussum).

Compositis) in the Compounds of the following Verbs: *ego, I want*; *teneo, I hold*; (atque) and *emo, I buy*; *specio, I spy*; *sedeo, I sit*; (atque) and *premo, I press*; (adde) add *dedi, I gave*; (atque) and *lego, I gather*; (adde) add *steti, I stood*; (atque) and *rego, I rule*.\*

(Sunt excepta) The following are excepted: *relego, I read again*; *perlego, I read through*; (et) and *prælego, I read publicly*.

(Si) If (mutato Simplici) the Simple Verb being changed (Compositi Præsens) the Present Tense of the Compound Verb (sumsit *i*) has taken *i*, (sumet *ē*) it will take *ē* (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect, (si) if (valet) it is able (fingerē) to make the vowel (longam) long: (sic) thus,

Present.	Preterp.
deficio, <i>I fail</i> ;	defēcī.
projicio, <i>I throw</i> ;	projēcī.
conspicio, <i>I behold</i> ;	conspēxi.
dirigo, <i>I direct</i> ;	dirēxi.
pergo (per-rego), <i>I proceed</i> ;	perrēxi.
surgo (sus-rego), <i>I rise</i> ;	surrēxi.
porrigo (pro-rego), <i>I stretch</i> ;	porrēxi. †

(Composita) The Compounds (a) from *quæro, I seek*; *cædo, I beat or kill*; (et) and (a) from *lædo, I hurt*; (mutant) change (*æ* in *i*) *æ* into *i*. †

\* *Egeo*: comp. *indigeo*.

*Teneo* . . . *attineo, contineo, detineo, distineo, obtineo, pertineo, retineo, sustineo*: (-tinui, -tentum).

*Emo* . . . *adimo, dirimo, eximo, interimo, perimo, redimo*: (-emi, -emtum). But *coemo, dēmo* (for *de-imo*).

*Specio* . . . *adspicio, conspicio, despicio, dispicio, inspicio, perspicio, prospicio, respicio, suspicio*: (-spexi, -spectum).

*Sedeo* . . . *assideo, consideo, desideo, dissideo, insideo, obsideo, præsideo, resideo*: (-sedi, -sessum).

*Premo* . . . *comprimo, deprimo, exprimo, imprimo, opprimo, perprimo, reprimis, supprimo*: (-pressi, -pressum).

*Lego, I } colligo, deligo, diligo, eligo, intelligo, negligo, se-*  
*gather } ligō.* The Compounds of *Lego, I read*, keep *e*.

*Rego* . . . *corrigo, dirigo, erigo, &c.*: (-rexī, -rectum).

† This rule applies only where the Simple Verb has *e* in the Stem-syllable of the Preterperfect, as in the examples given. When the Stem-vowel is not lengthened in the Preterperfect, *i* is kept, as *continui*: also when the Stem-vowel of the Simple Preterperfect is not *e*, as *illisi*.

† *Quæro*: comp. *acquirō, conquiro, disquiro, exquiro, inquiro, perquiro*.

*Cædo* . . . *accido, conecido, decido, excido, incido, occido, præcido, recido, succido*.

*Plaudo, I applaud*, (convertit) changes *au* in *o* *au* into *o*: *claudo, I shut*, (commutat) changes (*au* in *u*) *au* into *u*: *obedio, I obey*, (solummodo) only (ex audio) compounded from audio, *I hear*, (dat *au* in *e*) changes *au* into *e*.\*

(Reduplicatio) The Reduplication (Simplicis) of the Simple Verb (exibit) will disappear (a Compositis) from the Compounds: (sic) thus (a) from *pello, I drive away*, *pepuli*, (fit) comes *impello, I impel*, *impuli*.

(Sed) But (Composita) the Compounds (a) from *disco, I learn*; *posco, I require*; *do, I give*; (et) and (a) from *sto, I stand*; (servant) keep the Reduplication.†

§ 92. (Præpositio cum) The Preposition *cum* (fit con-) becomes *con-* (quando stat compositum) when it appears in Composition.

*Ambi, re, se, sus*, (et) and *dis* (stant tantum) appear only (in Compositis) in Compounds.‡

(Præpositio) A Preposition (sæpe mutat) often changes (terminantem consonantem) its final consonant (sic) in such a way (ut fiat) that it may become (similis) assimilated (consonanti Simplicis) to the first consonant of the Simple Verb: (ut) as,

*ad-fero* (fit) becomes *affero*.  
*in-lino* . . . *illino*.

*obpeto* becomes *oppeto*.

(Convertite) Change (*n* in *m*) *n* into *m* (ante *b* vel ante *p*) before *b* or *p*: (ut) as,

*con-bibo* (fit) becomes *combibo* | *in-plico* becomes *implico*.

(Alia alia transferunt) Other Prepositions make other changes (quæ) which (longa sunt relatu) are long to recount.

*Lædo* . . . *allido, collido, elido, illido*.

(The *i* of these Compounds remains in the Preterperfect; as, *acquisivi, occidi, elisi*.)

\* *Plaudo*: comp. *complodo, explodo, supplodo*. But *applaudo*.

*Claudo* . . . *concludo, discludo, excludo, includo, intercludo, ocludo, præcludo, recludo* (-clusi, -clusum).

† *Disco*: comp. *addisco, condisco, dedisco, edisco*; Preterp. -*didici*.

*Posco* . . . *deposco, exposco, reposco*; Preterp. -*poposci*.

*Sto* . . . *adsto, consto, exsto, insto, præsto*; Preterp. -*stîti*: *circumsto, supersto*; Preterp. -*steti*.

‡ *Ambi, around, about*; *re, again, back*; *se, apart*; *dis, in different parts or ways*. Some grammarians think *sus* to be put for *subs, under*; others form it from *susum, for sursum, up*; which is more suitable to the sense of the words in which it is found, though the Participle *sublatus*, from *sustuli*, affords an argument for the first opinion.

(Do) I give (*hoc unum*) this single thing (*notandum*) to be remarked\* :

ab-fero (*fit*) becomes aufero.

ab-fugio becomes aufugio.

\* The following are the changes of Prepositions in Composition : —

(1) A, ab, abs, *from*. A, before *m* and *v*; as, amitto, avertō. Abs, before *c* and *t*; as, abscedo, absterreo: shortened into *as* before *p*, as aspello, asporto. Ab, before other letters. But note, aufero, aufugio.

(2) Ad, *to*. Unchanged before vowels, and before *h, j, m, v*; as, adeo, adhibeo, adjungo, admiror, advoco. Becomes *ac* before *qu*; as, acquiro. Assimilated before the other consonants; as, accedo, attero: but may remain unchanged before most of them; as, adfero or affero, adsumo or assumo.

(3) Con, *for cum, with*. Becomes *com-* before *b, m, p*; as, com-bibo, commoveo, compono. Assimilated before *l, r*; as, colludo, corrumpo. Becomes *cō* before vowels and *h*; as, coalesco, cohæreo; except comedo. Unchanged before the other consonants; as, concutio, convoco. Observe cognosco.

(4) E, ex, *out of*. Ex, before vowels, and before *c, p, q, s, t*; as, exeo, excludo, expungo, exquiro, exsculpo, extraho. Assimilated before *f*; as, effundo. E before the other consonants; as, educo, eniteo.

(5) In, *in, into, towards, against, upon*. Becomes *im* before *b, m, p*; as, imbibo, immitto, impello. Assimilated before *l* and *r*; as, illudo, irruo. Unchanged before other letters; as, inco, incumbo. Observe ignosco.

(6) Ob, *over-against*. Assimilated before *c, f, g, p*; as, occurro, offero, ogganno, oppono: unchanged before other letters. But note obsolesco, ostendo.

(7) Sub, *under (secretly)*. Assimilated before *c, f, g, m, p, r*; as, succumbo, sufficio, suggero, summoveo, suppono, surripio: but sometimes remains unchanged before these letters; as, subrideo, subruo. Unchanged before vowels and the other consonants; as, subeo, subtraho.

(8) Trans, *across, beyond*. Becomes *trā* in a few Verbs; as, trado, trano. Tran before *s*; as, tran-scribo. Unchanged before other letters.

(9) Ambi, *around, about*. Becomes *amb* before vowels; as, ambeo. Am before *p*; as, amplector. An before *c, q, f*; as, anquiro, anfractus.

(10) Dis, *di, in different parts or ways*. Dis before *c, p, q, s, t*; as, discumbo, displiceo, disquiro, disseco, distraho. Assimilated before *f*; as, differo. Before *j* sometimes *dis*; as, disjicio: sometimes *di*; as, dijudico. Before other consonants, *di*; as, dimoveo. But dirumpo and dirumpo.

(11) Re, *again, back*. Unchanged before consonants; as, requiro. Becomes *red* before vowels; as, redarguo. Buttman considers *red* the original form of this preposition (as also *sed* of *se*, *prod* of *pro*); whence *reddo* for *re-do*; *rē-cīdit* for *red-cīdit*; *rettuli*, *reppuli*, *repperi*, for *red-tuli*, *red-puli*, *red-peri*.

(12) Ante, *before*; circum, *around*; de, *from, (down)*; inter, *among, between*; per, *through*; prae, *before*; pro, *for, instead of (forward)*; post, *after*; præter, *beside*; subter, *beneath*; super, *above*; se, *apart*; sus, *up*, are unchanged in Composition. Except the following instances: anticipo, circuit, intelligo, pellicio, pelluceo, pejero. Note prodeo and prodigo for pro-eo and pro-ago.



§ 93. A. I. Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns, agree with their Substantives in-gender, number, and case: as, *No friend will-go to lost wealth.*

The-Substantive is-understood by Ellipse\*: as, *Most shun toil.* (Supply *men.*)

Neuter Adjectives perform the-office of-Substantives: as, *Death is last of-all things.*

II. A-finite Verb agrees with its-Nominative-Case in-number and person: as, *All vices war against nature.*

Sometimes an-Infinitive, or some Phrase, is-put for the-Nominative: as, *To-lie is not mine.* — *How long life is going-to-be, is uncertain.*

The-Nominative of-Pronouns is-expressed seldom: as, *We-lean always towards the-forbidden, and we-desire things-denied.*

Unless it-avail for-distinction or emphasis: as, *I expelled kings; ye bring-in tyrants.*

Impersonal-Verbs have not a-Nominative expressed: as, *It-irks and earnestly repents himself.*

The-Persons of-the-Verb *sum* (I am) often are-understood: as, *Nothing (is)-good except what (is)-honourable.*

The-Infinitive sometimes is-put-after the-Nominative: as, *Then pious Æneas began-to-tear-off the-robe from-his-shoulders.*

But the-Infinitive generally is-put-after the-Accusative, a-finite Verb going-before: as, *Men-report that-Homer was blind.*

III. The-Relative agrees with its-antecedent † in-gender, number, and person, but in-case it-is-construed with its-own sentence: as, *That is the-pleasantest friendship, which resemblance of-characters has-coupled.*

B. A-Substantive, Singular in form but not in-meaning, often has a-Verb, an-Adjective, or a-Relative, plural: as, *Part load the-tables with-viands.* — *The-Tegeatan youth come-up slow to-the-succour.*

Two or more singular Nouns generally have an-Adjective, Verb, or Relative, plural: as, *Hannibal and Philopæmen were taken-off by-poison.*

The-plural Verb agrees generally with the-Nominative of-the-worthier Person: but the-Adjective or Relative with the-Noun of-the-worthier Gender.

The-First Person is worthier than the-Second, the-Second than the-Third: as, *If thou and Tullia are-well, I and Cicero are-well.*

In things having-life the-Masculine Gender is worthier than the-Feminine: as, *My (literally, to-me) father and mother are dead.*

\* Ellipsis (ellipse) is a Figure of Syntax which leaves out some word or words belonging to the regular construction of the Sentence.

† The Antecedent of the Relative is that word or those words to which the Relative is referred.

But in things without-life, the-Adjective or Relative will-be most-frequently in the-Neuter Gender: as, *Riches, honour, glory, are placed within your-view.* (literally, *eyes.*)

Copulative Verbs\*, *sum* (I-am) *fiō* (I-become) *videor* (I-seem) *vocor* (I-am-called), with the-like, whether of-a Finite or Infinitive Mood, have the-same case on-either-side: as, *A-long syllable placed-after a-short, is-called Iambus.* — *I-am-acknowledged a-royal boy by established tokens.* — *It-is-allowed you to-be happy!*

A-Verb, placed between two Nominatives, sometimes agrees with the-latter alone: as, *The-quarrels of-lovers are the-renewal of-love.*

A-Relative placed between two Substantives of-the-same thing†, often agrees with the-latter alone: as, *Thebes, which is the-capital of-Bœotia.*

To-a-Substantive, Pronoun, and sometimes to-a-Sentence, a-Substantive of-the-same thing‡ may be-put-in-Apposition in the-same case: as, *Riches, incentives of-evils, are-dug-out (of the earth).* — *We consuls are-wanting.* — *Let-him-reflect (that) an-orator is-being-formed, a-difficult matter.*

When two Substantives of-different things come-together, one is-put in the-Genitive-Case: as, *Reclining under the-cover of-a-beech-trees.*

§ 94. C. I. Verbs Transitive govern an-Accusative of-the-nearer Object: as, *Despise pleasures.* — *In-the-first-place, worship God.*

Some Neuter and Passive Verbs admit an-Accusative of-their-own operation§: as, *He-serves a-hard slavery.* — *Claudius played hazard.*

Some Verbs, especially those of-asking and teaching, have a-double Accusative: as, *We-all demand of-thee peace.* — *Why now should-I-teach thee letters, O-ass?*

Most of these-Verbs keep the-Accusative of-the-thing in the-Passive Voice: as, *She-delights to-be-taught Ionic movements.*

The-Accusative of-respect in-the-Greek manner is-placed-after Neuter and Passive Verbs as-well as Adjectives: as, *He-quivers with-his-ears and trembles in-his-limbs.* — *(She is) all dyed with-redness in-her-tender cheeks.* — *They-are naked as-to-their arms.*

\* See § 101.

† That is, which are both used to define the same person or thing; as, *Animal and hominem: Thebæ and caput.*

‡ By a Substantive of the same thing is meant one which expresses the same person or thing in another character or by another title, for the purpose of definition or explanation.

§ Called the Cognate Accusative.

These Prepositions govern an-Accusative: *Ante* (before), *apud* (at, with, among), *ad* (to, at), *adversus* (over-against, towards), *circum* (around), *circa* (around, about), *citra*, *cis* (on-the-near-side-of), *contra* (against, over-against), *inter* (between, among), *erga* (towards), *extra* (out-of), *infra* (beneath), *intra* (within), *juxta* (near), *ob* (on-account-of, before), *penes* (in-the-power-of), *pone* (behind), *post* (behind, after, since) *præter* (beside, beyond, except), *prope* (near), *propter* (on-account-of, nigh), *per* (through, by), *secundum* (after, along, according to), *supra* (above), *versus* (towards), *ultra* (beyond), *trans* (across). To these add *super* (above, over), *subter* (beneath), and *in* (into, towards, to, upon, against, &c.), *sub* (under, about) if motion takes-place.

II. The-Vocative, the-Case of-one-called, is-governed by an-Interjection either expressed or understood: as, *Son*, or, *O Son*.

The-Interjections *en* and *ecce* (lo!) govern the-Accusative and the-Nominative; *O*, *ah*, *heu*, *hem*, *proh* (alas), the-Accusative, the-Nominative, and the-Vocative: as, *Lo a-wretched man!*—*Lo a-new disturbance and quarrel!*—*Alas pitiable boy!*—*Alas (for) hum! a emptiness!*—*The-honour of-gods and men forfend!*—*Holy Jupiter forfend!*

*Hei* and *væ* (alas!) govern a-Dative: as, *Alas me wretched!*—*Woe-to-thee, pleader!*

III. Almost all Adjectives and Verbs, also Adverbs and Substantives, govern a-Dative of-the-remoter Object, for-the-sake of-which something is or is-done: as, *We-wish to-be rich not only for-ourselves.*—*For-me in-yon-place (there-is) neither sowing nor reaping.*—*Numa chose virgins for-Vesta.*—*For-the-city he-is a-father, and for-the-city a-husband.*

Accordingly *sum* signifying possessively has a-Dative of-the-possessor: as, *For there-is to-me* (i. e. *I have*) *a-father at-home*; *there-is* (i. e. *I have*) *a-cruel stepmother*.

Very-many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs govern a-Dative, sometimes even Substantives, by which is-signified advantage, communication, comparison, consecration, agreement, habit, help, and fitness, kindness, nearness, pleasantness, affinity, delivery, indulgence, demonstration, promise, trust, and narration, compliance, command, and whatever (is) contrary to-these; together with *nubo* (I-marry), *vaco* (I-am-at-leisure-for): other-instances will-stand under the-First Rule: as, *Let-him-be serviceable to-his-country, useful to-the-fields.*—*A-poet is bordering-on an-orator.*—*A-multitude burdensome to peace, and hostile to-quiet rest.*—*It-is proper-to-live agreeably to-nature.*—*He-lends a-patient ear to-cultivation.*—*What he-gives to-another, he-takes-from himself.*—*(He) assured this to-me, and persuaded (me of it).*—*Fortune guarantees safety to-us.*—*Philosophy heals minds.*—*We-favour thee.*—*I-am-wroth-with thee.*—*The-conquering side pleased the-*

*Gods, but the-conquered (pleased) Cato.—Spare a-pious race.—A snake appeared to-Sulla sacrificing.—O beautiful boy, trust not too-much to-complexion.—Amassed money rules or serves each-man.—Wilt-thou-combat even a-love which-has-pleased?—Venus married Vulcan.—I-give-my-leisure always to-philosophy.—(There is) no trusting to-partners of-sonereignty.*

*Communis* (common), *similis* (like), *proprius* (peculiar), *par* (equal), and *alienus* (foreign), and more-Adjectives, sometimes prefer a-Dative, sometimes a-Genitive: as, *Middle-things are likeliest to-true.—Thinkest-thou (that) the-Gods are like thyself?—Activity of-mind is natural to-us.—To-speak ornamentally is the-property of-an-orator.*

*Delecto* (I-delight); *juvo* (I-help or please); *jubeo* (I-order); *rego* (I-rule); *lædo* (I-hurt); *guberno* (I-govern); are-joined to-an-Accusative contrary-to-the-rule: as, *The-camp pleases many.—Thou, O-Roman, remember to-rule the-nations with-thy-sway.*

*Tempero* and *moderor* (I govern or restrain) have a-Dative or an-Accusative: as, *This-person restrains horses, who (will) not restrain his-anger.*

Verbs compounded with the-Adverbs *bene* (well), *satis* (enough), *male* (ill), and with Prepositions, especially these, *ad*, *ante*, *ab*, *in*, *inter*, *de*, *sub*, *super*, *ob*, *con*, *post*, and *præ*, generally govern a-Dative: as, *I-satisfy the-rest always; never myself (mihi ipsi).—Sicily formerly was-con'iguous to-Italy.—The-giants waged war upon-the-Gods.—(We) often put-under hens the-eggs of-ducks.*

Many of these vary their-construction: as, *The-Helvetii surpass the-remaining Gauls in-valor.—These faults exist in love.*

The-Dative of-the-Agent follows Verbal-Adjectives in *bilis*, and the-Gerundive in *dus*; sometimes Perfect Participles, rarely Passive Verbs; as, *He died lamented by-many good-men.—Chremes remains, who is to-be-entreated by-me.—A-great citizen died and dreaded by-Otho.—Here I am a-barbarian, because I-am-understood not by-any-one.*

Passive Verbs and Participles generally have an-Ablative of-the-Agent with the-Preposition *a* or *ab*: as *He-is-praised by these, he-is-blamed by those.—The-death of-Crassus was bewailed by many.*

The-Dative of-the-purpose is-added to-the-Verb *sum* and many others, either for a-Nominative or for an-Accusative: as, *The-ant is for-a-pattern of-great toil.—I-have-lost the-kernel: he-has-left the-shells for-pawn.*

Often a-double Dative is-admitted; as, *The-greedy sea is a-destruction to-sailors.*

IV. The-Genitive of-the-possessor follows almost all Substantives, likewise the-Verbs *sum* (I-am); *facio* (I-make); *fit* (I-become); by the-Ellipse of-a-Substantive: as, *The-properties of-*

*individuals are the-riches of-the-st.te.—All-things which were the-woman's become the man's.—Scipio made Spain of-Roman dominion.*

*Est* Impersonal is-put-before a-Genitive, if *nature, token, office, or duty*, is-understood: as, *It-is (the-nature) of-any man to-err.—It-is (the-token) of-a-dishonest man to-deceive by-a-lie.—It-is (the-duty) of-a-young-man to-reverence (his) elders (maiores natu).*

An-Ellipse of-other Nouns also happens before a-Genitive: as, *Hector's Andromache.* (supply *wife.*)—*Glaucus's Deiphobe.* (supply *daughter.*)—*We-had-come to Vesta's.* (supply *temple.*)—*I-see this-man's Byrrhia.* (supply *slave.*)

The-Personal Genitive concealed in the-Possessive Pronoun takes another Genitive agreeing-with itself: as, *The-commonwealth was preserved by-the-exertion of-me alone.—You-saw the-eyes of-me weeping.*

The-Genitive of-Quality follows Substantives: as, *A-boy of-ingenuous countenance and ingenuous modesty.* Quality is-put also in the-Ablative: as, *An-old-man with-long beard, with-rough hair.*

Partitive words, Numerals, Comparatives, and Superlatives, govern a-Genitive, with-which they-agree in-gender: as, *Many of-these trees were planted by-my own hand.—I-am-charmed with-each of-you.—We-follow thee, holy-one of-gods.—Sulla lost a-hundred and-twenty of-his-men.—The-elder of-the-Neroes.—Bravest of-the-Gauls.—Of-mortals nobody is-wise at-all hours.—Least of-all.*

These Genitives, *gentium, terrarum*, and others, follow the-Adverbs of-Place, *huc* (hither), *eò* (thither), *quò* (whither), *ubi* (where) and-the-like: as, *I-think we-must-migrate to-some-quarter of-the-world.*

Adverbs and Substantives signifying Quantity, also Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns, govern a-Genitive: as, *Enough of-eloquence, too-little of-wisdom.—Justice requires no reward.—He-pre-serves something of-his-ancient strength.—As-much of-credit as of-money.*

(These) govern a-Genitive: — Verbal-Adjectives in *ax*, some Participles put Adjectively, and Adjectives signifying knowledge, care, and desire, memory, fear, crimination, power, and those-which stand in-a-contrary sense; the-poets give many others: as, *Time devourer of-things.—A-mind covetous of-another's-property, lavish of-his-own.—The mind of-men is ignorant of-fate.—All-men hate one-forgetful of-a-benefit.—Innocent of-a-brother's blood.—Anger is without-control of-itself.—O late in-your-studies.*

Certain Verbs of-accusing, acquitting, condemning, reminding, govern a-Genitive of-the-thing: as, *We-condemn soothsayers (as guilty) of-folly.—Adverse circumstances remind us of-religious-duties.*

*Memini* (I-remember), *recordor*, *reminiscor* (I-recollect), *obliscor* (I-forget), govern sometimes a-Genitive, sometimes an-Accusative-case: as, *God commands thee to-remember death.—Dying he-remembers sweet Argi.*

*Misereor*, *miseresco* (I-pity), are-joined to-a-Genitive; as, *Thou-pitiest us not-at-all.*

V. Adjectives, Verbs, and sometimes Substantives, admit an-Ablative signifying the-cause, or instrument, or manner, or material, or respect, or any-soever limitation: as, *Dido wild with-horrid purposes.—The-bad hate to-sin from-fear of-punishment.—These strive to-defend with-javelins, those with-stones.—Wrong is-done in-two manners, by-violence or deceit.—We-consist of-soul and body.—Ennius mightiest in-genius, untrained in-art.—Mardonius, a-Mede by-nation.—He-is not aged, but yet already advanced in-life.*

*Fungor* (I-discharge), *fruor* (I-enjoy), *utor* (I-use), *vescor* (I-eat), govern an-Ablative, *potior* (I-gain), an-Ablative or a-Genitive: as, *I-will-discharge the-office of-a-whetstone.—When he-was-able to-use his-victory, he-chose-rather to-enjoy (it).—The-Numidians feed-on wild flesh.—He-gains the-gold by-force.—The-Romans gained the-standards.*

Adjectives and Verbs which relate to plenty or want govern an-Ablative, many also a-Genitive; as, *Love is very-fruitle both in-honey and gall.—The-soul is never void of-motion.—It-is shameful to-be-dissolved in-luxury.—To-be-free from-blame is a-very-great comfort.—Rich in-wealth, rich in-embroidered furniture and gold.—The-king of-the-Cappadocians, wealthy in-slaves, wants money.—These things sate me of-life.*

*Opus* and *usus* (need) govern an-Ablative: as, *Where facts are-at-hand, what need is-there of-words?—My-son has need of-twenty minas.*

The-Adjectives, *dignus* (worthy), *indignus* (unworthy), *præditus* (endued), *fretus* (relying), *contentus* (contented), also the Verb *dignor* (I-deem-worthy), govern an-Ablative: as, *The-Muse forbids the-man worthy of-praise to-die.—Lentulus is endued with-uncommon modesty.—I-indeed deem not myself worthy of-such an-honour.*

The-Ablative of-Price follows Verbs and Adjectives, signifying purchase, sale, or valuation: as, *I buy not hope at-a-price.—Many an-honour is-sold for-gold.—The-victory cost the-blood of-many.—What is not needful, is dear at-a-penny.*

These Ablatives, *vili*, *parvo*, *minimo* (for a-little), *nimio* (for-too-much), *magno*, *plurimo* (for-a-great-price), *duplo* (for-twice-as-much), and *dimidio* (for-half), are-used by Ellipse, the-word *pretio* being-understood: as, *Hunger costs little, daintiness a-great-deal.*

The-value of-a-thing generally has a-Genitive, especially those

elliptical (Genitives), *magni, parvi, minimi, pluris*, and *plurimi*: as, *A-wise-man deems pain of-no-account.—Virtue holds pleasure of-very-little-worth.—One eye-witness is of-more value than ten hearsay-(witnesses).*

*Pluris, minoris, tanti, quanti, maximi*, signify price as-well-as value: as, *He-bought the pleasure-garden at-as-large-a-price as Pythius wished.*

The-Ablative of Difference is-joined to-Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs of Comparative and Superlative meaning: as, *The-sun is by-many times larger than the-moon.*

Especially the-elliptic Ablatives: *altero* (by-as-much-more), *hoc* (by-this-much), *eo* (by-that-much), *quo* (by-how-much), *nikilo* (by-nothing), and *nimio* (by-too-much), *dimidio* (by-half), *duplo* (by-twice-as-much), *quanto* (by-how-much), *tanto* (by-so-much), *paullo* (by-a-little), *multo* (by-much), *aliquanto* (by-a-good-deal): as, *Regret is so-much heavier as the-fault is greater.—By-so-much the-worst poet of-all as thou (art) the-best patron of-all.*

The-Ablative of-Comparison is-governed by Comparatives, whether Adjectives or Adverbs: as, *Silver is poorer than-gold, gold than-virtues.—I-think death lighter than-disgrace.*

*Quàm* is-omitted elegantly after *plus, amplius, minus*: as, *He-inflicted on-me more (than) five-hundred blows.*

These Prepositions govern an-Ablative: *a, ab (abs)* (from, after, by, on-the-side-of), *absque* (without), *coram* (in-the-presence-of), *de* (from, of, concerning), *palam* (in-the-sight-of, with-the-knowledge-of), *clam* (without-the-knowledge-of), *cum* (together-with, with), *ex, e* (out-of, of, after, agreeably-to, on-the-side-of), *sine* (without), *tenus* (as-far-as), *pro* (before, for, according-to), *præ* (before, owing-to): to-these add, *subter* (under), *super* (upon, concerning), and *in* (in, upon, among), *sub* (under, just-at) if station occurs.

A-Preposition in Composition sometimes governs the-same Case which it-governed also out-of Composition: as, *They-thrust-off the-ships from-the-rock.—Now I-address thee, O-Africanus.*

Verbs of-departing, separating, repelling, removing, and the-like, govern an-Ablative, even omitting the-Preposition: as, *Thou-wilt-retire from-thy-wide-purchased parks and mansion.—The-Athenian people drove Phocion from-his-country.*

To-this-Rule refer the-Ablative after Verbs and Participles of-origin, such-as are *natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus* (born, sprung, descended): as, *Atræus grandson of-Tantalus, son of-Pelops.—O-thou-sprung from-the-blood-of-Gods.*

*Tenus* governs either a-Genitive Plural or an-Ablative, and is-placed after its Case: as, *The-dewlaps hang from the-chin as-far-as the-legs.—Antiochus was commanded to-reign as-far-as Taurus.*

*Cum* is joined to-the-Cases of-Personal Pronouns, and usually

of-the-Relative, so that of-two words one is-formed : as, *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum or quocum, quibuscum.*

A-Substantive and a-Participle are-placed together in the-Ablative, which they-call Absolute : as, *Kings having-been-expelled consuls were appointed.*—*Cæsar being-on-the-point-of-coming, O-morning-star, restore the-day.*—*Obedience failing, government also falls.*

A-Substantive is-put also absolutely with a-Substantive or Adjective, where the-Participle of-being is-understood : as, *Nothing must-be-despaired, Teucer being-leader and Teucer omen-giver.*—*And now Hector was dust, his-brothers being-alive.*

§ 95. D. I. Definition of-time is-put in the-Ablative, if (the question) *when* or *within what time*, is-asked : as, *All wars rest in-winter.*—*Whatever befalls, we-shall-know in-two-days.*

The-use of-Prepositions in defining time is frequent : as, *The-sun makes two-turns in each year.*—*De die* (that is, *before the-close of-day*).—*De nocte* (that is, *before the-close of-night*).—*De multâ nocte* (that is, *long before the-close of-night*).—*Sub vesperum* (that is, *on-the-approach-of evening*).—*I-wait day after day.*

*How-long a-time ago, before, or after*, is stated sometimes by the-Ablative, sometimes by the-Accusative : as, *The-assembly had-been held already thirty days ago.*—*This was done almost two-years ago.*

Duration of-time, when (the question) *how-long* is asked, is-put most-commonly in the-Accusative, less-usually in the-Ablative : as, *Pericles presided-over Athens forty years.*—*The-Assyrians held empire one-thousand three-hundred years.*

II. The Place in which something is or is-done is-put in the-Ablative, either without a-Preposition or far more-commonly with the-Preposition *in* : as, *By-chance I-was-walking in-the-Sacred Road.*—*He-marries a-wife in Lemnos.*

The-name of-a-Town, in which something is or is-done, is-put in the-Ablative, provided it-be either of-the-third Declension or of-the-Plural Number : as, *Alexander died at-Babylon.*—*Philippus is at-Naples, Lentulus at-Pozzuoli*—*Bred at-Thebes or at-Argi.*

But it-is-put in the-Genitive, if it-is both of-the-first or second Declension, and of-the-singular Number : as, *What can-I-d at-Rome ? I-know-not (how) to-tell-a-lie.*—*He dwells at-Milctus.*

The-name of-a-Place is-governed generally by a-Preposition after a-Verb of-Motion : as, *He-marched into Gaul.*—*From Europe you-seek Asia.*

The-name of-a-Town, to which one-goes, is-put in the-Accusative usually without a-Preposition : as, *Regulus returned to-Carthage.*

The-name of-a-Town, from which one-goes, is-put in the-Ablative usually without a-Preposition : as, *Demaratus fled from-Corinth.*

But both Towns often take, and other Nouns reject a-Preposition after Verbs of-motion : as, *No rumour had-come from Brundisium.*—*Part-of-us will-come to-Scythia and Crete's rapid Oaxes.*



*Humus, domus, and rus* imitate the-construction of-towns: as, *Cadmus scatters on-the-ground the-teeth, mortal seeds.* — *Arms abroad are of-little-worth, unless there-is safe-counsel at-home.* — *Go home full, evening comes, go, she-goats.* — *I-see the-old-man returning from-the-country.*

III. The-Space of-Distance is-put more-commonly in the-Accusative, sometimes in the-Ablative: as, *I-was-distant from Amanus one day's journey.* — *The-temple of-Æsculapius is-distant from Epidaurus five thousand paces* (i. e. five Roman miles).

The-Space of-Progression is-put in the-Accusative: as, *Then having-dined we-crawl three miles.*

The-Space of-Dimension is-put most-commonly in the-Accusative, sometimes in the-Ablative, sometimes in the-Genitive: as, *The-walls of-Babylon were 200 feet high.* — *A-foot-and-a-half long, a-foot wide.* — *Make floors 10 feet broad.*

§ 96. E. I. *Libet* (it-pleaseth), *licet* (it-is-lawful), *liquet* (it-is-clear), and most Impersonal-Verbs, govern a-Dative: as, *(Let) not (that) please thee which (is) not lawful.* — *Savage bears agree among themselves.* (lit. *it-is-agreed to-savage bears.*)

*Piget* (it-irketh), *pudet* (it-shameth), *pœnitet* (it-repenteth), *tædet* (it-wearieth), and *miseret* (it-pitieth), govern an-Accusative of-the-person, with a-Genitive of-the-thing, or with an-Infinitive: as, *Thou pitiest others; for-thyself thou (hast) neither pity nor shame* (lit. *It-pitieth nor shameth thee.*) — *I am-sorrowed and wearied of-the-morals of-the-state.* — *It-repenteth them partly of-their-crimes, partly of-their-follies.* — *(He) whom it-repenteth to-have-sinned is almost innocent.*

*Delectat* (it-delighteth), *juvat* (it-pleaseth), *deceat* (it-beseemeth), *dedecet* (it-misbeseemeth), *oportet* (it-behoveth), take an-Accusative: as, *It-delighteth me to-have-cultivated Helicon in earliest youth.* — *Least-of-all does-it-beseem an-orator to-be-angry.* — *It-behoveth a-law to-be brief.*

*Pertinet, attinet* (it-belongeth, relateth, or concerneth), take the-Preposition *ad* with an-Accusative: as, *It-concerneth the-common-wealth, that-I be-preserved.* — *Let-him-squander, waste, be-ruined, it-concerneth me nought.*

*Interest* (it-imports or concerns), *refert* (it-matters or concerns), admit a-Genitive: as, *It-imports all-men to-act rightly.* — *It-matters-in composition, what-things you-place-before what.*

With these Verbs are-joined instead of-Personal Pronouns, the-Feminine Ablatives: *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*, the word *re* being-understood: as, *It-concerns both me and thee (that) thou be-well.* — *What matters-it to-me, whom I-am-a-slave-to?*

To-these Verbs are-added the-Genitives of-value, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris*: as, *It-concerns both of-us greatly that I-should-see you.* — *This avails not more than if-you-should-carry water to a-sieve.*

Neuter Verbs are-used Impersonally in the-Passive Voice for any persons : as, *A-shout-of-dissent-was-uttered by all* (that is to say, *all shouted-dissent*). — *What is-doing ? there-is-a-standing-still* (that is to say, *there-is-a-standing-still by us, or we-stand-still*).

II. Almost every Active Sentence may be-changed into a-Passive (sentence), so that the Nominative of-the-Active Sentence shall-become in the-Passive an-Ablative of-the-Agent.

(A.) If the-Verb of-the-Active Sentence has an-Accusative of-the-nearer Object, the-Verb in-the-Passive will-be Personal ; the-Accusative of-the-Active passing into the-Nominative of-the-Passive : as,

ACT. *The-consul managed the-affair admirably.*

PASS. *The-affair was-managed admirably by the-consul.*

(B.) If not, the-Verb of-the-Passive-Sentence will-be Impersonal, and either will-stand without a-case, or will-govern the-same case which it-governed in the-Active : as,

ACT. *The-enemy fought steadily.*

PASS. *(There was) steady fighting by the-enemy.*

ACT. *We need medicine.*

PASS. *There-is-a-need by us of-medicine.*

Where there-can be no ambiguity, the-Ablative of-the-Agent is-suppressed after Passive Impersonals : as, *We-go* (itur a nobis) *into an-ancient forest.*

Hence it-appears that-the-same Cases are-governed by Passive Verbs as by Active, except only the-Accusative of-the-nearer Object.

*Vapulo* (I am beaten), *veneo* (I am sold), *exulo* (I am banished), *liceo* (I am bid for), *fio* (I am made), with some other-Verbs, are-construed in-a-Passive sense : as, *The-witness was-beaten with-a-stick by the-defendant.* — *I-had-rather be-plundered by a-citizen than be-sold by an-enemy.* — *I-am-tortured lest my-husband fall by an-incensed enemy.*

§ 97. F. I. The-Infinitive with the-Gerunds and Supines makes the-Substantive of-the-Verb.

The-Infinitive is-joined to-many Verbs and Participles, and in-poetry to-Adjectives : as, *To-envy occurs not to a-wise-man.* — *I-seem to-wander through holy groves.* — *They-use to-think long who wish to-perform great-things.* — *Both well-matched to-sing, and ready to-answer.*

For the-Accusative of-the-Infinitive the-Gerund in *dum* is-put after Prepositions : as, *A-short time is long enough for living well.* — *The-characters of-boys reveal themselves in playing.*

For the-Genitive the-Gerund in *di* is-put after Adjectives and Substantives : as, *I-am-desirous of-satisfying the-republic.* — *Thucydides surpasses all in-skill of-language.*

For the-Dative the-Gerund in *do* is-put after some Adjectives and Verbs: as, *Crassus could not be a-match for-the-argument.*

For the-Ablative the-Gerund in *do* is-put signifying Cause, Instrument, or Manner, or with the-Prepositions, *ab, de, ex, in, cum*: as, *By-doing nothing men learn to-do ill. — Jove we-name from helping.*

Gerunds (have) an-Active signification; but if they-are Transitive, their construction may be-represented passively, indeed (is) oftener represented, by the-Participle in *dus*, which thence receives the-name of-Gerundive.

The-Gerundive Construction is-of-this-kind, that the-Substantive is-drawn into the-Case of-the-Gerund, with which (Case) the-Gerundive must-agree: as, *We-extract from-the-earth fire for agriculture. — It-seemed an-opportunity for-making a-revolution.*

For signifying Necessity Passively, the-Gerundive is-used Impersonally in the-Neuter Gender: as, *You must consult for-the-properties of-the-citizens. — (We) must pray that (there) be a-sound mind in a-sound body.*

II. The-Supine in *um*, like an-Accusative, is-put-after Verbs signifying motion: as, *They-come to-see, they-come that they-may-be-seen themselves. — We-send to-learn-of the-oracles of-Phœbus.*

The-Supine in *u* is-put, like an-Ablative of respect, both (after) many Adjectives, and also (after) the-Substantives, *fas, nefas, opus*: as, *(Let) nothing shameful to-be-spoken and seen approach these doors, within which is a-boy. — Lo! ill-omened sight, a-serpent issues-from-the-altars.*

III. Participles, Gerunds, and the-Supine in *um*, govern the-Cases of-their Verbs: as, *All having-dared monstrous wickedness and having-achieved their-daring.*

§ 98. G. Neuter Adjectives of-each Number sometimes are-put Adverbially, especially by poets: as, *He-will-be-a-slave forever, who cannot enjoy a-little. — He-returns backward fierce, looking sourly.*

Conjunctions Copulative and Disjunctive connect like Cases, Moods, and Tenses: as, *He admires the-gates, and the-bustle, and the-pavement of-the-streets. — Virtue can neither be-snatched nor stolen-away. Unless a-different principle of-construction interfere.*

H. *Ne* the-prohibitive-Conjunction is-joined to-an-Imperative or Subjunctive Mood: as, *Let-there be no delay (in performing) my commands. — Lay not the-blame on me.*

These-Conjunctions require the-Subjunctive: *ut* (that) &c.

These Conjunctions take the-Subjunctive or Indicative according-to the circumstances: *quum* (when) &c.

These Conjunctions generally take the-Indicative, unless the-nature of-the-passage require the-Subjunctive: *quod* (that, because, &c.

*Quamvis* is found with the-Indicative in historians and poets: as, *Although he-prevails not by-genius, he-prevails by-art.*

The Relative, *qui quæ quod*, governs the-Subjunctive, when it-signifies *because, although, in-order-that, or such-that*; as, *I pity you, because you-make this-man your foe. — I-sent a-letter by-which (I-might) both pacify and admonish him. — He-is one-who may be conquered. — Who is-there that hates not saucy boyhood.*

The-Subjunctive is-joined to-Pronouns and Particles of-interrogation, when-put subordinately\*: as, *He-knows-not even this, who himself is, whether he-is, or is not.*

Such-Interrogatives are: *quis* (who or what), *quantus* (how great), *qualis* (of-what sort), *qui* (who or what), *quot* (how many), *quotus* (which in order of number), *unde* (whence), *ubi* (where or when), *quando* (when), *quàm* (how), *quamobrem* (wherefore), *quare* (wherefore), *cur* (why), *quomodo* (how), *num, ne* (whether), *ut* (how) *an* (whether), *utrum* (whether).

A-Relative or Conjunction, when it-is-subordinated\* to-an-Infinitive or Subjunctive, governs a-Subjunctive: as, *Cæsar wrote to me, that-it-was very-agreeable to-him that I-have-been quiet. — I-am-striving that Cæsar may-allow me to-be-absent, when anything is-moved against Cnæus in the-senate.*

A-Conjunction is-understood sometimes: as, *It-behoves (that) you-devote-yourself to-philosophy.* (supply *ut*.) — *I-will inquire (whether) a-poem be complete or not.* (supply *utrum*.) — *O-Icarus, thou-shouldst-have a-share in so-great a-work, did-grief allow.* (supply *si*, if.) — *Though-you drive-out nature with-a-fork, it-will-return continually.* (supply *etsi*.)

§ 201. ((Prosodia) Prosody (disserit) treats (de quantitate) concerning the-quantity (syllabarum) of-syllables, (et) and (de legibus) concerning the-laws (metrorum) of-metres.

1. (*Tempus*) Time (est) is (mensura) the-measure (eloquendæ syllabæ) of-uttering a-syllable: (quod) which (et) also (vocatur) is-called *Quantitas* (quantity).

(Vocalis observetur) Let-the-vowel be-observed; (quantitas syllabarum) the-quantity of-syllables (stat) depends (in quantitate vocalium) on the-quantity of-the-vowels.

2. (*Habes*) you-have (notas) these-marks (longi Temporis) of-long Time [ - ], (brevisque) and of-short-Time [ ~ ].

(Singulis longis) One long-Time (brevisque binis) and two short (est) have (par eademque potestas) one and the same power.

(Illa vocalis) That vowel, (quæ) which (sonat) sounds (interdum) sometimes (brevis) short, (et rursus) and again (eadem) likewise (longa) long, (audit) is called (*communis*) common.

(H) The-letter-*h* (non habetur) is-not reckoned (consonans) a-

\* These expressions must be explained by the Master from the Larger Syntax.

consonant, (*exercetque*) and exercises (*nullam vim*) no power (in *Prosodiâ*) in Prosody.

§ 202. (*Omnis diphthongus*) Every diphthong (*contractaque syllaba*) and contracted syllable (*longa est*) is long: (*ut*) as (*præ*) a-surety, (*heu*) alas, (*gaudens*) rejoicing: (*coago*) I-compel (*fit cōgo*) becomes *cōgo*, (*nihil*) nothing (*nīl*) becomes *nīl*; (*bōbus*) to-oxen (*pro bovis*) is-put-for *bovis*; (*mōmentum*) an-impulse (*pro movimentum*) for *movimentum*.

(*At*) But (*tu corripies præ*) you will-shorten *præ* (*præeuntem vocali*) going-before a-vowel.

§ 203. (*Primaria*) Primitives (*dant*) give (*proprium tempus*) their-own quantity (*Derivatis*) to-their-derivatives: (*sic*) thus (*sālix*) a-willow (*format*) forms (*sāliceta*) willow-grounds, (*pōmum*) an-apple (*pōmaria*) orchards.

(*Tamen*) Yet (*in multis*) in many-instances (*fit aliter*) it-happens otherwise: (*sic*) thus (*ārena āret*) sand is-dry; (*sic*) thus (*hōmo est hūmanus*) man is human; (*sic*) thus (*parva lūcerna lūcet*) a-little candle shines.

(*Nec non*) Moreover (*Composta*) Compound-words (*sequuntur*) follow (*tempus Simplicium*) the-quantity of-their-Simples: (*sic*) thus (*repūto*) I-consider (*exstat*) comes (*a pūto*) from *pūto*, I-think, (*sic*) thus (*immēmor*) unmindful (*a mēmor*) from *mēmor*, mindful.

(*Tamen*) Yet (*sunt excepta*) there-are exceptions: (*sic*) thus (*nubo*) I marry (*format pronūba*) forms *pronuba*, a bridesmaid.

§ 204. (*Vocalis*) A-vowel (*prævia vocali*) going-before a-vowel (*corripitur*) is-shortened: (*ceu*) as, (*principium*) a-beginning; (*prōhibe*) forbid.

(*Sed*) But (*hinc excipe*) except from-this-rule (*multa Græca*) many Greek-words: as, *Chaonis*, *Æneas*, *Clio*, *Myrtous*, *Enyo*.

(*Priscus Genitivus*) The-old Genitive (*Primæ*) of-the-first-declension (*habebit*) will-have (*a longam*) long *a*: (*terrāi, aulāi*) as-*terrāi*, of-earth, *aulāi*, of-a-hall: (*sic*) thus (*Quinta*) the 5th Declension (*format diēi*) makes *diēi*, of-a-day: (*tamen*) but (*scribe*) write (*rēi atque rēi*) *rēi* and *rēi*, of-a-thing; (*fidēi atque fidēi*) *fidēi* and *fidēi*, of-faith.

(*Penultima*) The last-syllable-but-one (*Vocativo*) of-the-Vocative-Case (*vocis*) of-a-word (*in aius aut eius*) ending in *aius* or *eius* (*longa est*) is long: (*hac lege*) by-this rule (*sonantur*) are-sounded (*Cāi*) O-Caius, (*Pompēi*) O-Pompeius.

(*I verbi fio*) The-*i* of-the-verb *fio*, I-become, (*longa est*) is long, (*nisi*) except (*cum comes est er*) when *er* follows it: (*omnia nunc fient*) all-things will-happen now (*fieri quæ posse negabam*) which I-said could (not) happen.

(*Genitivus in ius*) A-Genitive-Case in *ius* (*i dat communem*) makes *i* common: (*ut*) as (*ille*) he (*illius illiusque facit*) makes *illius* and *illius*: (*sic*) so (*totus*) whole, (*et*) and (*unus*) one, (*ipse*) self, (*que*) and (*iste*) that, (*nullus*) none, (*et*) and (*ullus*) any,

(habent *ius iusque*) have *ius* and *ius* (in the Genitive): (*alterius*) the-Genitive *alterius* (semper breviat) always shortens *i*, (*producit alius*) the-Genitive *alius* lengthens-it.

(Nunc *Diana*) Sometimes *Diana* (feras agitat) chases beasts, (nunc) sometimes (*diā Diana*) divine *Diana*: (sic) thus (*dicimus*) we-say (*ōhe* vel *ōhe*) *ōhe* or *ōhe*, oh! (sed semper *ēheu*) but always *ēheu*, alas.

§ 205. (Vocalis) Any-vowel (erit) will-be (longa situ) long by-Position, (quam) which (bina consona) two-consonants (sequetur) shall-follow; (ceu) as (*pallor tristis*) sad paleness: (quam) or-which (voce in eadem) in the-same word (*j* subit) *j* follows (*x* aut *z*) or *x* or *z*: (sic) thus, (*Ajax*) Ajax, (*axis*) an-axle, (*Amazon*) an-Amazon.

(Excipe) except (*quadrijugus*) yoked-with-four-horses, (*bijugus*) yoked-with-two-horses, (quæ corripunt *i*) which shorten the-*i*.

(Vocalis) A-vowel (vi curta suā) short by-its-own power (communis erit) will-be common, (si) if (consona muta) a-mute consonant (postponens liquidam sibi) with a liquid after it (sequetur) shall-follow: (sic) thus (rectè dices) you-will rightly say (*lugūbre melos*) a-mournful melody (vel *lugūbre*) or *lugūbre*: (*dūplex*) double (sive *dūplex*) or *dūplex*: (*Tēcmessam*) Tecmessa (sive *Tēcmessam*) or *Tēcmessam*.

(*N* post *g*) *Gn* (semper dat longam) always makes a-long-syllable, (ut) as (*agnus*) a-lamb (et) and (*ignis*) fire: (nec minus) and likewise (*m* post *g*) *gm*; (quod) which (*tegmen*) a-covering (et) and (*agmen*) a-troop (monstrat) shews.

(Si) If (altera syllaba) another syllable (diviserit) shall-have-divided (liquidam mutā) the-liquid from-the-mute, (prior) the-former-syllable (longa semper) is-always long; (quod) which (*subruit*) he-undermines, (*ab-lue*) wash-away, (monstrant) shew.

§ 206. (Syllaba prima) The-first syllable (Præteriti geminati) of-a-reduplicated Preterperfect (brevis est) is short: (ut) as (*pepuli*) I-have-driven-away, (*didici*) I-have-learnt, (*pupugi*) I-have-pricked, (*cecidi*) I-have-fallen, (atque) and (*cecidi*) I-have-beaten.

(Perfecta disyllaba) Preterperfects of-two-syllables (efficiunt) make (primam longam) the-first-syllable long: (ut) as, (*vidi*) I-have-seen, (*legi*) I-have-read, (que) and (*movi*) I-have-moved: (sed) but (excipis octo) you-except eight: (*bibi*) I-have-drunk, (*dedi*) I-have-given, (*fui*) I-have-been, (*fidi*) I-have-cleft, (*steti*) I-have-stood, (*steti*) I-have-stopped, (*tuli*) I-have-borne, (*scidi*) I-have-cut.

(Que) also (Supina disyllaba) Supines of-two-syllables (ritè producant) properly lengthen (primam) their-first-syllable: (ut) as (*visum*) to see, (*lotum*) to-wash, (que) and (*motum*) to-move: (sed excipis octo) but you-except eight: (*citum*) to-rouse, (*datum*)

to-give, (*itum*) to-go, (*litum*) to-smear, (*ratum*) to-think, (*ratum*) to-throw-down, (*satum*) to-sow, (*situm*) to-allow.

§ 207. (Produces) You-will-lengthen (pleraque monosyllaba) most words-of-one-syllable, (qualia) such-as (*me*) me, (*ver*) spring.

(In *l, b, d, t*) Words-of-one-syllable ending-in *l, b, d, t*, (corripiuntur) are shortened: (ut) as (*vel*) even, (*sub*) under, (*id*) that, (*et*) and (*stat*) he-stands: (*es*) thou-art (cum compositis) with its-compounds, (ut) as (*ades*) thou-art-present; (*que*) and, (*ve*) or, (quumque rogat, *ne*) and *ne* when it-is-interrogative: (*fac*) make, (*nec*) neither, (*an*) or, (*in*) in, (*fer*) bear, (*per*) through, (*ter*) thrice, (*vir*) a-man, (*cor*) a-heart, (*quis*) who? (*bis*) twice, (*is*) he, (*et cis*) and *cis* on-this-side-of.

§ 208. (In *A*) Words-ending-in *A* (producuntur) are-made-long: as, (*frustra*) in-vain, (*que*) and (*intra*) within, (*que*) and (*para*) prepare.

(Sed excipe) But except (casus rectos) Nominative Cases (et quartos) and Accusatives: (quales) such as (*musa*) the-muse (*carmina* canit) sings songs: (*silvæ*) the-woods (resonant *Amaryllida*) resound *Amaryllis*: (atque) and (Vocativos plerosque) most Vocatives, (ut) as (*Oresta*) O-Orestes, (*Thyesta*) O-Thyestes: (particulas) the particles (*eja*) ho! (*ita*) so, (cumque his) and with these (*quia*) because: (quæ breviant *a*) which shorten *a*.

§ 209. (Corripiuntur in *E*) Words-in *E* are-made-short: (ceu) as (*lege timete carere*) fear to-be-without law.

(Casus) The-Cases (Primæ Quintæque) of-the-first and fifth-declension (requirunt *e* longam) require *e* long: (ut) as, (*Thisbe*) *Thisbe*, (*specie*) by-appearance: (quæ derivantur ab illis) and-words-which are-derived from them: (ut) as (*quare*) wherefore, (atque) and (*hodie*) to-day; (contractaque) and contracted-words (qualia) such-as (*Tempe*) *Tempe*: (Verba in *eo*) Verbs of-the second-conjugation (mandantia) in-the-Imperative-Mood (primi numeri) Singular Number: (ut) as (*aude*) dare-thou: [(sed) but (scribendi est æqua potestas) we may equally write (*cavē* sive *cavē*) *cavē* or *cavē*, beware]: (Adverbia) Adverbs (ducta) derived (ex Adjectivis secundæ) from Adjectives of-the-second-declension, (ut) as (*miserè*) wretchedly: (jungantur) let-there-be-added (*oh*) oh! (*que*) and (*ferme*) generally (*que*) and (*ferè*) commonly.

§ 210. (Producuntur in *I*) Words-in *I* are-made-long, (ceu) as (*dici*) to be said, (*que*) and (*orbi*) to-a-circle, (*que*) and (*doli*) deceits.

(Attamen) But (deme hinc) except from-this-rule (multos Dativos) many Datives (atque Vocativos) and Vocatives (Græcorum) of the Greeks: (ut) as (*Thyrsidi*) to-Thyrsis, (*Phyllidi*) to-Phyllis, (*Chlori*) O-Chloris: (deme) except (*sicubi*) if-any-where, (*necubi*) lest-any-where, (*nisi*) unless, (et) and (*quasi*) as-if, (*queis*

brevis est *i*) which have *i* short. [(*At*) But (*mihi*) to-me, (*ubi*) where, (*tibi*) to-thee, (*ibi*) there, (*sibi*) to-himself, (*communem* faciunt *i*) make *i* common.]

§ 211. (*Producuntur* in *O*) Words-in *O* are-long; (*ceu*) as (*virgo*) a-virgin, (*que*) and (*ultro*) spontaneously, (*que*) and (*juvo*) I-help.

(*At*) But (*puto*) I-think, (*scio*) I-know, (*nescio*) I-know-not, (*corripiunt finalem O*) shorten final *O*. (*Adde*) add (*modò*) only (*et composita*) and its-compounds, (*duo*) two, (*octo*) eight, (*ego*) I, (*queis*) to which (*junge*) join (*citò*) quickly. (*O proprium claudens nomen*) *O* at-the-end-of a-proper name (*communis habetur*) is-reckoned common, (*ut*) as (*Matho*) Matho: (*sed*) but (*in Græcis*) in Greek-names (*longa est semper*) it-is always long; (*ut*) as (*Argo*) the-ship-Argo. (*Flaccus*) Horace (*habet*) has (*quædam communia*) certain-words common, (*Naso*) Ovid (*plurima*) very-many: (*corruptior ætas*) a-more-corrupt generation (*poëtarum*) of-poets (*addidit*) added (*plura*) more-instances.

(*Producuntur* in *U*) Words-in *U* are-long, (*sic*) thus (*tu*) thou, (*que*) and (*dictu*) to-be-said, (*que*) and (*diu*) long.

(*Corripuntur* in *Y*) Words-in *Y* are short; (*sic*) thus (*poëtæ dant*) poets have (*chely*) *O*-lute, (*Tiphy*) *O*-Tiphys.

§ 212. (*In C producuntur*) Words-in *C* are-long, (*ut*) as (*illic*) there: (*excipe*) except (*donec*) until.

(*Corripe* in *L, D, T*) shorten words-in *L, D, T*; (*sic*) thus (*Hannibal*) Hannibal, (*illud*) that, (*amavit*) he-loved.

(*Corripiuntur* in *N*) Words-in *N* are-short: (*ceu*) as (*culmen*) a summit. (*At excipe*) But except (*Græca multa*) many Greek-words (*vocali prædita longâ*) possessing a-long vowel, (*ut*) as, (*Hymen*) Hymen, (*Acron*) Acron.

(*Corripiuntur* in *R*) Words-in *R* are-short: (*ceu*) as (*calcâr*) a spur, (*amabitur*) he-will-be-loved, (*Hector*) Hector.

(*Tamen*) But (*producis*) you-lengthen (*Græca*) the Greek-words: as (*cratër*) a bowl, (*æthër*) the sky, (*æër*) the atmosphere.

§ 213. (*Producuntur* in *As*) Words-in *As* are long: (*ut*) as (*terras*) lands. (*Excipe*) Except (*Græca*) Greek-words (*queis Genitivus âdis*) which have a Genitive in-âdis, (*ceu*) as (*Pallas*) Minerva: (*et excipe*) except too (*casus quartos*) accusatives (*crescentium*) of-nouns-increasing, (*ceu*) as (*lampadas*) torches; (*his adde*) add to-these (*anas*) a-duck.

(*Producuntur* in *Es*) Words in *Es* are-long; (*ut*) as (*sedes*) a-seat, (*et*) and (*videres*) you-might-see. (*Excipienda tamen*) But we-must-except (*quæ Græci corripiunt*) words-which the-Greeks shorten; (*ut*) as (*Troades*) Trojan-women: (*excipias etiam*) except also (*penes*) in-the-power-of, (*excipiasque*) and except (*queis brevis est*) nouns-which have short (*penultima*) the-last-syllable-but-one (*crescentis Genitivi*) of-an-increasing Genitive, (*ut*) as (*seges*) standing-corn: (*at*) but (*pariēs*) a-house-wall (*semper pro-*



ducitur) is-always lengthened, (atque) and (*pes*) a-foot (cum compositis) with-its-compounds: (que) and (*abies*) a-fir-tree, (que) and (*aries*) a-ram, (que) and (*Ceres*) Ceres.

§ 214. (Corripiuntur in *Is*) Words in *Is* are-short; (ceū) as (*diceris*) thou-art-said, (*utilis*) useful, (*ensis*) a-sword.

(Obliqui casus plurales) The-oblique-cases plural (excipiuntur) are-excepted, (ut) as (*terris*) by-lands, (*vobis*) to-you: (etiam) also (persona secunda in primo numero) the-second-person singular (Præsentis) Present-tense (Quartæ) of-the-Fourth-conjugation, (ut) as (*audis*) thou-hearest: (composita a vis, sis) the-compounds of *vis* thou-wilt, *sis* thou-mayst-be; (*malis*) thou-mayest-prefer, (que) and (*nolis*) thou-mayst-refuse, (que) and (*velis*) thou-mayst-wish. [(*Sed ris*) but *ris* (persona secunda) the-second person-singular (Præteriti et Futuri) of-the-Preterperfect and Future (Activæ vocis) of the Active voice (rectè communis habetur) is-properly held common; (as) (*feceris*) thou-mayst-have-done, (*addideris*) thou-mayst-have-added, (*tuleris*) thou shalt have borne.] (At produc nomina) But lengthen nouns (queis longa est) which have long (penultima) the-penultimate (crescentis Genitivi) of-an-increasing Genitive, (ut) as (*Samnis*) a-Samnite: (itidem) likewise (*Simois*) the-Simois, (que) and (*gratis*) freely, (que) and (*foris*) abroad.

§ 215. (Producuntur in *Os*) Words-in *Os* are-long, (ut) as (*ventos*) winds (atque) and (*sacerdos*) a-priest.

(Corripienda tamen) But we-must-shorten (quæ Græci corripiunt) words-which the-Greeks shorten, (ut) as, (*Phasidos*) of-the-Phasis, (*Argos*) Argos, (*epos*) an-epic-poem: (sic) so (*compos*) master-of, (et) and (*impos*) powerless, (*os*) a bone, (*exos*) boneless.

(Corripiuntur in *Us*) Words-in *Us* are-short: (ceū) as (*tempus*) time, (*amamus*) we-love, (et) and (*intus*) within.

(Hinc excipe) Except from-this-rule (casus contractos) the-contracted cases (quartæ) of-the-fourth-declension, (ut) as (*artus*) limbs: (queisque longa est) and nouns-which have long (penultima) the-penultimate (crescentis Genitivi) of-an-increasing-Genitive: (ut) as (*tellus*) earth, (que) and (*incus*) an-anvil, (*juventus*) youth, (atque) and (*senectus*) old-age: (producta a Græcis) words-lengthened by the-Greeks, (ut) as (*Sapphûs*) of-Sappho, (atque) and (*Melampus*) Melampus, (atque) and (*Iesus*) Jesus, (nomen) a-name (venerandum) to-be-adored (piis cunctis) by-all pious-persons.

(Corripiuntur in *Ys*) Words in *Ys* are-short: (ut) as, (*chelys*) a-lute, (*chlamys*) a mantle, (*Othrys*) mount-Othrys, (*Erinnys*) a-Fury.

Not. (Ea syllaba) That syllable (quam) which (regula nulla) no rule (facit) makes (longam brevemve) long or short, (ducit tempus) derives its-quantity (ab auctorum scriptis) from-the-writings of-authors.

§ 216. 1. Call a-raising of-the-voice in uttering syllables, *Arsis*, (*Ictus* accompanies this); and on-the-other-hand a-dropping of-the-voice is (called) *Thesis*. A-*Foot* is a-certain succession of-syllables, and *Rhythm* a-certain succession of-Feet. In-the-works-of poets the-name of-Rhythm is a-*Verse*: and a-certain order of-Verses call *Measure* or *Metre*: also a-certain part of-a-Verse is-called *Metre*.

§ 217. 2. A-long syllable following a-short is called *Iambus* (◡ -): but if a-long-syllable goes-before a-short-one, that (is) a-*Trochee* (- ◡): a-*Pyrrhich* will consist of-two short-syllables (◡ ◡): a-*Spondee* will consist of-two long-syllables (- -): a-*Dactyl* is-formed by-a-long and two short-syllables (- ◡ ◡): and an-*Anapæst* by-one long after two short-syllables (◡ ◡ -). Add to-these a-*Tribrach* formed by-three short-syllables. (◡ ◡ ◡).

You-will-say that-a-Rhythm, which a-*Thesis* begins, is-*ascending*; a-specimen of-which-kind thy verse, O-Iambus, will-give. On-the-other-hand, if-it-begins with *Arsis*, you-will-say it-is-*descending*; thou-makest such, O-Dactyl, and thou, O-Trochee.

One foot makes a-metre in Dactylic verse, and two-feet in others.

That verse which wants one syllable for-completing its-metres, is-called *Catalectic*. That which wants two syllables for-completing its metres is-called *Brachycatalectic*. A-verse which (has) one syllable over, when-its-metres are-complete, is-called *Hypercatalectic*. That Verse, which has-nothing wanting or too-much, being-smooth and round, is-called *Acatalectic*.

§ 218. *Scansion*, which Figures adjust by-various art, distributes a-Verse according to-feet.

A. *Synalæpha* (Elision) cuts-off a-Vowel at the-end of-a-word, if there-shall-be a-vowel at the-beginning of-the-following word: (as) *I-love Phyllis before other-women: for she-wept that-I was-departing*.

Sometimes *Hiatus* violates the-law of-Synalæpha: (as) *Thrice they-endeavoured to-place Ossa on-Pelion*.

A-following vowel never elides *heu*, *O*, and *ah* (alas!).

*Ecthlipsis* cuts off a-vowel and *m* from the-end, if there-shall-be a-vowel at the-beginning of-the-following word: (as) *O the-cares of-men, O what-great emptiness there-is in things*.

§ 219. C. One-syllable wrought out-of two is-called *Synæresis*, as *deest* (it is wanting), *dein* (next), *aureos* (golden), *alvearia* (hives), *Thesei* (of Theseus) show.

In-the-works-of poets *I* and *U* sometimes take the-privileges of-consonants: (as) *Eridanus king of-rivers. The-wall totters from-the-battering-ram. Knees tremble. And Serians comb tight fleeces*.

D. But one-syllable divided into two is-called *Dieresis*, which *Naiades* and yellow-haired *Suævi* show to-you.

*U* is-put for *V*: you-will-see *silius* (woods) and *soluit* (he-hath-loosed).

§ 220. E. *Cæsura* ends words before the-end of-feet: (as) *Ye-Lights which lead in-heaven the-gliding year.*

A-vowel, which nature has-made short, sometimes is-made long in Arsis, *Cæsura* and Ictus helping: (as) *Poring-over the-breasts he-consults the-palpitating entrails."*

F. *Dialysis* (Incision) separates both a-word and foot at-once: (as) *Ye-Lights which lead in-heaven the-gliding year.*

Not. The-last syllable of-a-verse is-held common.

§ 221. The-Hexameter is-formed by-six feet: of-these the-fifth is a-dactyl: a-spondee is-put in-the-sixth place: and either-of-the-two is-found in-the-other places.

Gravity of-topics stations a-spondee in-the-fifth place.

*Cæsura* is-wont to-divide an-Hexameter, where the-third or fourth foot is separated at an-Arsis.

Sometimes the-only *Cæsura* of-a-verse is after a-Thesis: (as) "*Active, passionate, inexorable, fierce."*

You-will-condemn a-verse which is-without any *Cæsura*.

A-word of-two-syllables or of-three-syllables, by custom, makes the-termination of-an-Hexameter, seldom a-word-of-more-than-two-syllables, seldom a-word-of-one-syllable, unless another go-before, closes the-verse.

The-last syllable of-a-verse (is) seldom absorbed: when this happens, the-verse (is) then called *Hypermeter*: (as) *In-all-things like Mercury, both in-voice and complexion, and yellow locks, and graceful limbs of-youth.*

§ 222. The-Pentameter has two parts: each commences with-two feet, which a-long syllable follows. A-Spondee and Dactyl enter the-first-part as-you-choose: the-second part rejoices only in-dactylic feet.

*Cæsura* separates the-first part of-a-Pentameter from-the-second: and Synalæpha is-excluded from that place: (as) *Although he-prevails not in-genius, he-prevails in-art.*

A-word-of-two-syllables makes by custom the-end of-a-Pentameter.

*Est* may-be thrown to the-end, if Synalæpha takes place: (as) *Thy letter was read with-unwilling eyes.* Or if a-word of-one-syllable goes-before, as in this: *If I-obtain those rewards by-my-zeal, it-is enough.*

Let-not a-word of-one-syllable be the-end of-the-first part, unless a-word of-one syllable go-before, as in this: *Yet there-is great hope in the-goodness of-God.* Or sometimes a-word formed of-two short-syllables: (as) *She secures to-Jupiter the-formidable sceptre without force.*

§ 223. The-Heroic Muse rejoices in-Hexameters alone: *Elegies* join-together Hexameters and Pentameters.

Elegiac-Distichs prefer containing a-complete sense: nor is-it-

good for-the-construction of-a-simple sentence to-be-divided into (separate) distichs.

§ 224. The goldfinch is a singing bird, but the acanthus blooms in the fields. The maple is in the woods; the spirited horse gains an Olympic victory. The chief who carries arms on his shoulders is carried on the horse's flank. The wandering bee stores honey: Apis is an Egyptian god. The gad-fly harasses horses; an asylum is wont to receive the wretched. He who engraves carves; he who keeps things hidden conceals. You will sing with your voice: ho! lead dogs, unless you are white on the temples. Twined nets are set: the brazen helmet shines. Surround your head with the helmet: boars are caught by nets. *Cedo* (I yield) makes *cessi* (Preterperfect), *cado* (I fall) *cecidī*, *cado* (I beat) *cecidī*. A club strikes; a nail holds firm, and a key opens. A maid carries a distaff, moist matter penetrates a strainer. The farmer tills fields, but strains thick wines. You strike close with a sword; you fall by a spear thrown from a distance. That you may please a companion, put on, as a companion, affable manners. Comedians, seek the stage; messmates, seek supper. Consult teachers, so you consult for yourself. Often has his own desire injured the man desirous of war. Songs are recited, while temples are being dedicated to the Lord. He trusted not to untie, who severed the knot with a sword. This man trains dogs to take them out soon against boars. If you have not money, you are destitute, and eat not delicacies. The sea often deceives one who relies too much on the clear surface. Fruits grow on trees, corn in the fields. The sun chases the clouds, and irrecoverable time flies. The swallow is a chirping bird: the leech swims, the reed is green in spring. By what a man sins, by the same the same man is soon punished. It is a difficult labour under the weight of which I sink. A boy's forehead is smooth, but a girl's tongue light. Seek hares in woods, elegancies in words. He is not bid for by me at a penny, who bids not for me at a penny. I had rather break with my jaw good apples than bad. Merchandise is sold, and reward comes gained by toil. Sylvia strokes with loving hand, while she milks her cow. You will be dear to the Lord, if you have sent gold to the wretched. Strive, little boy, whoever shalt desire to shine. She who is red, besmeared with paint, is forgetful of decency. He fell by base treachery, whom a friend killed. I wait for Caius, who is clad in dark dress. A mouth commands, but a bone is eaten with the mouth. It is a wife's part to bring forth and obey, a husband's to procure. Obedient children make parents rejoice. If you do not wish to be hanged, you will not refuse to pay your debts. Play at ball: a javelin is hurled; *pila* is a pillar. *Plāga* is for a net and a country; *plāga* for a blow. People are the citizens of a city: poplar is a tree. If you can avoid, drink not more than two cups. The prow is the front part (of a ship), the stern the hind part, and the keel the lowest. Thrashing machines bruise grain:

burrs are wont to injure the fallow. A bail promises, but a vessel contains food. A bail kindly assures the person, but a surety money only. If you wish to cross the waters of the sea, use sails.

Trust, but first see; he who trusts, and has not well seen, is deceived: therefore see, lest you be inveigled by trust. Tailors delight in shears, barbers in curling-irons: but a smith takes his red-hot work with tongs. The same fortune makes partners; the same toil comrades; the same duty colleagues: but school, play, the table, make dear companions. *Lira* is the furrow of a field: *lyra* (the lyre) touched utters notes. Let him not be secure, who is not safe from the enemy: you have banks by a river, shore by the sea. Men are old by time; ancients lived formerly: I feign what is not, and dissemble what is. A hoof tramples: a talon tears, holds, clutches; tenacious sedge grows in a pool, sea-weed in the sea. We properly intrench a camp, but hedge in a sheep-fold: a spear can be called rounded, a sphere round. Blot out what is written, but quench the flame of the lamp: the tongue tastes any food which has good flavour. The cuticle is on the flesh, the skin drawn from the body: man spreads a back: a beast has *tergus* (a back). A baker has an oven, stoves are warmed by a furnace: this mark of the grammarian was not known to me. Have you anything new? Seek another: I know nothing. That chatterer relates what matters very little. If perchance you sit anywhere, and the seat is convenient to you, sit in that seat: perhaps a new one is hardly safe.

# APPENDIX.

---

## I. GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek Nouns of the First Declension in *as, es, e*. See § 14., note.
2. Greek Nouns of the Second Declension in *os, on*. See § 15., note 3.
3. Greek Nouns Heteroclite, fluctuating between the Second and Third Declensions : —

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) Sing. N. Pelē-ūs <i>or</i> Pel-eūs<br/>           G. Pele-i <i>or</i> Pele-os<br/> <br/>           D. Pele-o<br/>           Acc. Pele-um <i>or</i> Pele-ā<br/> <br/>           V. Peleū<br/>           Abl. Pele-o.</p>  | <p>(b) Achill-eūs <i>or</i> Achill-es<br/>           Achille-i, Achill-i, Achill is,<br/> <i>or</i> Achille-os<br/>           Achill-i<br/>           Achill-em, Achill-en, <i>or</i> Achil-<br/>           le-a<br/>           Achill-eu <i>or</i> Achill-ē<br/>           Achill-e.</p> |
| <p>(c) Sing. N. Thucydid-es<br/>           G. Thucydid-is <i>or</i> Thu-<br/>           cydid-i<br/>           D. Thucydid-i<br/>           Acc. Thucydid-em <i>or</i><br/>           Thucydid-en<br/>           V. Thucydid-e <i>or</i> Thu-<br/>           cydid-es<br/>           Abl. Thucydid-e.</p> | <p>(d) Pericl-es<br/>           Pericl-is <i>or</i> Pericl-i<br/> <br/>           Pericl-i<br/>           Pericl-em <i>or</i> Pericle-a<br/> <br/>           Pericl-es<br/> <br/>           Pericl-e.</p>   |

4. Greek Nouns entirely of the Third Declension : —

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| <p>(a) Sing. N. Thal-es<br/>           G. Thal-is <i>or</i> Thalet-is<br/>           D. Thal-i <i>or</i> Thalet-i<br/>           Acc. Thal-em, Thal-en, <i>or</i> Thal-eta<br/>           V. Thal-e <i>or</i> Thal-es<br/>           Abl. Thal-ē <i>or</i> Thalet-ē.</p> | <p>(b) Sing. N. Ech-o<br/>           G. Ech-us<br/>           D. Ech-o<br/>           Acc. Ech-o<br/>           V. Ech-o<br/>           Abl. Echo.</p> | <p>(c) Sapph-o<br/>           Sapph-us <i>or</i> Sapphon-is<br/>           Sapph-o <i>or</i> Sapphon-i<br/>           Sapph-o <i>or</i> Sapphon-em<br/>           Sapph-o<br/>           Sapph-o <i>or</i> Sapphon-ē.</p> |
|--|--|---|

<p>(d) Sing. N. Memn-on          G. Memnon-is          D. Memnon-i          Acc. Memnon-em or Memnon-a          Abl. Memnon-ē.</p>	<p>(e) Æth-er          Æther-is          Æther-i          Æther-em or Æther-a          Æther-ē.</p>
<p>(f.) Sing. N. Thyrs-is          G. Thyrsid-is or Thyrsid-os          D. Thyrsid-ī          Acc. Thyrs-in or Thyrsid-a          V. Thyrs-ī          Abl. Thyrsid-e.</p>	<p>(g) Tiber-is          Tiber-is          Tiber-i          Tiber-im          Tiberis          Tiber-i</p>
<p>(h) Sing. N. Nere-is          G. Nereid-is or Nereid-os          D. Nereid-i          Acc. Nereid-em or Nereid-a          V. Nere-i          Abl. Nereid-e.          Plur. N. Nereid-es          G. Nereid-um.          D. Nereid-ibus or Nereis-in          Acc. Nereid-es or Nereid-as          V. Nereid-es          Abl. Nereid-ibus or Nerei-sin.</p>	<p>(i) Erinny-ys          Erinny-is or Erinny-os          Erinny-i          Erinny-ym, Erinny-yn, or Erinny-a          Erinny-y          Erinny-e.          Erinny-es          Erinny-um          Erinny-sin          Erinny-as          Erinny-es          Erinny-sin.</p>



## II. PATRONYMICS.

PATRONYMICS are Proper Names, which denote the descendant, by derivation from the name of his father or ancestor. They are Masculine or Feminine. Masculine Patronymics end in *des* of the First Declension : Feminine, in *is* or *as* of the Third, or in *ne* of the First Declension.

### A. Patronymics derived from Nouns of the First Declension in *as*, *es* :—

#### (a) Masculine.

1. Æne-ādes, son of Æne-as.
2. Laert-iades . . Laert-es.

#### (b) Feminine.

1. Æne-is, daughter of Æne-as.
2. Laert-ias . . Laert-ea.

## B. Patronymics derived from Nouns of the Second Declension :—

## (a) Masculine.

1. Tyndar-ides, *son of Tyndar-us.*
2. Thesti-ades . . . Thesti-us.

## (b) Feminine.

1. Tyndar-is, *daughter of Tyndar-us.*
2. Thesti-as . . . Thesti-us.
3. Neptun-ine . . . Neptun-us.
4. Acrisi-one . . . Acrisi-us.

C. Patronymics derived from Heteroclite Nouns in *eus* of the Second and Third Declensions :—

## (a) Masculine.

Nel-ides, *son of Nel-eus.*

## (b) Feminine.

1. Nel-ēs, *daughter of Nel-eus.*
2. Peli-as . . . Pel-eus.

## D. Patronymics derived from Nouns of the Third Declension :—

## (a) Masculine.

1. Agenor-ides, *son of Agenor.*
2. Cecrop-ides . . . Cecrop-s.
3. Mino-ides . . . Mino-s.
4. Arzac-ides . . . Arzac-es.
5. Atlant-iades . . . Atlas.
6. Telamon-iades . . . Telamon.

## (b) Feminine.

1. Agenor-is, *daughter of Agenor.*
2. Cecrop-is . . . Cecrop-s.
3. Mino-is . . . Mino-s.
4. Arzac-is . . . Arzac-es.
5. Atlant-is } . . . Atlas.
- Atlant-ias }
6. Telamon-ias . . . Telamon.

*Obs.* Personal Names of both Genders are also derived from names of places ; as, Mæon-ides, Mæon-is, *native of Mæon-ia*



### III. FEMININE FORMS CORRESPONDING TO MASCULINE.

- |                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. us . . . a : as,                |                                     |
| Masc. equ-us, <i>a horse.</i>      | Fem. equ-a, <i>a mare.</i>          |
| 2. er . . . ra : as,               |                                     |
| Masc. magist-er, <i>a master.</i>  | Fem. magist-ra, <i>a mistress.</i>  |
| 3. tor . . . trix : as,            |                                     |
| Masc. vic-tor, <i>a conqueror.</i> | Fem. vic-trix, <i>a conqueress.</i> |



4. a . . . is: as,

Masc. Pers-a, a *Persian*.Fem. Pers-is, a *Persian woman*.

5. ix . . . issa: as,

Masc. Phœn-ix, a *Phœnician*.Fem. Phœn-issa, a *Phœnician woman*.

Add to these many particular forms: as, leo, a *lion*; leona, a *lioness*: rex, a *king*; regina, a *queen*: Crea, a *Cretan*; Cressa, a *Cretan woman*: Tros, a *Trojan*; Troas, a *Trojan woman*: Thrax, a *Thracian*; Threïssa, a *Thracian woman*: Laco, a *Lacedæmonian*; Lacæna, a *Lacedæmonian woman*: Libys, a *Libyan*; Libysa, a *Libyan woman*, &c.

#### IV. ADVERBS.

##### A. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

###### (1.) Rest in a Place.

Ubi, *where?*ibi, }  
illie, } *there*.  
istic, }hie, *here*.utrobique, *in both places*.utrimque, *on both sides*.ibidem, *in the same place*.alibi, *elsewhere*.alicubi, *somewhere*.usquam, } *anywhere*.  
uspian, }nusquam, } *nowhere*.  
nullibi, }ubivis, } *where you will*.  
ubilibet, }ubiubi, } *wheresoever*.  
ubicumque, }ubique, } *everywhere*.  
passim, }prope, *near*.procul, *far away*.intus, } *within*.  
intrinsicus, }extrinsicus, } *without*.  
foris, }subtus, *beneath*.superne, *above*.inferne, *below*.præsto, *at hand*.peregre, *abroad*.

###### (2.) Motion to a Place.

Quo, *whither?*eo, }  
illuc, } *thither*.  
istuc, }huc, *hither*.eodem, *to the same place*.alio, *to another place*.quo, }  
aliquo, } *anywhither*.  
quopiam, }quovis, } *whither you will*.  
quolibet, }utrovis, *whither of the two you will*.quoquo, } *whither soever*.  
quocumque, }intro, *to within*.foras, *to without*.

(3.) *Motion towards a Place (versus or versum).*

Quorsum, <i>whitherward?</i>	deorsum, <i>downwards.</i>
illorsum, <i>thitherward.</i>	sursum, <i>upwards.</i>
horsum, <i>hitherward.</i>	retrosum, <i>backwards.</i>
aliorum, <i>towards another quarter.</i>	prorsum, <i>straightforward.</i>
utroque versum, <i>towards both quarters.</i>	seorsum, <i>sideways.</i>
aliquorsum, <i>towards some quarter.</i>	adversum, } <i>towards, against.</i>
quaque versum, <i>towards every quarter.</i>	adversus, }
introrsum, <i>inwards.</i>	dextrorsum, <i>towards the right.</i>
	sinistrorsum, <i>towards the left.</i>

(4.) *Motion from a Place.*

Unde, <i>whence?</i>	undevis, } <i>from which side you</i>
inde, } <i>thence.</i>	undelibet, } <i>will.</i>
illinc, }	undeunde, }
istinc, }	undecumque, } <i>from whatever side.</i>
hinc, <i>hence.</i>	eminus, <i>from far.</i>
utrimque, <i>from both sides.</i>	cominus, <i>from near, close.</i>
indidem, <i>from the same place.</i>	funditus, <i>from the ground, utterly.</i>
aliunde, <i>from elsewhere.</i>	radicitus, } <i>from the roots.</i>
alicunde, <i>from some place.</i>	stirpitus, }
undique, }	cœlitus, <i>from heaven.</i>
undique versum, } <i>from all sides.</i>	divinitus, <i>from the gods.</i>

(5.) *Motion by a Way.*

Quà, <i>which way?</i>	quavis, } <i>which way you will.</i>
eà, }	qualibet, }
illac, } <i>that way.</i>	utravis, <i>which of the two ways you</i>
istac, }	<i>will.</i>
hac, <i>this way.</i>	quaqua, }
utrâque, <i>both ways.</i>	quacumque, } <i>which way soever.</i>
eâdem, <i>the same way.</i>	rectâ, <i>straight.</i>
aliâ, <i>another way.</i>	dextrâ, <i>to the right.</i>
aliqua, }	sinistrâ, <i>to the left.</i>
quadam, } <i>some way.</i>	

## B. ADVERBS OF TIME.

(1.) *When?*

Quando, <i>when?</i>	dudum, }
nunc, } <i>now.</i>	pridem, }
modò, }	jamdudum, } <i>some time back.</i>
hodie, <i>to-day.</i>	nuper, <i>lately.</i>
tunc, }	nudiustertius, <i>three days since.</i>
tum, } <i>then.</i>	ante hac, }
heri, <i>yesterday.</i>	ante, }
pridie, <i>the day before.</i>	antea } <i>heretofore.</i>

jamdiu, *long since.*

jam, *now, presently.*

jamjam, *directly.*

mox, } *soon*

cito, }

statim,

confestim,

ilicet, }

illico,

protinus, }

cras, *to-morrow.*

postridie, *the following day.*

perendie, *the day after to-morrow.*

post,

postea,

posthac,

postmodum,

postmodo, }

*immediately, forthwith.*

*afterwards, hereafter.*

nonnunquam, }

aliquando,

quandoque,

quondam, }

olim,

interim, interea, *meanwhile.*

interdum, *sometimes.*

unquam, *ever.*

tandem, *at length.*

quandocumque, *whenever.*

alias, *at another time.*

vixdum, }

nondum, }

nunquam, *never.*

semper, *always.*

*sometimes.*

*some time ago or hereafter.*

## (2.) How long ?

Quamdiu, *how long ?*

diu, *long.*

aliquamdiu, }

aliquamtisper, }

tamdiu, *so long.*

*some length of time.*

tantisper, *so long.*

parumper, }

paulisper, }

adhuc, *hitherto.*

in perpetuum, *for ever.*

*for a short time.*

## (3.) How often ?

Quoties, *how often ?*

toties, *so often.*

quotidie, *daily.*

quotannis, *yearly.*

aliquoties, *several times.*

identidem, *repeatedly.*

interdum, }

subinde, }

denuo, *afresh.*

rursus, }

iterum, }

plerumque, *usually.*

sæpe, *often.*

crebrò, *frequently.*

rardò, *seldom.*

semel, *once.*

bis, *twice.*

&c. &c. see § 31.

*again.*

*usually.*

*frequently.*

*seldom.*

*once.*

*twice.*

## C. ADVERBS OF ORDER.

Primum, primò, *in the first place.*

deinde, *in the second place.*

deinceps, *next.*

porrò,

præterea, }

insuper, *moreover.*

tertiò, *thirdly.*

denique, }

postremo, }

*finally.*

## D. ADVERBS OF QUALITY, MANNER, AND DEGREE.

(1.) Interrogative : as, cur, quare, quamobrem, *why ?* num, an, *whether ?* quomodo, *how ?* &c.

(2.) Qualitative : as, bene, *well ;* male, *ill ;* pulchrè, *beautifully ;* fortiter, *bravely ;* sapienter, *wisely ;* with many others derived from Adjectives.

(3.) Intensive : as, magnoperè, maximè, *very greatly* ; magis, *more* ; multùm, *much* ; oppidò, perquàm, valdè, *very* ; longè, *by far* ; potissimùm, præcipuè, præsertim, *especially* ; omninò, penitus, prorsus, *wholly* ; potiùs, *rather* ; satis, *enough* ; nimis, nimiùm, *too much*, &c.

(4.) Diminutive : as, parum, *too little* ; fermè, ferè, penè, prope, prope modum, *almost* ; paullum, paullulum, *very little* ; paullo, *by a little* ; ægrè, vix, *scarcely*, &c.

(5.) Limitative : as, duntaxat, modò, tantummodò, solùm, tantùm, *only* ; plerumque, *generally*, &c.

(6.) Modal : as, adeo, ita, sic, *so* ; itidem, similiter, *in like manner* ; aliter, secus, *otherwise*, &c.

(7.) Gradulative : as, paulatim, sensim, &c., *by degrees*.

(8.) Distributive : as, sigillatim, separatim, *individually* ; partim, *partly* ; viritim, *man by man*, &c.

(9.) Collective : as, pariter, simul, unà, *together*, &c.

(10.) Affirmative : as, certè, etiam, ita, nã, planè, profectò, sanè, utique, *yes, truly*, &c.

(11.) Negative : as, haud, non, *not, no* ; nequaquam, haudquaquam, neutquam, minimè, *by no means*, &c.

(12.) Dubitative : as, fors, forsan, forsitan, fortasse, fortassis, *perhaps* ; forte, *by chance*, &c.

(13.) Asseverative : as, pol, edepol, *by Pollux* ; hercule, mehercule, *by Hercules*, &c.

(14.) Definitive : as, nempe, nimirum, scilicet, videlicet, *to wit*, &c.

## V. CONJUNCTIONS.

### A. CO-ORDINATIVE.

(1.) Copulative : et, que, atque, ac, *and* ; etiam, quoque, item, *also* ; neque, nec, *nor* ; et . . . et, *both . . . and* ; neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*.

(2.) Adversative : at, ast, sed, autem, verum, verò, *but* ; tamen, *yet* ; attamen, verumtamen, *but yet* ; atqui, *but indeed* ; enimvero, verum enimvero, *but in truth*.

(3.) Disjunctive : aut, vel, ve, *or* ; aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel, ve . . . ve, *either . . . or*.

(4.) Causal : nam, namque, enim, etenim, *for* ; enimvero, *for in truth*.

(5.) Conclusive : eo, ideo, idcirco, propterea, *on that account* ; itaque, ergo, igitur, *therefore* ; proinde, *accordingly* ; quocirca, quamobrem, quare, quapropter, *wherefore*.

### B. SUBORDINATIVE.

(1.) Local : ubi, *where* ; unde, *whence* ; quo, *whither* ; qua, *in which direction* ; quatenus, *how far*.

(2.) Temporal : quum, quando, ut, ubi, *when* ; dum, donec, *whilst, until* ; quoad, *as long as, until* ; priusquam, antequam, *before* ; postquam, ut, *after, since* ; simul atque, *as soon as* ; quoties, *as often as*.

(3.) Causal : quum, quoniam, quandoquidem, *since* ; quia, quòd, *because* ; quippe, *for that*.

(4.) Conditional : si, *if* ; nisi, *unless* ; sin, *but if* ; dum, dummodo, *provided that* ; sive, *or if* ; seu . . . sive, *whether . . . or*.

(5.) Concessive: *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, quamquam, quamvis, ut, licet, although.*

(6.) Final: *ut, in order that; quo, that; ne, that... not, lest; neve, neu, and that... not, and lest; quominus, but that, that... not.*

(7.) Consecutive: *ut, so that; quin, but that; that... not.*

(8.) Comparative: *ut, sicut, velut, ceu, as; tamquam, quasi, as if.*

(9.) Conclusive: *cur, quamobrem, quare, why, wherefore.*

(10.) Modal: *quomodo, quemadmodum, quàm, how, &c.*

(11.) Optative: *utinam, si, O si, would that.*

## VI. INTERJECTIONS.

(1.) Invocative: *O! heus! ohe! eho! ehodum! O! ho! eja, come!*

(2.) Monstrative: *en, ecce, lo!*

(3.) Admirative: *O! au! hui! hem! ehem! vah! atat! papæ ha! oh!*

(4.) Jubilative: *io! evoe! hurra! eu! euge! bravo! well-done!*

(5.) Lamentative: *hei! heu! eheu! ah! vœ! prob! alas, woe's me!*

## VII. ORTHOGRAPHY.

THE Orthography of the Latin language is very unsettled, on account of the uncertain etymology of many words, and the changes which took place from time to time in the manner of speaking and writing.

The subjoined Table exhibits the preferable Orthography of some disputed words:—

<i>Write</i>			<i>Write</i>		
valētudo	rather than	validudo.	lacrima	rather than	lacryma.
genitrix	.	genetrix.	cæcus	.	cœcus.
deminutio	.	diminutio.	mæreo	.	mcereo.
ceteri	.	cæteri.	sollers	.	solers.
frenum	.	frænum.	sollennis	.	solemnis.
heres	.	hæres.	Juppiter	.	Jupiter.
lêvis	.	lævis.	quattuor	.	quatuor.
prelum	.	prælum.	rettuli	.	retuli.
fecundus	.	fœcundus.	conjux	.	conjunx.
femina	.	fœmina.	have	.	ave.
fetus	.	fœtus.	ahenum	.	aenum.
fenus	.	fœnus.	exsul	.	exul.
suboles	.	soboles.	letum	.	lethum.
hiems	.	hyems.	sulfur	.	sulphur.
ocius	.	ocyus.	tus	.	thus.
silva	.	sylva.	ancora	.	anchora.
stilus	.	stylus.	vicesimus	.	vigesimus.
Sulla	.	Sylla.	Caius	.	Gaius.
satira	.	satura.	Cnæus	.	Gnæus.
clipeus	.	clypeus.	obsonor	.	opsonor.

## VIII. ON THE DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

SYLLABLES, if possible, begin with a Consonant, and end with a Vowel.  
Hence —

1. A Consonant between two Vowels belongs to the latter syllable; as, *pa-ter, a-ma-tur*.

2. When two or three Consonants come between two Vowels, they all belong to the latter syllable, if they can begin a Latin or Greek word; as, *ma-gnus, a-gri, e-sca, pe-stis, a-stra, A-bdera, pu-blicus, Ara-ckne, Pa-phlago, rhy-thmus, seri-psi, a-sthma*: if not, they are divided between the two syllables; as, *an-nus, cur-ro, tel-lus, an-te, pun-ctum, ar-ctus, jux-ta*.

*Obs. 1.* A compounded word is divided into the words which compose it; as, *ab-avus*: unless the first element is a mutilated word, when it follows the general rule; as, *a-ni-madverto*.

*Obs. 2.* An euphonic letter between the Compounds belongs to the former syllable; as, *neg-otium, prod-est*. But see § 94. N. 2. (11.).

## IX. SIGLARIUM ROMANUM.

*Abbreviations used in the Latin Language.*

## 1. PRÆNOMINA.

A. Aulus	K. Kæso	P. Publius	Sp. Spurius
C. Caius	L. Lucius	Q. Quintus	T. Titus
Cn. Cnæus	M. Marcus	Ser. Servius	Ti. Tiberius.
D. Decimus.	M'. Manius.	Sex. Sextus.	

## 2. TITLES.

Cos. Consul.	Coss. Consules or	P. M. Pontifex Maximus.
Consulibus.		ProC. Proconsul.
Cos. Des. Consul Designatus.		S. P. Q. R. Senatus Populusque
D. Divus.		Romanus.
Imp. Imperator.		Tr. Pl. Tribunus Plebis.
P. C. Patres Conscripti.		

## 3. IN VOTING ON TRIALS AND ELECTIONS.

A. Absolve.	C. Condemno.	A. P. Antiquam (legem) probō.
N. L. Non liquet.		V. R. Utiogas.

## 4. ON TOMBS.

F. C. Faciundum curavit.	Ob. Obiit.
H. C. E. Hic conditus est.	P. C. Poni curavit.
H. S. E. Hic situs est.	V. Vixit.

## 5. MISCELLANEOUS.

A. U. C. Anno Urbis Condita.	S. C. Senatus Consultum.
D. D. Domo dedit.	S. D. Salutem dicit.
D. D. D. Dat, dicat, dedicat.	S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit.
D. M. Diis Manibus.	S. V. B. E. E. Q. V. Si vales, bene est, ego quoque valeo.
D. O. M. Deo Optimo Maximo.	Ta. Por. Tribunicia Potestate.
F. Filius.	
F. F. F. Felix, faustum, fortunatum.	

## 6. MODERN.

A. B. Artium Baccalaureus.	i. q. idem quod.
A. C. Anno Christi.	L. or LIB. Liber.
A. D. Anno Domini.	L. B. Lectori benevolo.
A. M. Artium Magister. Anno Mundi.	l. c. loco citato.
a. C. n. ante Christum natum.	l. l. loco laudato.
p. C. n. post Christum natum.	leg. lege or legatur.
C. P. P. C. Collatis pecuniis ponituraverunt.	LL. D. Legum Doctor.
Cet. Cetera.	M. D. Medicinæ Doctor.
Cf. Confer or Conferatur.	N. B. Nota bene.
Coll. Collato or Collatis.	N. T. Novum Testamentum.
Cod. Codex. Codd. Codices.	Obs. Observa or observetur.
D. Doctor.	P. S. Postscriptum.
Del. Dele or Deleatur.	S. T. P. Sanctæ Theologiæ Professor.
Ed. Editio. Edd. Editiones.	sc. scilicet.
Etc. Etcetera.	s. v. sub voce.
h. e. hoc est.	vid. vide or videatur.
I. C. Jesus Christus.	viz. videlicet.
Ictus Jurisconsultus.	V. Cel. Vir celeberrimus.
i. e. id est.	V. Cl. Vir Clarissimus.
	V. T. Vetus Testamentum

THE END.

LONDON:  
 SCOTTISWODE and SHAW,  
 New-street-Square.

# ESTABLISHED SCHOOL BOOKS.

---

## I.

**MAUNDER'S UNIVERSAL CLASS-BOOK:** an entirely New Series of Reading Lessons, with Notes and Questions. New Edition. 12mo. 5s.

## II.

**THE REV. W. SEWELL'S NEW SPEAKER** and Holiday Task Book, selected from Classical Greek, Latin, and English Writers. 12mo. 6s.

## III.

**MRS. PALLISER'S MODERN POETICAL SPEAKER.** Dedicated, by permission, to the Dowager Lady Lyttelton. 12mo. 6s.

## IV.

**GRAHAM'S ENGLISH;** or, the Art of Composition explained in a Series of Instructions and Examples. New Edition. Fep. 8vo. 7s.

## V.

**PARKER'S PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES IN ENGLISH COMPOSITION.** New Edition. 12mo. 1s. 6d.

## VI.

**GRAHAM'S HELPS TO ENGLISH GRAMMAR;** or, Easy Exercises for Young Children. New Edition. 12mo., with Woodcuts, 3s.

## VII.

**GOLDSMITH'S GRAMMAR OF GEOGRAPHY.** Improved by HUGH MURRAY. New Edition, corrected. Royal 18mo. Maps, Views, &c. 3s. 6d.

## VIII.

**DR. BUTLER'S ANTIENT AND MODERN GEOGRAPHY.** New Edition, revised by his Son. 8vo. 9s.; bound, 10s.

## IX.

**DR. BUTLER'S GENERAL ATLAS OF ANTIENT AND MODERN GEOGRAPHY.** 46 Coloured Maps, and Indexes. New Edition, corrected. 4to. 24s.

## X.

**DR. BUTLER'S ANTIENT ATLAS.** 22 coloured Maps, with copious Accentuated Index. New Edition, corrected and re-engraved. 8vo. 12s.

## XI.

**DR. BUTLER'S MODERN ATLAS.** 23 coloured Maps, from a new Set of Plates. New Edition, corrected. 8vo. 12s.



XII.

**ZUMPT'S LATIN GRAMMAR:** with Additions by the Author.  
Translated, and adapted for English Students, by Dr. L. SCHMITZ.  
8vo. 14s.

XIII.

**ZUMPT'S SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR.** Translated, and  
adapted for English Schools, by Dr. L. SCHMITZ; with a Preface  
communicated by Prof. ZUMPT. 12mo. 4s.

XIV.

**RIDDLE'S COMPLETE LATIN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-  
LATIN DICTIONARY.** New Edition. 8vo. 31s. 6d.

Separately { The Latin-English Dictionary, 21s.  
                  { The English-Latin Dictionary, 10s. 6d.

XV.

**RIDDLE'S YOUNG SCHOLAR'S LATIN-ENGLISH AND  
ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.** New Edition. Square  
12mo. 12s.

Separately { The Latin-English Dictionary, 7s.  
                  { The English-Latin Dictionary, 5s. 6d.

XVI.

**RIDDLE'S DIAMOND LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY,** or  
Miniature Guide to the Quality of Latin Classical Words. New  
Edition. Royal 32mo. 4s.

XVII.

**VALPY'S VIRGIL,** improved by PYCKOFT. With nearly 6,000 Mar-  
ginal References, Grammatical Notes, &c. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. 6d.; with  
References only, 3s. 6d.

XVIII.

**ANTHON'S CICERO.** ERNESTI's Text; with English Notes, Com-  
mentary, and Historical, Geographical, and Legal Indexes. New  
Edition. 12mo. 6s.

XIX.

**ANTHON'S CÆSAR.** OUDENDORP's Text; with Explanatory Notes  
and Historical, Geographical, and Archæological Indexes. New  
Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

XX.

**ANTHON'S SALLUST.** With English Notes, Commentary, and  
Geographical and Historical Indexes. New Edition. 12mo. 5s.

XXI.

**REINHARDT'S TERENCE.** With English Explanatory Notes,  
by Dr. D. B. HICKIE. New Edition. 12mo., with Portrait and  
Vignette, 9s. 6d.

---

**LONDON: LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS.**

